

**ROOTED**  
in truth



# Rooted in Truth

## A THEOLOGY-FOCUSED BIBLE STUDY

This study has been written with great amazement at the goodness and  
faithfulness of our  
mighty, merciful and gracious God by

**SARAH COX, RUTH DECAMP, CHRISTINE JENSEN, AND DEBORAH MILLER**

Editing assistance by Amy Pappas and Linda Voltz.

Visual element design by Rebecca Finster.

Copyright 2022, 2023

Scripture quotations are from The ESV® Bible  
(The Holy Bible, English Standard Version®), copyright © 2001 by Crossway,  
a publishing ministry of Good News Publishers.  
Used by permission. All right reserved



**C O R N E R S T O N E**  
B I B L E C H U R C H



 **BIBLE STUDY COMMITMENT**

Bible study should be a place of learning, sharing and growing in Christ together. Toward that end, a few guidelines are helpful so that we all have the same expectations for ourselves and one another. These guidelines are laid out below in the form of a *Bible Study Group Agreement*. As you think about the commitment you are making in the agreement, you may be wondering if you really have time for this study. To help you work through the answer to that question, there is a Finding Time worksheet following the agreement.

**BIBLE STUDY GROUP AGREEMENT**

Before reading through the entire agreement, notice that it starts with “To the best of my ability I will”. Life is unpredictable. Any of our many roles as a woman can bring surprises into a day or a week. You are likely some combination of these roles: daughter, wife, mom, friend, employee, granddaughter, student, teacher—and so many more! There will be times when you simply can’t get everything done that you want to do.

So, for each item, you are committing to working diligently toward fulfilling the goal laid out—but not making a promise for perfection. We are imperfectly and beautifully striving for a life of godliness together!

To the best of my ability I will...

- Pray to grow spiritually, individually and as a group. I will ask God to help me mature in my walk with Him through the application of biblical truth.
- Give priority to the group meeting, arriving on time, with reading and study questions completed.
- Pray regularly for group members.
- Help the study to be a safe place where women are free to be authentic and develop trust and godly relationships.
- Keep confidences. What is said in the group will stay in the group.
- Be patient with others, offering love and staying clear of judgments.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_



## MAKING TIME

Like it or not, there are only 24 hours in a day – none of us have “extra” time. However, we will always prioritize what is important to us, be it family, friends, work, church, a doctor’s appointment, or anything else. We *make* time for things that matter to us!

*Every woman needs to be in God’s Word every day.* We need to renew and train our minds by it. We need to think rightly about who God is and who we are in Christ. We need to understand the broken world around us as God sees it. When we think rightly about these things, we can choose our actions wisely. And when we do the right things, our feelings follow!

The Rooted in Truth Bible study is a powerful tool for training our minds. With this in sight, how can you *make* time for this study? A worksheet is provided on the following pages to help you answer that question.

As you work through the worksheets, you have the opportunity to evaluate how well you are stewarding the time God has given you. It’s a chance to reflect on how you spend your days. To think this through, fill in the chart on the following pages by writing down everything you do in a *typical day* in 30-minute increments. When you are finished, review the chart and evaluate your use of time by completing the statements that follow the chart.

A second chart is included in your binder. You may want to use this one to actually track your time as you go through the day. You could also use it to consider a different day of the week such as a weekend day or a non-school day.

*Ephesians 5:15-16—Look carefully then how you walk, not as unwise but as wise, making the best use of the time, because the days are evil.*

## TAKE ROOT

*Do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewal of your mind, that by testing you may discern what is the will of God, what is good and acceptable and perfect.*

*Romans 12:2*

# MAKING TIME WORKSHEET

Answering the question: Can I make time for this study?

Date: -----

5:00 AM
5:30 AM
6:00 AM
6:30 AM
7:00 AM
7:30 AM
8:00 AM
8:30 AM
9:00 AM
9:30 AM
10:00 AM
10:30 AM
11:00 AM
11:30 AM
12:00 PM
12:30 PM
1:00 PM
1:30 PM
2:00 PM
2:30 PM
3:00 PM
3:30 PM
4:00 PM
4:30 PM
5:00 PM
5:30 PM



6:00 PM
6:30 PM
7:00 PM
7:30 PM
8:00 PM
8:30 PM
9:00 PM
9:30 PM
10:00 PM
10:30 PM
11:00 PM

## EVALUATE

I was surprised at how much time I spent...

I was surprised at how little time I spent...

I plan to make the following changes to be a better steward of the time God has given me:

I plan to make the following changes to prioritize spending time in God' Word:

*Psalm 90:12—“So teach us to number our days that we may get a heart of wisdom.”*

# MAKING TIME WORKSHEET

## Answering the question: Can I make time for this study?

You can use this second copy to keep track of a day. Do you spend your time how you think you do? You could also use it to think through a weekend or non-school/work day.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

5:00 AM
5:30 AM
6:00 AM
6:30 AM
7:00 AM
7:30 AM
8:00 AM
8:30 AM
9:00 AM
9:30 AM
10:00 AM
10:30 AM
11:00 AM
11:30 AM
12:00 PM
12:30 PM
1:00 PM
1:30 PM
2:00 PM
2:30 PM
3:00 PM
3:30 PM
4:00 PM
4:30 PM
5:00 PM
5:30 PM

6:00 PM
6:30 PM
7:00 PM
7:30 PM
8:00 PM
8:30 PM
9:00 PM
9:30 PM
10:00 PM
10:30 PM
11:00 PM

## EVALUATE

I was surprised at how much time I spent...

I was surprised at how little time I spent...

I plan to make the following changes to be a better steward of the time God has given me:

I plan to make the following changes to prioritize spending time in God' Word:

*Psalm 90:12—"So teach us to number our days that we may get a heart of wisdom."*





# INTRODUCTION



# Rooted in Truth

## A THEOLOGY-FOCUSED BIBLE STUDY

### WHY ROOTED IN TRUTH?

Like the apostle Paul, our desire is to see women “walk in him, rooted and built up in him and established in the faith” so that no matter our circumstances, we remain steadfast in the Lord and live an abundant life wherever He plants us.

### WHY A THEOLOGY-FOCUSED BIBLE STUDY?

Theology is the study of all aspects of God based on the teachings of the Bible. Theology matters! It shapes our worldview which impacts how we live our lives. Correct theology undergirds sound doctrine, sound doctrine leads to right thinking, and right thinking promotes godly behavior. God uses theology to humble us and make us grateful for who He is, what He has done and what He will do. The inevitable result is *worship*, and our holy God is *glorified!*



*Therefore, as you received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in him, rooted and built up in him and established in the faith, just as you were taught, abounding in thanksgiving.*

*Colossians 2:6-7*

To this end, we invite you to open your Bible and embark on this journey to *know* God. We trust that this study will bring new insights and convictions and inspire joy and awe leading you to worship Him. We believe your heart and mind will be transformed and we pray you will be excited and motivated to share these truths with others. All of this to the glory of God!

*Jude 24-25—<sup>24</sup>Now to him who is able to keep you from stumbling and to present you blameless before the presence of his glory with great joy, <sup>25</sup>to the only God, our Savior, through Jesus Christ our Lord, be glory, majesty, dominion, and authority, before all time and now and forever. Amen.*





## Introduction

### ROOTED

One of the oldest living trees in the United States is a bristlecone pine located in the White Mountains in eastern California. Aptly named Methuselah, this tree is estimated to be 4,853 years old! Taking root in 2,831 B.C.E., this tree would have been alive before the great pyramids in Egypt were built and before the time of Abraham. For thousands of years Methuselah has withstood blistering heat, torrential rains, howling winds, and freezing temperatures.

What is the key to this tree's longevity and resiliency? One of the crucial factors is its extensive root system. Methuselah's roots act as an anchor to stabilize and secure the trunk of the tree below the ground. The roots absorb and store nutrients from the soil and drink in water from the rain and melting snow to keep the tree healthy and flourishing. It is this strong, established root system that has allowed Methuselah to survive and continue to grow for thousands of years.

How can we, like this ancient tree, remain steadfast through trials and difficult circumstances while living in a chaotic and ever-changing world? How can we not just endure, but grow and thrive? The answers to these questions can be found in two verses tucked away in a letter written by the apostle Paul to the church in Colossae. In the next section, we will examine these verses and what it looks like to be rooted in Christ.

### ROOTED IN CHRIST

*Colossians 2:6-7—<sup>6</sup>Therefore, as you received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in him,<sup>7</sup>rooted and built up in him and established in the faith, just as you were taught, abounding in thanksgiving.*

Let's examine these verses, one phrase at a time.

*Therefore, as you received Christ Jesus the Lord...*

At some point in the past, the people in the church in Colossae had accepted Jesus Christ's gift of salvation and acknowledged Him to be Lord of their life. It is the same for believers in the 21<sup>st</sup> century. Receiving Christ Jesus as Lord means we are "new creations" (2 Cor. 5:17). This is the start of our longevity; of living *forever and ever* with Jesus Christ.

*Therefore, as you received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in him, ...*

To walk means *to make one's way, to progress*. In the broader, biblical sense it means *to conduct one's life*. Notice the two little words "**in him,**" after the verb **walk**. Having accepted Christ Jesus as Lord, the believer is now one with Him. She is the recipient of blessing upon blessing because of this inner union with Christ (Eph. 1:3-14). The significance of this truth is astounding! The believer can now go about her day relying on *His* power, *His* patience, *His* wisdom, *His* guidance, etc. - not her own strength and self-sufficiency.

## Introduction

How do we do this? Let's go back to Colossians 2:6-7.

***Therefore, as you received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in him, rooted and built up in him and established in the faith...***

This phrase describes *how* a believer is to walk.

- The Greek word translated **rooted** is *rhizoō*. It means *to cause to strike root, to become stable, to cause a person or thing to be thoroughly grounded*.
- To be **built up** means *to build upon*. The tense of the verb denotes that the action is ongoing, i.e., the foundation of Christ has been laid, now keep growing in Him!
- And finally, to be **established in the faith** means *to make firm one's belief and trust in God*.

In other words, a believer's walk should be characterized by:

- Roots that grow deep in the soil of God's Word, regularly taking in truth that nourishes and grounds her soul.
- A continual dependence on Christ and His power to daily live her life.
- A firm and unshakeable trust in God and His Word that will help her weather trials and difficult circumstances while living in a fallen world.

As amazing as all of this is, Paul is not finished yet! Let's go back to Colossians 2:7.

***Rooted and built up in him and established in the faith, just as you were taught,***

The apostle Paul, trained as a Pharisee and schooled in the Old Testament scriptures, was taught by Christ Himself after meeting Him on the road to Damascus (Gal. 1:11-17). Wherever Paul went he shared the gospel with those who didn't know Christ and instructed believers in what the Lord had taught him.

The significance for us is three-fold:

- We are to share the gospel with others and offer hope that is only found in Jesus Christ.
- We are to have a teachable spirit and be life-long learners of the Word.
- We are to disciple others in what the Lord has taught us.

Paul ends verse 7 with one final phrase:

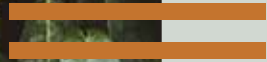
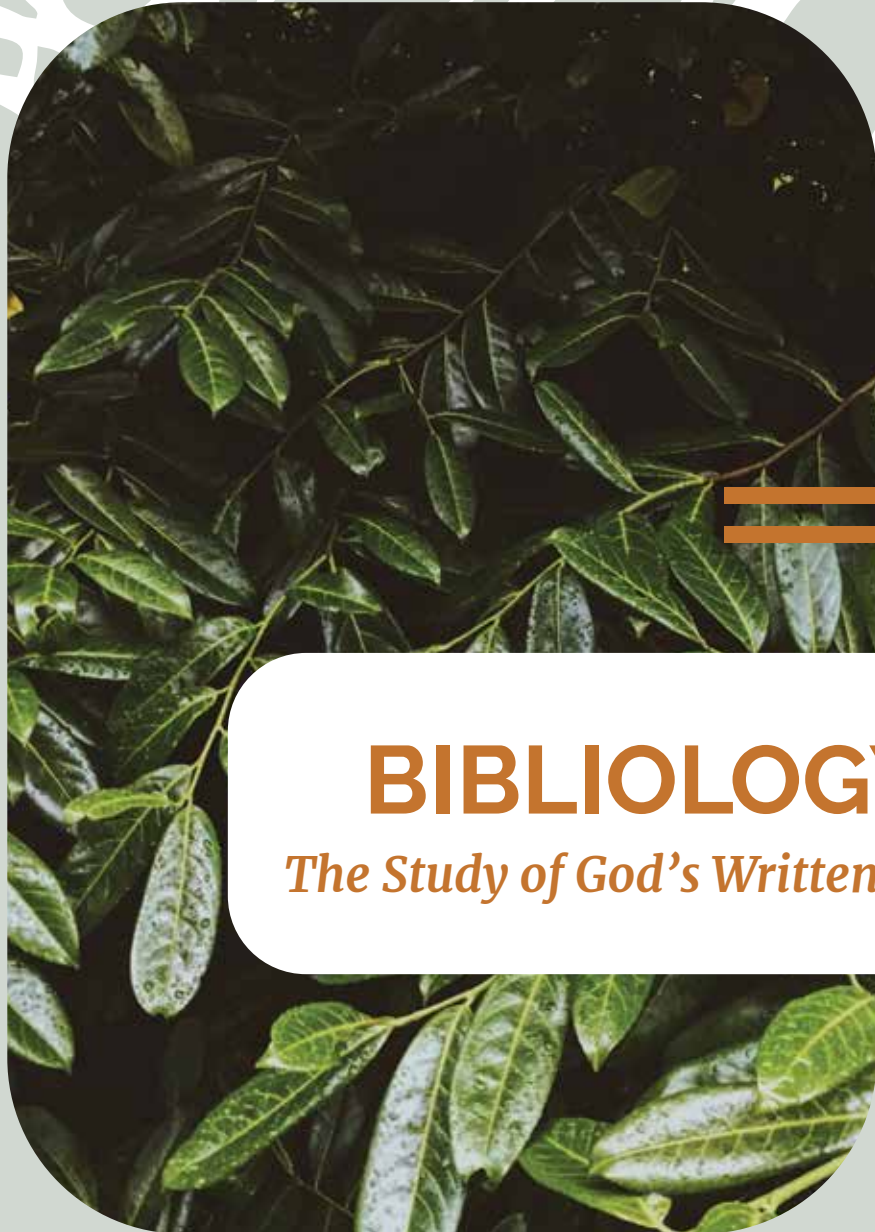
***...abounding in thanksgiving.***

This is the inevitable results of walking in Him, a life overflowing with thankfulness to the Lord!

There you have it! In these two little verses, we are encouraged to walk **in Christ**. As we do, *He* produces a steadfast and fruitful life *through* us.







# **BIBLIOLOGY**

*The Study of God's Written Word*



# The Scriptures—Week One

## Introduction

On October 6th, 1536, the Englishman, William Tyndale, was led out of a dark prison cell, tied to a stake, strangled then burned in a small town near Brussels, Belgium. His crime? Translating the Bible into English, mass-producing copies using the printing press then smuggling them into England. His goal was to get the Scriptures into the hands of the common people in their own language. (Owning or reading an English Bible was illegal in England at the time; only the clergy could have the Latin Bible). Tyndale firmly believed that God revealed Himself through His Word and was convinced that it should be made available to all. He was willing to die for that end.

Today, copies of the Bible in English are readily available to people living here in the United States. Yet the authority and truthfulness of God's Word are more and more being called into question and even totally rejected. It is important then that we begin with the doctrine of Scripture so we can stand on the firm foundation of the Bible knowing for certain that it is the very Word of God, that it is true, and it is the Christ-followers' authority for living.

This study will cover the Origin, the Authority and the Sufficiency of the Scriptures in week 1. Week 2 will be focused on How to Study the Bible.



*All Scripture is breathed out by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.*

*2 Timothy 3:16-17*

## The Origin of the Scriptures

*The Journey from God's Thoughts to the Bible We Hold in Our Hands Today*

There are six steps involved in getting the Bible as we know it today:

1. REVELATION
2. INSPIRATION
3. THE CANON
4. TRANSMISSION
5. TEXTUAL CRITICISM
6. TRANSLATION

The first week of study will cover all six of these steps.

## 1. Revelation

In order to understand the origin of the Bible we have to begin with God, the great I AM, the One who has always existed. Amazingly, He has chosen to make Himself known to us. This is called REVELATION and there are 2 types: General Revelation and Special Revelation.

### GENERAL REVELATION

General Revelation is the *natural* or *common* way that God discloses Himself to everyone.

1. Read the following verses and write down the means by which God reveals Himself to all people.

Psalm 19:1-6

Romans 2:14-15

2. Is general revelation enough to know that *God exists*?

Read Romans 1:19-20 to check your answer.

### SPECIAL REVELATION

Special Revelation is the way God reveals Himself directly, in greater detail and in a special way.

3. Read the following verses and write down how God reveals Himself through special revelation. (This is not an exhaustive list.)

Exodus 33:11; Acts 9:3-4

Psalm 119:11, 105

Luke 1:26-28

Acts 13:2

Hebrews 1:1-3

4. Read 2 Peter 1:16-21 where Peter describes being present at the transfiguration of Christ and hearing the voice of God. Yet, what does Peter say the readers should pay attention to in verse 19?

Why is this of utmost importance according to verses 20-21?

So, the Bible is a special revelation from God. As we will see in the upcoming sections, it is inspired, infallible and complete. No personal experience is valid if it contradicts Scripture. It is the guide by which we judge all things in our lives.



## 2. Inspiration

The second step is called *inspiration*. Inspiration is God choosing specific human authors to record His story or message. This was done through the power of the Holy Spirit who used the authors' own individual writing styles, personalities, and cultural settings to write down exactly what God wanted them to write. There were no errors in the original documents.

According to Cornerstone Bible Church's Statement of Faith:

"We believe the Bible is the Word of God, fully inspired and without error in the original manuscripts, written under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, and that it has supreme authority in all matters of faith and conduct."<sup>1</sup>

Let's examine what it means that the Bible is *fully inspired* and that it was written under the *inspiration* of the Holy Spirit.

5. Look up the definition of the word *inspiration* in a dictionary and write it below.

The modern, most popular definition of inspiration is NOT how Moses was 'inspired' to write the first five books of the Bible. To understand how the word "inspired" is used when referring to the Scriptures, let's look at 2 Timothy 3:16 from the English Standard Version (ESV). This will give us a biblical understanding of the idea being stated.

**2 Timothy 3:16—All Scripture is *breathed out by God* and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness.**

The Greek word translated here as **breathed out by God** is *theopneustos*; a compound word.

*Theo* = God

*Pneustos* = to breathe out; to blow in or on.

Note that in 2 Timothy 3:16, *Theopneustos* is an adjective that describes the *Scriptures*, not the *writer* of the Scriptures! This is an important distinction.

In the 4<sup>th</sup> century Latin translation of the Bible, the word *theopneustos* was translated **divinitus inspirata** or God breathed. In some English Bibles such as the King James Version, this is written as **inspired by God**. However, the word inspired doesn't mean the same thing today as it did when the King James Version was created. This is an example of the meaning of a word changing with time and culture. Updating Bible translations to keep them current and understandable (without altering the meaning) can be very helpful! In 2001, the English Standard Version (ESV) was published, and it translates *theopneustos* as God breathed. (The ESV was created by translating directly from the original languages into modern English.)

## The Scriptures—Week 1

Let's look at two passages of Scripture to understand better *how* God breathed out Scripture.

The first passage of Scripture is in the book of Acts. The author, Luke, is describing a storm that he, Paul and others encountered when they were on a sailing ship bound for Italy. Paul had warned against going on this voyage. He predicted the storm would be so severe that there would be loss of the ship and all its cargo. The captain set sail, nonetheless. We pick up the story in Acts 27:14 -17.

*Acts 27:14-17—But soon a tempestuous wind, called the northeaster, struck down from the land. <sup>15</sup>And when the ship was caught and could not face the wind, we gave way to it and were driven along. <sup>16</sup>Running under the lee of a small island called Cauda, we managed with difficulty to secure the ship's boat.*

*<sup>17</sup>After hoisting it up, they used supports to undergird the ship. Then, fearing that they would run aground on the Syrtis, they lowered the gear, and thus they were driven along.*

6. Underline the phrase "*were driven along*" in verses 15 and 17 then answer the following questions about this passage:

What was driving the ship, and its crew and passengers along in the storm?

Could the ship and its crew and passengers resist it?

Who controlled whom?

Note that the Greek word for driven along is *phero*. In this passage it is in the passive voice which indicates the subject in the sentence was acted upon. In other words, the ship, its crew and its passengers were acted upon by the strong wind; they were driven along.

The second passage of Scripture is 2 Peter 1:20-21.

*2 Peter 1:20-21—knowing this first of all, that no prophecy of Scripture comes from someone's own interpretation. <sup>21</sup>For no prophecy was ever produced by the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit.*

7. Underline the phrase "*were carried along*" in verse 21.

Guess what?! The Greek word for "*carried along*" is *phero* and it also is in the passive voice, the same as our seafaring Acts passage!

## The Scriptures—Week 1

(Question 7 continued...)

Now answer the following questions about 2 Peter 2:20-21:

Does any prophecy of Scripture come from the will of man?

The men spoke from whom?

Who carried the men along?

Could they “resist” Him?

The significance of the Bible being inspired (or better yet, God breathed) is this:

“that which was written was fully the words of the human authors in their language and style and from their personal perspectives, but it was under the direct superintendence of God by His Spirit **producing on every page the very words of God.**” (Emphasis added).<sup>2</sup>

***THINK ABOUT THIS AMAZING TRUTH WHENEVER YOU OPEN YOUR BIBLE: EVERY PAGE CONTAINS THE VERY WORDS OF GOD! MAY IT PRODUCE IN EACH OF US A DEEPER REVERENCE AND LOVE FOR THIS BOOK AND FOR ITS DIVINE AUTHOR.***

### 3. Canon

The Canon of Scripture refers to those books of the Bible which the Church accepts as God's Inspired Word.

The biblical view of the Canon of Scripture is that the writings themselves are vested with the authority of God because they were written under the Spirit's inspiration, and the people of God merely recognized the authority present within them.

Three widely recognized principles for selecting the books to be included in the Bible:

- They had to have been authored by a recognized prophet or apostle or by someone associated with one (as is the case for Mark, Luke, Hebrews, James, and Jude).
- It could not disagree with or contradict any previous Scripture.
- The Church had to display a consensus that a writing was inspired.

Note: According to the Roman Catholic view, the Catholic Church has the authority to decide which books belong in the Bible. They include the Apocryphal books which Protestants do not.

#### DID YOU KNOW

- The Bible is composed of 66 separate books: 39 in the Old Testament and 27 in the New.
- The Bible was written by about 40 men from a variety of occupations and walks of life.

## The Scriptures—Week 1

The Old Testament canon was already complete and recognized by the Jewish community by the time of Christ. Malachi, the last book of the Old Testament, had been completed about 430 B.C. It did not contain the Apocrypha. No New Testament writer cited the Apocrypha and Jesus did not affirm any of it when He recognized the Old Testament canon.

### DID YOU KNOW

- The chapter and verse numbers were not inspired. The last book of the Bible (Revelation) was written in about 95 A.D. and the Bible was not divided into chapters until 1227 A.D.
- The Old Testament was divided into verses in about 1448 A.D.
- The New Testament was divided into verses in about 1555 A.D.
- Chapter and verse numbers were first printed in English in Geneva Translation in 1557 A.D.

The present New Testament canon was debated until the fourth century when it became firmly established in the form we have today.

"Establishing the canon was a process that took place over a period of time; however, that does not mean the church was without a New Testament until the end of the fourth century. From the very beginning of the church, the basic books of the New Testament, those that we read and observe today, were in use, and they functioned as a canon because of their Apostolic authority." (R. C. Sproul)<sup>3</sup>

## 4. Transmission

In order to continue to share these God-breathed writings with new believers and pass them down to future generations, it was necessary to copy and preserve the Scriptures. This process is called *transmission*.

We do not have time in this study to go into great detail about this subject but let's look at two examples of how God has preserved His Word.

### THE OLD TESTAMENT - THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS

It was March of 1947 when a young Bedouin boy named Muhammad adh-Dhib, entered a cave in Qumran, one mile west of the Dead Sea. He was looking for a lost goat. Inside the cave he found some jars containing leather scrolls. One of the scrolls turned out to be the oldest known complete copy of the book of Isaiah. Other caves in the area were explored resulting in a treasure trove of information.

Amazingly, every book of the Hebrew Bible is represented in the Dead Sea Scrolls except for the book of Esther. The scrolls are the oldest known copies of biblical works, and date from approximately 200-100 B.C. When later manuscripts were compared with the Dead Sea Scrolls, only a few slight variants were found, none of which changed the meaning of any passage. This speaks to the painstaking care taken by Jewish scribes to maintain the accuracy of their sacred writings and confirms the integrity of the standardized Hebrew Bible. It is believed the scrolls had been put in the caves by the Essenes, a Jewish religious sect dating from about 300 BC to 50 AD.<sup>4</sup>

## THE NEW TESTAMENT – THE RELIABILITY OF N.T. DOCUMENTS

The chart below shows the preservation of various literary works from the ancient world. Note the accuracy and reliability of the New Testament documents.

Author/Book	Date Written	Earliest Copies We Have	Time Gap	Number of Copies	Percent Accuracy
Homer, <i>Iliad</i>	800 B.C.			643	95
Plato	400 B.C.	ca. A.D. 900	ca. 1,300 yrs.	7	?
Caesar, <i>Gaelic Wars</i>	100 - 44 B.C.	ca. A.D. 900	ca. 1,000 yrs.	10	?
New Testament	A.D. 50 - 100	ca. 114 (fragment) ca. 200 (books) ca. 250 (most of NT) ca. 325 (complete NT)	+/- 50 yrs. 100 yrs. 150 yrs. 225 yrs.	5800	99+

Table 1—The Reliability of the New Testament Documents<sup>5</sup>

No one disputes the reliability of Homer's *Iliad*, yet as you can see from this chart, there are many more early copies of the New Testament with a greater percentage of accuracy.

**TAKE A MOMENT TO THANK GOD FOR HIS FAITHFULNESS IN ACCURATELY PRESERVING HIS WORD OVER A SPAN OF APPROXIMATELY 3400 YEARS**

**(FROM 1445 B.C. WHEN MOSES PENNED THE FIRST 5 BOOKS OF THE BIBLE, TO 95 A.D. WHEN THE APOSTLE JOHN COMPLETED THE BOOK OF REVELATION, TO THE COPIES WE HOLD IN OUR HANDS TODAY).**

## 5. Textual Criticism

Simply put, textual criticism is defined as the science of comparing and evaluating existing ancient copies of Scripture to determine the most accurate reading of the original text.

The word *criticism* here is not a negative word, but a technical one that means to apply "critical thinking"—in this case, to the ancient texts. The goal is to determine "the reading that most likely reflects what the Biblical author originally wrote."<sup>6</sup>

Because a deeper discussion about textual criticism is beyond the scope of this study, we will leave it at that.

## 6. Translation

Finally, the translators have in their hands an accurate compilation of texts from Genesis to Malachi, and Matthew to Revelation. Now it's time to change these from Hebrew and Greek into English to arrive at the Bibles we hold in our hands today.

## The Scriptures—Week 1

Through the years as more ancient manuscripts have been discovered and the English language has changed, translators have given us new translations of the Bible. These newer translations seek to make the Bible more accurate and/or easier for the modern reader to understand. See the chart below for comparisons of some translations in use today.

### Bible Translation Comparison

*The following English translations are listed from the most literal to the least.  
(There are variations of opinion on the order within each major type.)*

Type	Translation
<u>Word for Word (Formal)</u>  Best used for in-depth study	Interlinear
	NASB95 (New American Standard Bible)
	AMP (Amplified)
	ESV (English Standard Version)
	NET (New English Translation)
	RSV (Revised Standard Version)
	KJV (King James Version)
	NKJV (New King James Version)
<u>Thought for Thought (Dynamic)</u>  Used for study	HCSB (Holman Christian Standard Bible)
	NRSV (New Revised Standard Version)
	NAB (New American Bible)
	NIV (New International Version)
	TNIV (Today's New International Version)
	NCV (New Century Version)
<u>Paraphrase</u>  Best for devotional reading and gaining different perspectives	NLT (New Living Translation)
	NirV (New International Readers Version)
	GNT (Good News Translation)
	CEV (Contemporary English Version)
	TLB (The Living Bible)
	MSG (The Message)

**Table 2—Bible Translation Comparison**

8. Consider the chart on Bible translations to answer the following questions:  
 When you are *studying* the Bible why is it important to choose a translation that is as close to the original language as possible?

What Bible do you currently use? Is it a translation that enhances your study of Bible?

# The Authority of the Bible

In the previous section on the origin of the Scriptures, we gained a basic understanding of how we have arrived at our modern-day Bible. The LORD has preserved His God-breathed Word with accuracy and reliability. Now let's look at some of the reasons *why* the Bible has authority over our lives. In this section we will discuss:

1. WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS ABOUT ITSELF
2. WHAT CHRIST SAYS ABOUT SCRIPTURES
3. WHAT NEW TESTAMENT WRITERS SAY ABOUT THE SCRIPTURES

In addition to these reasons why the Bible has authority, we will look at the corroboration of Scripture from sources outside of the Bible: WHAT OUTSIDE SOURCES SAY ABOUT THE BIBLE

## 1. What the Bible Says About Itself

To help you understand what the Bible says about itself, a few passages are given below, then questions are given to help you consider better what the verses say.

9. Underline the time phrases in the passages below then answer the questions.

*Isaiah 40:8—The grass withers, the flower fades, but the word of our God will stand forever.*

*1 Peter 1:24-25a—All flesh is like grass and all its glory like the flower of grass. The grass withers, and the flower falls, but the word of the Lord remains forever.*

What do these passages say about God's Word?

How does this compare with earthly things?

What do you think is the significance of this verse being included in the Bible in the Old Testament and then again in the New Testament?

## The Scriptures—Week 1

10. Read the following verses then answer the questions:

*2 Samuel 22:31—This God—his way is perfect; the word of the Lord proves true; he is a shield for all those who take refuge in him.*

*John 17:17—Sanctify them in the truth; your word is truth.*

What do we learn about God's Word from these verses?

How does this contrast with modern day views of truth?

11. What does the following verse reveal about the Word of God?

*Psalm 119:105—Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.*

How can you practically use the Word of God as a lamp to your feet?

Let's look at another way the Bible proves its authority. Look up the following passages and under each pair write what connection you see between the two.

12. What connection do you see between these two passages?

Isaiah 7:14 & Matthew 1:22-23

13. What connection do you see between these two passages?

Isaiah 53:7 & Mark 15:4-5

14. What connection do you see between these two passages?

Psalm 16:10 & Matthew 28:6

15. What connection do you see between these passages?

Jeremiah 29:10-11, Isaiah 44:28 & 2 Chronicles 36:22-23



## The Scriptures—Week 1

These are only a few examples of the hundreds of prophecies that have been fulfilled down to the tiniest detail. In the book of Daniel we can see the rise and fall of every major empire from Persia to Rome, and Isaiah 53 alone contains a number of prophecies that were fulfilled through Jesus.

**HOW GREAT IS OUR GOD TO PROVIDE US WITH A WRITTEN RECORD OF HIS PROMISES FULFILLED!**

## 2. What Christ Says About the Scriptures

Jesus was fierce in confronting wrong teachings and beliefs of the Pharisees, yet He never corrected any words from the Old Testament because He knew they were perfectly inspired and trustworthy. Instead, He often quoted them and used them as the pinnacle of His arguments against various groups. Let's look at one of the many examples of this.

When Jesus was tempted by Satan in the desert, He quotes Deuteronomy 8:3. This is recorded in the gospel of Matthew, chapter 4.

*Matthew 4:3-4—And the tempter came and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become loaves of bread.” But he answered, “It is written, ‘Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that comes from the mouth of God.’”*

16. What does Matthew 4:3-4 tell you about the Old Testament and what Jesus thought about the words written in it?

17. According to the two verses below, which Old Testament writings did Jesus attest to as being Scripture?

*Luke 24:27—And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, he interpreted to them in all the Scriptures the things concerning himself.*

*Luke 24:44—Then he said to them, “These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you, that everything written about me in the Law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled.”*

### DID YOU KNOW

According to *The Moody Handbook of Theology*, “God said,” or “Thus says the LORD” appears in the Bible over 3,800 times!<sup>7</sup>

### 3. What New Testament Writers Say About the Scriptures

The following verses give insight into how the New Testament writers thought of the Scriptures:

*1 Corinthians 2:13—And we impart this in words not taught by human wisdom but taught by the Spirit, interpreting spiritual truths to those who are spiritual.*

*1 Corinthians 14:36–37—Or was it from you that the word of God came? Or are you the only ones it has reached? If anyone thinks that he is a prophet, or spiritual, he should acknowledge that the things I am writing to you are a command of the Lord.*

*Hebrews 1:1—Long ago, at many times and in many ways, God spoke to our fathers by the prophets.*

18. According to these verses, where did these writers get their empowerment to write what they did?

In Peter's second letter, the Apostle Peter comments on Paul's letters.

*2 Peter 3: 15–16—And count the patience of our Lord as salvation, just as our beloved brother Paul also wrote to you according to the wisdom given him, as he does in all his letters when he speaks in them of these matters. There are some things in them that are hard to understand, which the ignorant and unstable twist to their own destruction, as they do the other Scriptures.*

19. At the very end of this passage, what does Peter call Paul's writings?

What does this show us about how Peter viewed the writings of Paul?

### 4. What Outside Sources Say About the Bible

Now that we have looked within Scripture to validate itself, let's look outside of Scripture for a moment. As we do this, it is important to note that there is no authority for us that is higher than the Bible. We can use science, archaeology, and history as a resource, but our ultimate authority is the Bible. Some people may call this kind of statement circular reasoning because we are saying the Bible is true because the Bible says it's true, but even outside sources don't contradict the Bible.

According to John MacArthur in *Biblical Doctrine*, "Not one historical event or person in the Bible has been proven false. Even apparent inconsistencies have been answered in a way that confirms the historical veracity of the Scriptures."<sup>8</sup>

## The Scriptures—Week 1

There are many examples of this but one that stands out is Jericho. Archaeologists have uncovered much of the city of Jericho and have confirmed from their findings an area where the wall fell flat so the Israelites could climb through and conquer the city, just as the Bible records (Joshua 6:20).

Josephus Flavius (37 A.D. – ca 100 A.D.) is another extra-biblical source who has provided us with helpful information about Jesus and Jewish life in the 1<sup>st</sup> century. He was born in Jerusalem and is best known among Christians for his work entitled, *The Antiquities of the Jews*, in which he writes of a wise man called Jesus. This is one of the earliest pieces of historical evidence for Jesus outside the New Testament.<sup>9</sup>

In conclusion, we can see that the Bible has authority through what it says about itself, what Jesus said about it, and what the Old Testament writers said about it. In addition, sources outside the Bible, such as archaeology, also demonstrate the authenticity of the Scriptures.

Knowing this we can rest in the knowledge that the Bible is true and worthy to have authority over our lives. Let us trust it to guide our paths in life, comfort our hearts and lead us in truth and wisdom that only God can supply.

# The Sufficiency of Scripture

The Bible is not a *comprehensive* book. It doesn't tell us every detail we want to know (such as whether to move to Phoenix, AZ), but it is *sufficient* or adequate in terms of what we do need to know in order to live an obedient life that pleases God.

20. Look up the following verses and write down how or why the Bible is sufficient:

Proverbs 4:5

John 17:17

2 Timothy 3:15

Hebrews 4:12

2 Peter 1:3

## The Scriptures—Week 1

A concise statement about the sufficiency of Scripture is found in 2 Timothy 3:16-17.

*2 Timothy 3:16-17—All Scripture is breathed out by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.*

21. In 2 Timothy 3:16-17 we see four specific ways in which the Bible is used by God in the lives of believers. Match the words with their definitions below the verse. Use a dictionary if you need help.

- |            |   |   |
|------------|---|---|
| Teaching   | • | • A change that rectifies an error or inaccuracy                |
| Reproof    | • | • Ideas or principles taught by an authority                    |
| Correction | • | • The action of teaching a particular skill or type of behavior |
| Training   | • | • Criticism for a fault: rebuke                                 |

22. When has God used Scripture to correct you? How did you take the correction?

23. Describe a time in your life when someone loved you enough to reprove you with truth grounded in Scripture.

24. Fill in the "goal" of Scripture according to verse 17: that the man of God may be

-----, equipped for every -----.

25. Are there good works in your life that you believe God has called you to that you are not doing because you feel unequipped?

How does this truth challenge that feeling?

What steps can you take to become better equipped?

**REVIEW THE RICHNESS OF WHAT YOU HAVE LEARNED FROM THIS SECTION ON THE SUFFICIENCY OF SCRIPTURE. IS THERE ANY OTHER BOOK LIKE THE BIBLE?! PRAISE AND WORSHIP GOD FOR THIS WONDERFUL GIFT!**

# The Scriptures—Week Two

## How to Study the Bible

The Bible is God's self-revelation. He wants us to know Him, and we learn about Him through His written Word. You do not need to have a degree in theology to read and understand the Bible; however, it is important to learn to handle His Word correctly.

*2 Timothy 2:15—Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a worker who has no need to be ashamed, rightly handling the word of truth.*

### Literal-Grammatical-Historical Interpretation of Scripture

At Cornerstone Bible Church our Statement of Faith affirms the use of the literal-grammatical-historical interpretation of Scripture.<sup>10</sup>

#### LITERAL

We take the words in Scripture for what they mean in their normal, or plain sense. The "Golden Rule" of biblical interpretation as put forth by Dr. David L. Cooper has been shortened to the catchy phrase, "When the plain sense of Scripture makes common sense, seek no other sense, lest it result in nonsense."

#### GRAMMATICAL

We follow the grammatical rules of literature recognizing tools such as similes, metaphors, etc.

#### HISTORICAL

We seek to determine the historical context and what the passage meant to the original hearers and then after that, what it means to us.

### Genres

The Bible contains different types of literature, or *genres*. The Bible is one volume which contains smaller books of different genres. It is important to determine what kind of book you are studying in order to interpret it correctly. For example, you would not read a history book the same way you would read a book of poetry. You will see different labels for biblical genres, but in general the Bible contains The Law, History, Poetry or Wisdom Literature, Prophecy, the Gospels, and Letters. See *Figure 1—Books of the Bible Genres* for a more specific list of biblical genres. (Note: This is a general listing. Some books could fall under two categories.)

The Scriptures—Week 2

The Bible																	
Old Testament																	
Genesis	Exodus	Leviticus	Numbers	Deuteronomy		Joshua	Judges	Ruth	1 Samuel	2 Samuel	1 Kings	2 Kings	1 Chronicles	2 Chronicles	Ezra	Nehemiah	Esther
The Law							History										
		Job	Psalms	Proverbs	Ecclesiastes	Song of Songs					Isaiah	Jeremiah	Lamentations	Ezekiel	Daniel		
Poetry/Wisdom Literature							Major Prophets										
		Hosea	Joel	Amos	Obadiah	Jonah	Micah	Nahum	Habakkuk	Zephaniah	Haggai	Zechariah	Malachi				
Minor Prophets																	
New Testament																	
			Matthew	Mark	Luke	John							Acts				
Gospels							History										
	Romans	1 Corinthians	2 Corinthians	Galatians	Ephesians	Philippians	Colossians	1 Thessalonians	2 Thessalonians				1 Timothy	2 Timothy	Titus	Philemon	
To Churches				LETTERS BY PAUL				To Individuals									
	Hebrews	James	1 Peter	2 Peter	1 John	2 John	3 John	Jude					Revelation				
General Letters								Prophecy									

Figure 1—Books of the Bible Genres

## Inductive Bible Study

Learning to study the Bible inductively is a valuable tool in learning how to correctly interpret God's Word for yourself. Following are the basic steps of inductive study.

NOTE: In the Appendix at the end of this section you will find "How to Study the Bible: Steps to an Inductive Bible Study" which offers a fuller explanation of these steps. In the Appendix you will also find a list of supplemental resources and websites where you can access different translations of the Bible as well as other Bible study resources.

Basically, inductive study seeks to look at the Bible and see what it says about itself, not what someone else says about it. Commentaries are valuable to gain insights on the history, culture, or original language, but otherwise should not be used until you have carefully studied the passage for yourself.

### STEPS TO INDUCTIVE STUDY:

**PRAY** and ask the Holy Spirit to guide you and give insights as you study.

**READ** and reread the passage.

**Observation** — *What does the passage say in context?*

- CONTEXT IS KING. Study the whole passage in its context!
- Ask: Who? What? When? Where? Why? How?
- Look for repeated words, lists, comparisons, contrasts, expressions of time, connecting words, terms of conclusion.

**Interpretation** – *What did the passage mean to the people to whom it was originally written?*

- Remember CONTEXT IS KING!
- Follow the literal-grammatical-historical rules as explained previously.
- Cross references: What else does the Bible say about this?
- Let Scripture interpret Scripture!
- Word studies: There are many easy-to-use tools online for studying the meaning of words in their original language. (See Additional Resources in the Appendix at the end of this section.)
- AFTER carefully studying the passage for yourself, read trusted commentaries for clarification and added insights.

**Application**—*What changes do I need to make in my life in light of this passage?*

## *The Scriptures—Week 2*

Inductive Bible study is a logical and effective way to handle the Bible correctly. Be patient, be persistent and remember that you do not need to be a scholar to study Scripture. Commentaries and understanding the original Greek and Hebrew are wonderfully enlightening, but they are not essential.

God has placed the Holy Spirit within us to help us read and understand His Word. Rather than become discouraged or intimidated when opening difficult portions of the Bible, let's dive in with excitement and pray as The Psalmist did, *"Open my eyes, that I may behold wondrous things out of your law"* (Psalm 119:18). Let us also remember the verse from James which states, *"If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask God, who gives generously to all without reproach, and it will be given him"* (James 1:5).

### **The Blessings and Benefits of God's Word: A Brief Inductive Study**

*Psalm 19:7–14*

*To the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.*

<sup>7</sup> *The law of the LORD is perfect, reviving the soul; the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple;*

<sup>8</sup> *the precepts of the LORD are right, rejoicing the heart; the commandment of the LORD is pure, enlightening the eyes;*

<sup>9</sup> *the fear of the LORD is clean, enduring forever; the rules of the LORD are true, and righteous altogether.*

<sup>10</sup> *More to be desired are they than gold, even much fine gold; sweeter than honey and drippings of the honeycomb.*

<sup>11</sup> *Moreover, by them is your servant warned; in keeping them there is great reward.*

<sup>12</sup> *Who can discern his errors? Declare me innocent from hidden faults.*

<sup>13</sup> *Keep back your servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me! Then I shall be blameless, and innocent of great transgression.*

<sup>14</sup> *Let the words of my mouth and the meditation of my heart be acceptable in your sight, O LORD, my rock and my redeemer.*



## The Scriptures—Week 2

### OBSERVATION OF PSALM 19:7-14

(What does the passage say in context?)

1. PRAY and ask the Holy Spirit to guide you and give insight as you study.
2. What is the genre of the book of Psalms according to Figure 1 – Books of the Bible Genres on page 38?

The book of Psalms is a collection of songs written by Old Testament leaders such as David, Solomon, and Moses under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit. The word *psalm* means "praise" and these songs were sung during corporate worship.

3. Who wrote Psalm 19?
4. To whom was the psalm given? For what purpose? (Hint: see question 2 above).
5. Keeping the above information in mind, read all of Psalm 19 to get the context.
6. Now read verses 7-14. What kind of revelation is described in verses 7-14?
7. As you read through Psalm 19:7-14 again, double-underline the different names or terms used for God's Word and then list them on *Chart 1—Psalm 19 Observations* at the end of this lesson. The first two have been entered into the chart for you.
8. Read through Psalm 19:7-14 again. This time, with a squiggly line of a different color, mark the words which describe what God's Word is. List them on Chart 1.
9. Read through Psalm 19:7-14 once more. Using a third color, underline the benefits derived from God's Word. List them on Chart 1.
10. How long does the fear of the LORD endure?
11. How much is God's Word to be desired, according to verse 10?
12. In verses 11-13, what two errors do God's rules help us discern?
  - 1.
  - 2.
13. How does David refer to himself in verse 13?
14. How does David refer to God in verse 14?
15. What requests does David make of God in this passage?

## INTERPRETATION OF PSALM 19:7-14

(What did the passage mean to the people to whom it was originally written?)

1. Read Psalm 19:7-14 in at least one other Word for Word or Thought for Thought translation. (See previous Table 2—Bible Translation Comparisons.) Note any insights.
2. Use a dictionary to look up any words which you are unsure of and record your insights below.
5. Look again at how David refers to himself and to God as well as what he requests of God. How would you describe the David's *attitude* toward God?

### TAKE ROOT

Using available online tools, search out the meaning of the original Hebrew words for *precepts* (Ps 19:8), *presumptuous* (Ps 19:13), and any other word you are interested in exploring more fully. (See the Resources Page in the Appendix of this section.)

6. Considering the whole text again, what is David's *attitude* toward God's laws and commandments?
7. David wrote this psalm and gave it to the choirmaster to put to music. How would the people have benefited from this? (Hint: Think about how much easier it is to memorize words when they are put to music.)
8. In 2-3 sentences, how would you summarize the content and purpose of this text?
9. Consult a trusted commentary for any questions you have and add your insights below.

## APPLICATION OF PSALM 19:7-14

*(What changes do I need to make in my life in light of this passage?)*

1. Review the chart you completed on God's Word. Considering the benefits that God's Word provides, how could you spend more time in it? What changes need to be made?
2. Is there any benefit from the Word you need this week? (Example, a revived soul, wisdom, etc.). Cross-reference other verses that also contain this benefit. Meditate on them. Pray and ask God to provide this benefit then choose to trust Him.
3. Take a moment to evaluate *your* attitude toward God's word. Do you view reading and studying God's word as a chore, something done so that you can check a box? Or do you read and study God's word with humble delight and anticipation? Whatever your attitude, pray and ask God to *increase* your desire to read and study His word.
4. David spoke of two types of sins in verses 12 and 13: hidden faults and presumptuous sins (those done pridefully and willfully). Ask God to show you any hidden sins or "blind spots" in your life of which you are not aware. What will your attitude be and how will you deal with this sin if/when God reveals it to you?
5. As you think about the meaning of these verses, pray them back to God. It might sound something *like* this:

LORD, your law is perfect, it revives my soul. Your testimony is sure, it makes me wise even though I am simple. Your precepts are right and rejoice my heart. Your rules are true and desirable.

Thank you that I am warned by your Word and there is reward for me in keeping it.

I can't discern all of my errors, please forgive my sins that I'm unaware of.

Lord, I want to serve you; keep me back from willfully sinning against you! Let me not be enslaved to my sin! Then I will be blameless and innocent of great sins against you!

As I speak of your word and ponder it in my heart, let me be pleasing to you. You are my strength and my redeemer!

Studying God's eternal Word is vital to our spiritual growth; however, the Bible warns us that knowledge alone can make us arrogant (1 Cor. 8:1). As 2 Peter 3:18 says, *"But grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be the glory both now and to the day of eternity. Amen."*

**AS WE CONTINUE WITH OUR STUDY OF THE GREAT TRUTHS OF SCRIPTURE MAY WE BE DILIGENT TO GROW IN GRACE AS WELL AS IN THE KNOWLEDGE OF OUR LORD THAT WE MAY LOVE HIM MORE AND SERVE HIM BETTER.  
TO GOD BE THE GLORY.**

*The Scriptures—Week 2*

<b>GOD'S WORD</b>			
<b>Reference</b>	<b>Synonyms</b>	<b>God's Word Is:</b>	<b>Benefits</b>
Psalm 19:7	Law	Perfect	Revives the soul
	Testimony	Sure	Makes wise

**Chart 1—Psalm 19 Observations**

# Hymn for Meditation

## **“How Firm a Foundation”**

Author Unknown

How firm a foundation, ye saints of the Lord,  
Is laid for your faith in His excellent Word!  
What more can He say than to you He hath said,  
To you who for refuge to Jesus have fled?

Fear not, I am with thee; O be not dismayed,  
For I am thy God, and will still give thee aid;  
I'll strengthen thee, help thee, and cause thee to stand,  
Upheld by My righteous, omnipotent hand.

When through the deep waters I call thee to go,  
The rivers of sorrow shall not overflow;  
For I will be with thee, thy trials to bless,  
And sanctify to thee thy deepest distress.

When through fiery trials thy pathway shall lie,  
My grace, all sufficient, shall be thy supply;  
The flame shall not hurt thee; I only design  
Thy dross to consume, and thy gold to refine.

The soul that on Jesus has leaned for repose,  
I will not, I will not desert to its foes;  
That soul, though all hell should endeavor to shake,  
I'll never, no never, no never forsake!

## **Song for Kids**

### **“The B-I-B-L-E”**

The B-I-B-L-E,  
Yes, that's the book for me;  
I stand alone on the Word of God,  
The B-I-B-L-E

# Appendix

## **How to Study the Bible:**

OBSERVATION

INTERPRETATION

APPLICATION

## **The Grand Story of the Bible**

## **The Timeline of the Bible**

## **Endnotes**

## **Additional Resources**

## **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 1

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 2

REFLECTIONS

# How to Study the Bible

*Steps to an Inductive Bible Study*

## 1. Observation

*Observation* is the first component of sound Bible study. It is the foundation for accurate interpretation and application of God's Word. Observation answers the question: **What does the passage say?**

Here are some tips to help you observe Scripture:

1. Always begin with prayer! Ask the Holy Spirit to give you wisdom, counsel, and insight before, during and after you study.
2. Identify the following: *who* wrote the book, *when* was it written, *to whom* was it written, *in what style* was it written, (for example, poetry, a letter, historical narrative, etc.) and *why* was it written. This information can be found in most study Bibles or commentaries.
3. Read the passage *in context*, not in isolation. This is done by reading the verses that come before and after the passage you are studying. Better yet, read the whole chapter or the entire book!
4. Read and reread the passage. Read it in another translation. Train yourself to constantly ask: Who? What? When? Where? Why? How?
5. Mark key words and phrases. Key words and phrases give meaning to the text; they are often repeated.
6. Look for contrasting words and phrases. Contrasting words include *but*, *although*, *much more*, *otherwise* and *yet*. Identify what is being contrasted.
7. Watch for comparisons of things that are similar or alike. The words *like* and *as* are used to note a comparison. *Also*, *so also*, and *likewise* can indicate comparison as well. Identify what is being compared.
8. Mark expressions of time. Not just days, weeks, months, etc., but also words such as *after*, *before*, *now*, *then*, *when*, and *until*. Note when something is happening.
9. Look for any lists. Number each point or item as it is introduced in the text.
10. Identify a reason being given by the use of the words *because*, *for*, *since* and *for this reason*.
11. Identify a conclusion, purpose or result by the use of the words *therefore*, *so*, *so that*, *in order that* and *then*.
12. Identify terms of condition by use of the words *if* or *if...then*.
13. Mark commands given in the text.
14. Identify attributes of God (things that are true about Him).

Remember, the whole point of doing these things is to thoroughly examine the passage in order to answer the question: **What does the passage say?**

## **2. Interpretation**

The second component of Bible study that follows Observation is Interpretation. Interpretation answers the question: ***What did the passage mean to the people to whom it was originally written?***

Keep in mind that the Bible is a book “breathed out by God” (2 Timothy 3:16) using 40 different Spirit-moved men (2 Peter 1:21) over a span of 1400 years living in a Middle Eastern culture. Do your best NOT to bring preconceived ideas and Westernized thinking to the passage you are studying! Instead, let Scripture interpret Scripture. It is also important to remember that God has ONE intended meaning of Scripture but there are many different applications that can be made.

Here are some tips to help you correctly interpret Scripture:

1. Continue to pray and rely on the Holy Spirit as you study.
2. *Cross-reference* other Scriptures. Cross-referencing means to look up other verses that illustrate, give more detail about or deepen your understanding of the passage you are studying. A good study Bible gives cross-references in the margin.
3. Do *word studies* to define words or terms that you don't understand. Consult an expository dictionary or go online to [www.blueletterbible.org](http://www.blueletterbible.org) or [www.biblegateway.com](http://www.biblegateway.com).
4. Meditate on the passage you are studying. Be like a cow chewing its cud! Think about, think through and go over what you have learned. Imagine that you are a part of the historical narrative of Joshua. For example, what would it have been like to be one of the priests carrying the Ark of the Covenant as you stepped into the Jordan River and saw the water stop flowing?!
5. Paraphrase or summarize the text. In your own words, write down what the author was conveying to his original audience. Resist the temptation to add other biblical truth, your opinion or your own personal experience.
6. Finally, consult one or two trusted commentaries. A list of the best commentaries for particular books of the Bible can be found at: <https://www.challies.com/best-commentaries-on-each-book-of-the-bible>. Did the commentaries line up with your interpretation? Did the commentaries agree with one another? Do you need to adjust your interpretation?
7. As you are able, familiarize yourself with Jewish culture, language and ways of thinking. An excellent resource is the En-Gedi Resource Center. The website is: <https://engediresourcecenter.com>.

Remember, the purpose of Interpretation is to answer the question: ***What did the passage mean to the people to whom it was originally written?***



### 3. Application

Finally! After Observation and Interpretation, the third component of Bible study is Application.

Application answers the question: ***What changes do I need to make in my life in light of this passage?***

Here are some questions to ask yourself in applying God's Word to your life:

- What does this passage teach me about God? Think in terms of His character, His actions, His plans, His provision and/or His priorities.
- Is there a sin for which I need to repent?
- Do I need to start doing something? Is there anything I should stop doing?
- Is there a person whose example I should follow, or one I should not follow?
- Is there a truth I need to embrace, believe, or live by?
- Is there an encouragement or promise of God that I can claim and meditate on?
- Do I need to think differently about something in order to have a biblical world view?
- Is there something I should praise God for in this passage?
- Does this passage show me how I should relate to other believers? In what way?
- Does this passage show me how I should relate to non-believers? In what way?

RESPOND to the passage you have studied:

Repentance

Worship

Love and Gratitude

Obedience

## *The scriptures—appendix*

# The Grand Story of the Bible



In order to understand any particular part of Scripture, it is important to know the *context* of the part you are studying. In fact, while it is necessary to know the immediate context of a passage, it is also helpful to understand where the passage fits into the over-arching story of Scripture. This over-arching or grand story of the Bible can be divided into 4 parts: creation, fall, redemption and restoration.



CREATION



FALL



REDEMPTION



RESTORATION

## *The scriptures—appendix*

# The Timeline of the Bible



You are HERE!

Spent with God if you have trusted Christ as Lord & Savior  
 If not → Hell

## Endnotes

1. "What We Believe: The Scriptures," Cornerstone Bible Church, accessed June 23, 2021, <https://www.discovercbc.org/what-we-believe/>.
2. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 79.
3. R. C. Sproul, *Everyone's a Theologian: An Introduction to Systematic Theology* (York, Pennsylvania: Reformation Trust Publishing, 2014), Kindle edition.
4. Norman L. Geisler and William E. Nix, *From God to Us: How We Got Our Bible* (Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2012), 201-203.
5. Adapted from Geisler and Nix, "From God to Us" 408.
6. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 128.
7. Enns, Paul, *The Moody Handbook of Theology*, "Divine Origin of the Bible: Claim of the Bible" (Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2014), electronic edition.
8. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 102.
9. "Who was Flavius Josephus?," Got Questions Ministries, accessed June 23, 2021, <https://www.gotquestions.org/Flavius-Josephus.html>.
10. Cornerstone Bible Church, "The Scriptures."

## Additional Resources

- Arthur, Kay, David Arthur, and Pete DeLacy. *How to Study Your Bible*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, 1994/2010.
- Cornerstone Bible Church. "The Bible is Enough." Sermon by Pastor Kirk Welch, June 27, 2021. Stand-Alone Sermons. <https://www.discovercbc.org/sermons>
- Hendricks, Howard and William Hendricks. *Living by The Book*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2007.
- Whiston, William, Translator. *The Works of Josephus*. Lynn, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, 1980.

## Helpful Websites for Bible Study Aids

- <https://www.biblegateway.com/>
- <https://www.blueletterbible.org/>

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week two*

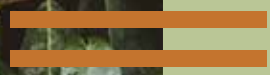
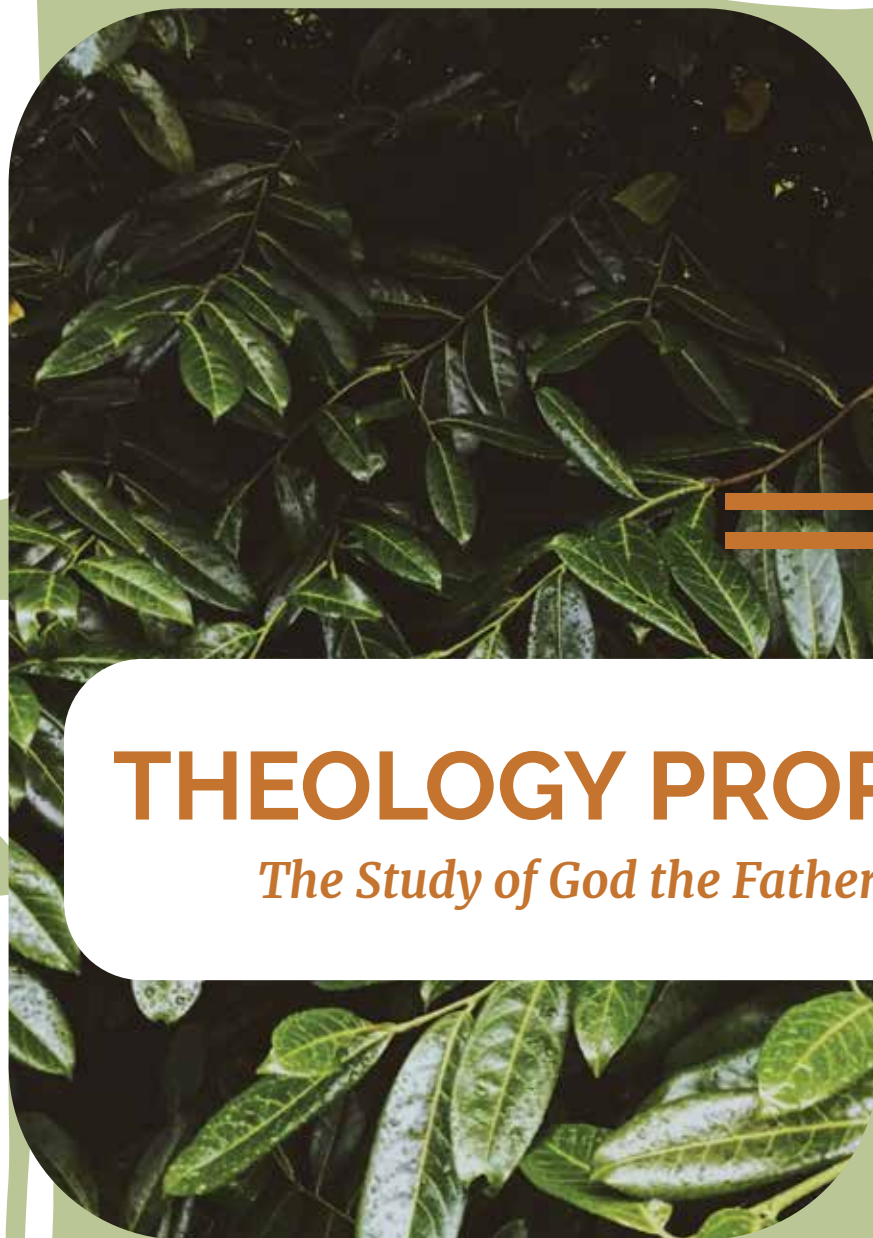


*The scriptures*

*reflections*



*reflections*



# **THEOLOGY PROPER**

*The Study of God the Father*



# The Father-Week One

## Introduction

How would you respond if someone asked you, "What is God like?"

Ask this same question of the average man or woman on the streets of America today, and no doubt a variety of answers would be given. We may hear responses like these, perhaps not outright, but implied:

God is like...

- The "man upstairs" who distantly but benevolently watches over us and is only needed in times of crisis.
- A divine genie whose only purpose in life is to fulfill our every wish and make us happy.
- A cosmic killjoy who doesn't want us to have any fun.

Some may even respond that they are unable to answer the question because they don't believe there is a God. (Uh oh, think back on how God reveals Himself through general revelation).

Our thoughts of God are often self-serving, too low, and in the case of the atheist, completely wrong!

A.W. Tozer (1897-1963), an American pastor and author, profoundly stated,

"What comes into our minds when we think about God is the most important thing about us . . . I believe there is scarcely an error in doctrine or a failure in applying Christian ethics that cannot be traced finally to imperfect and ignoble thoughts about God."<sup>1</sup>

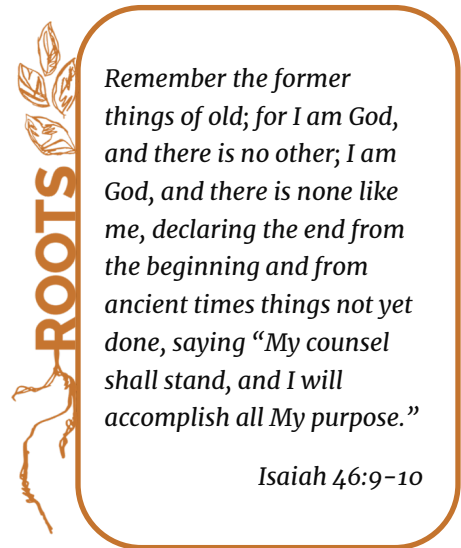
Read the quotation again. Do you understand why it is important that we think correctly about God; not how we imagine Him to be and not how we think He should be, but how HE IS? Thinking rightly about God impacts every area of our lives including our motives, attitudes and decision making and causes even the mundane (think laundry) to be elevated to the profound (think worship).

Of course, to have correct thoughts about God we must turn to His Word. Let's read what God says about Himself in the book of Isaiah.

*Isaiah 46:9-10—Remember the former things of old; for I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like me, declaring the end from the beginning and from ancient times things not yet done, saying "My counsel shall stand, and I will accomplish all My purpose."*

Read the above verses again.

**WHO IS A GOD LIKE OUR GOD?!**



# Knowing God the Father

Get ready to be humbled and filled with awe as we learn about our amazing God. In this section we will study God the Father from four different perspectives.

1. THE TRINITY (His Essence)
2. THE LOVING FATHER
3. THE ATTRIBUTES OF GOD (His Character Qualities)
4. THE NAMES OF GOD (What He Calls Himself)

This first week of study will cover the first 3 of these 4 aspects of God. The names of God will be covered in week 2 of the study.

## 1. The Trinity (His Essence)

To better understand what God is like we must begin with the triunity of God, often called the "Trinity". The word "Trinity" portrays what the Bible teaches:

- There is one God (unity).
- God is three distinct persons (Father, Son and Spirit).
- Each person of God is fully God. (God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit).

An ancient diagram from the 13<sup>th</sup> century known as "The Shield of the Trinity" illustrates this well.

## TAKE ROOT

Did you know that the word *trinity* is not in the Bible? The term is derived from *Trinitas*, which is a combination of two Latin words, *unitas*, which means "unity," and *trias*, which means "three." It was first used by Tertullian, an early Christian theologian (ca 155-220 A.D.), to describe what is seen in the Scriptures - God is one essence subsisting in three distinct persons.

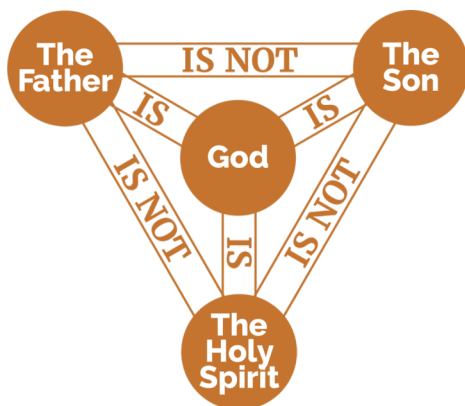


Figure 1—"The Shield of the Trinity"<sup>2</sup>

Here we see that the Father *is* God, the Son *is* God, and the Holy Spirit *is* God. Additionally, we see that the Father *is not* the Son, the Father *is not* the Holy Spirit, and the Son *is not* the Holy Spirit. They are all God and yet all are distinct persons from one another.

## The Father-Week 1

Let's look at examples from Scripture that demonstrate the reality of the Trinity.

1. In this first example from the book of Matthew, notice the three distinct persons of the Trinity.

*Matthew 3:16-17 — <sup>16</sup>And when Jesus was baptized, immediately he went up from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming to rest on him; <sup>17</sup>and behold, a voice from heaven said, "This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased."*

Draw a simple (stick figure) diagram of the baptism scene from this passage and label the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

What activity is each person of God doing as Jesus is being baptized?

2. Next consider Paul's words to the church in Rome as he contrasts those who are in the flesh (unbelievers) with those who are in the Spirit (believers).

*Romans 8:9-11 — <sup>9</sup>You, however, are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if in fact the Spirit of God dwells in you. Anyone who does not have the Spirit of Christ does not belong to him. <sup>10</sup>But if Christ is in you, although the body is dead because of sin, the Spirit is life because of righteousness. <sup>11</sup>If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, he who raised Christ Jesus from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through his Spirit who dwells in you.*

The third person of the Trinity is mentioned numerous times in this passage. Circle every reference to the Spirit. Besides "Spirit," by what other names is the Spirit called? List them below.

How do these names demonstrate that the Spirit is fully God?

List some of the activities of the Spirit and the other two persons of the Godhead in this passage.

How does this demonstrate that God is one in essence subsisting in three distinct persons?

## The Father-Week 1

3. For more examples of the Trinity in Scripture, complete the chart below.

<b>Functions/Attributes of the Godhead</b>			
<b>Reference</b>	<b>Father</b>	<b>Son</b>	<b>Holy Spirit</b>
<b>John 3:7-8, 16</b>	Loved the world & gave His Son	Believe in Him & have eternal life	Must be born again of the Spirit
<b>John 14:16-17</b>			
<b>Acts 2:32-33</b>			
<b>2 Corinthians 13:14</b>			
<b>1 Peter 1:1-2</b>			

**Chart 1—Functions/Attributes of the Godhead**

In conclusion, the Father, Son and Holy Spirit are not three separate Gods but in some mysterious way, outside of our finite human understanding, they exist as three equally divine persons within ONE essence.

***ISN'T GOD MORE GLORIOUS THAN WE COULD EVER IMAGINE? HE IS WORTHY OF ALL PRAISE AND HONOR. TAKE A MOMENT TO WORSHIP HIM AND THANK HIM FOR WHO HE IS.***

## 2. The Loving Father

Now that we recognize God is one in essence, subsisting in three distinct persons, and all are fully God, let's focus our attention on the First Person of the Trinity, God the Father. Even before God created the world, He was a Father loving His Son. In John 17:24 Jesus states, "*Father, I desire that they also, whom you have given me, may be with me where I am, ... because you loved me before the foundation of the world.*"

Have you ever stopped and thought about the significance of knowing God as *Father*?

There are numerous examples in Scripture where *God* and *Father* are equated.

Answer the following questions based on the verse below them:

4. How does Jesus refer to God when speaking to His disciples? Include the possessive adjective. *Matthew 5:16—In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father in heaven.*
  
5. How does Jesus teach His disciples to address God in prayer? Include the possessive adjective. *Matthew 6:9—Pray then like this: Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name.*



## The Father-Week 1

6. How does Jesus Himself address God in prayer?

*Mark 14:36—And he said, “Abba, Father, all things are possible for you. Remove this cup from me. Yet not what I will, but what you will.*

Note: *Abba* is an Aramaic word for father signifying personal intimacy.

7. How is God referred to in this verse?

*1 Corinthians 15:24—Then comes the end, when he delivers the kingdom to God the Father after destroying every rule and every authority and power.*

8. How does God refer to Himself in the following verse?

*2 Corinthians 6:18—And I will be a father to you, and you shall be sons and daughters to me, says the Lord Almighty.*

9. How is God referred to in this verse?

*1 Thessalonians 3:13—so that he may establish your hearts blameless in holiness before our God and Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus with all the saints.*

This is just a small sampling of verses demonstrating God as Father BUT is God a *loving* Father to everyone? As always, let's look to Scripture for the answer.

10. Read Romans 5:8. How did God demonstrate His love?

11. Read John 14:6-11. How does knowing Christ allow us to know God as a loving, heavenly Father?

12. Read 1 John 3:1. What is the result of coming to God through Christ? Fill in the blanks.

We can now call Him \_\_\_\_\_ and we are called \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.

## The Father-Week 1

13. Read Ephesians 2:1-3. Who is a person's "father" if one does not know Jesus as Lord and Savior of their life?

14. Fill in the blanks according to Ephesians 2:3.

<sup>3</sup>*Among whom we all once lived in the passions of our flesh, carrying out the desires of the body and the mind, and were by nature \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.*

If you do not know Jesus Christ, the eternal Son of God as Lord and Savior of your life then you are not one of God's children but are under His wrath! Submit to Christ today and enjoy a deep, intimate relationship with God as Father.

How can you become a child of God? Admit that you have sinned against God. Ask Him to forgive you. Place your trust in Christ alone to rescue you. Jesus paid the penalty for your sins when He died on the cross and rose from the dead. He is alive! Follow Him by faith from this day forward.

15. God is a patient, loving, and gracious Father. Perhaps your relationship with your earthly father has not been a good one and this tarnishes your view of God as Father. How can you correct your view of God?

We close this section with a prayer for you that Paul prayed for the believers in Ephesus.

*Ephesians 3:17-19—...that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith – that you being rooted and grounded in love, may have strength to comprehend with all the saints what is the breadth and length and height and depth, and to know the love of Christ that surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled with all the fullness of God.*

### 3. The Attributes of God (His Character Qualities)

While we can never fully know God, there is much about Himself that He has revealed in Scripture including His attributes. The attributes of God can be defined as "his characteristics, the various aspects of his essence or nature" such as being holy, just, or good.<sup>3</sup> Each distinct attribute is completely and perfectly present in God and fully expressed without taking away from any other attribute. God is not partly love, partly just or partly good as if these attributes are slices of a pie making up a whole. Rather, God is fully love, fully just, and fully good and He completely expresses all of His attributes, at all times.

God has passed on some of His attributes to mankind, who is made in His image. These are God's **communicable** attributes. Some of His attributes are unique to Him and not passed on to mankind. These are His **incommunicable** attributes.

## The Father-Week 1

### ATTRIBUTES NOT PASSED ON (INCOMMUNICABLE)

God is Self Sufficient

God is completely independent, that is He does not depend upon any other being or substance for His existence or sustenance. He has no needs.

God is Unchangeable (Immutable)

God's essence and character do not change. He is the same yesterday, today and forever.

God is Infinite and Eternal (Timeless)

God has no beginning, and He has no end. God interacts in time with mankind and His creation, but He is not bound by it. God is infinite in that He has no limits (limitless) and is beyond measure (measureless).

God is Everywhere (Omnipresent)

God is outside of space and time, but He acts within both space and time. God is fully present everywhere.

God is All-Knowing (Omniscient)

God knows everything past, present, and future. Nothing ever takes Him by surprise.

God is All-Powerful (Omnipotent)

God can do anything that is consistent with His character and nature. Nothing is too hard for God.

God has Supreme Authority (Sovereign)

God does everything He desires or wills to do in relation to His creation according to His plan. Nothing is outside of His control.

God is Creator

God is THE creator, and nothing would be in existence without His creating it.

16. Use the definitions above to connect the attribute with its correlating Bible passage.

Genesis 1:1

Self Sufficient

Psalms 102:25-27

Everywhere

Psalms 139:7-10

All-Knowing

Psalms 147:5

Creator

Isaiah 55:9

Sovereign

Acts 17:24-25

All-Powerful

Ephesians 1:4

Infinite and Eternal

2 Peter 3:8

Unchangeable

## *The Father-Week 1*

17. Which of these attributes of God stands out to you most or gives you the most comfort?

18. Which of these attributes are confusing for you or difficult to understand?

### **ATTRIBUTES PASSED ON (COMMUNICABLE)**

Now we will move to the attributes which are passed on to humans. Because we are made in the image of God, we share some of His characteristics. Although we will never reach God's perfection while we are in the body, we should reflect His character more and more as we grow in sanctification.

God is Spirit

God the Father is not flesh and blood like a human being. Although we have flesh and blood, we also have a spirit. John 4:24 states, "God is spirit and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."

God is Wise

God knows what is best and skillfully acts to accomplish His perfect will for His own glory and for the good of others.

God is Truthful and Faithful

God's truth is the only real truth. He never deceives, manipulates, or lies. He always keeps His promises.

God is Good

God's goodness embodies all that is "virtuous, beneficial and beautiful."<sup>4</sup> He can do no wrong or harm.

God is Loving

God feels and demonstrates everlasting affection toward His children. His love for them is not based on their behavior, works or response. His love is sacrificial and giving.

God is Gracious

God gives His children blessings and favor they don't deserve.

God is Merciful

God does not give His children the punishment they deserve.

God is Holy

God is set apart, perfect and completely sinless.

God is Righteous (Just)

God is always right about everything for all eternity.

God is Longsuffering (Patient)

God always acts calmly with proper affection according to his eternal sovereign plan. He never "loses His temper" but is patient toward sinners in spite of their continual disobedience.

## The Father-Week 1

19. Look up Galatians 5:22-23 and list the attributes that we share with God through His Spirit.

Think about this metaphor from Galatians for a minute and look up John 15:5. Does the tree have to work to make fruit, or does it naturally make fruit? Who enables us to bear fruit?

Which fruit of the Spirit seems easiest for you to bear? Why do you think this is?

Which fruit of the Spirit seems more difficult for you to see evidence of in your life? Why?

20. Match the remaining attributes with their correlating Bible passages.

Deuteronomy 32:4	Holy
Psalms 33:4	Just
Lamentations 3:22	Spirit
John 4:23-24	Wise
Romans 16:27	Merciful
Ephesians 2:7-9	Gracious
Revelation 4:8	Faithful

21. Which one of the passed-on attributes stands out to you the most as a comfort of God's character?

## *The Father-Week 1*

### **GOD'S ATTRIBUTES ON DISPLAY**

One passage of Scripture that wonderfully displays God's attributes is 2 Kings 19. Hezekiah, a godly king, is ruling over the southern kingdom of Judah. It's 701 B.C. and he is facing a crisis. The Assyrians, who have already conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, have now turned their attention to the southern kingdom of Judah. They are threatening to invade the city of Jerusalem. Sennacherib, the king of Assyria has sent a letter to King Hezekiah openly defying the LORD and likening Him to the powerless gods of the nations he has already conquered.

22. Read 2 Kings 19:14-19 and respond to the following:

Where does King Hezekiah take the letter and what does he do with it according to verse 14?

As you read King Hezekiah's beautiful prayer, list the attributes or characteristics of God that he states or implies in calling upon the LORD for deliverance from the Assyrians.

In the next portion of this chapter, Isaiah the prophet speaks for the LORD in response to King Hezekiah's prayer.

23. Read 2 Kings 19:20-28; 32-34.

List all the attributes God states or implies about Himself in these verses.

24. Read 2 Kings 19:35-36.

How did God answer King Hezekiah's prayer?

Which attributes of God were demonstrated in these verses?

## **The Father-Week 1**

25. How much are God's attributes a part of *your* prayers? How might His attributes become a greater part of your prayer life?

26. How can knowing God's attributes increase your trust and confidence in Him?

## **Conclusion**

We began this week with the question, "What is God like?" Turning to His word we have learned that He is one in essence subsisting in three persons who are each fully God – God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. We have learned He is a loving Father to His children who have come to Him through His Son. We have learned His attributes, those that He alone possesses (incommunicable) and those He has chosen to share with human beings made in His image (communicable). The LORD is the Creator of the universe, and He is also the One who numbers the hairs on our heads; so transcendent and yet so intimate! Isn't He so much MORE than we can imagine? Isn't He so much BETTER than we can think? Who is a god like our God; a God we can call Father? There is none.

***MAY OUR HEARTS OVERFLOW WITH HIS ATTRIBUTES AS WE WALK IN THE SPIRIT RESULTING IN LIVES THAT GIVE HIM THE PRAISE, HONOR, AND GLORY HE SO RICHLY DESERVES!***

## *The Father-Week 1*

(This page intentionally left blank)



# The Father—Week Two

*This study is covering four aspects of God - though there are infinitely more! The first three were covered in week 1. The fourth aspect, the names of God, will be covered in this week.*

## **4. The Names of God (What He Calls Himself)**

*What's in a name?* In many ways our name is our identity. We can often tell how well a person knows us by what they call us. Do they call us by our formal name, a nickname, or by that special name only those closest to us use?

Throughout history many notable people have become well known by names which denoted their character. William, Duke of Normandy in France, invaded England in 1066, forever changing English history. Since that day, history knows him as William the Conqueror. Five centuries later, Queen Mary I of England burned hundreds of Protestants at the stake in an attempt to stamp out the Reformation there. Hence, her name in history, Bloody Mary.

In the culture of the Old Testament names were very important as they were meant to represent a person's character. The same is true of God's name. God declared that His name was holy and was to be treated with reverence.

This can be seen in the Ten Commandments where God declared that we are not to consider His name empty or useless.

*Exodus 20:7—You shall not take the name of the LORD your God in vain, for the LORD will not hold him guiltless who takes his name in vain.*

Additionally, in the book of Leviticus the Israelites are warned not to profane God's holy name. (See Leviticus 20:3; 21:6; 22:2, 32.)

1. In contrast how did Jesus tell us we are to treat the Father's name? Read Matthew 6:9. (Use a dictionary to look up this word if it is unfamiliar to you.)

***THERE IS GREAT BLESSING WHICH COMES FROM GIVING PROPER HONOR TO GOD'S HOLY NAME.***

***1 CHRONICLES 16:29—ASCRIBE TO THE LORD THE GLORY DUE HIS NAME; BRING AN OFFERING AND COME BEFORE HIM! WORSHIP THE LORD IN THE SPLENDOR OF HOLINESS.***

2. Look up the following verses and note how we are to treat God's name and/or the blessing derived from His name.

1 Chronicles 16:10

Psalm 30:4

Psalm 33:21

Proverbs 18:10

## The Father-Week 2

Since God commands us to revere Him and glory in His name, and since He also promises joy and protection when we do, it is to our benefit to *know* His name!

Beginning with Genesis 1:1 God began progressively unveiling His attributes and character through His names. The Names of God chart gives a listing of many of the Hebrew names of God. Don't rush through these names. Meditate on them.

### TAKE ROOT

#### THE NAMES OF GOD

<i>Elohim</i>	The Creator (Gen. 1:1)
<i>El Elyon</i>	God Most High (Gen. 14:18)
<i>El Roi</i>	The God Who Sees (Gen. 16:13)
<i>El Shaddai</i>	God Almighty, The Nourisher of Life, Comforter (Gen. 17:1-2)
<i>El Olam</i>	The Everlasting God (Gen. 21:33)
<i>Adonai</i>	Lord, Master (Gen. 15:2)
<i>Yahweh (Jehovah/LORD)</i>	LORD, Self-Existent One (Ex 3:14)
<i>Jehovah-jireh</i>	The LORD Will Provide (Gen. 22:14)
<i>Jehovah-rapha</i>	The LORD That Heals (Ex 15:26)
<i>Jehovah-nissi</i>	The LORD My Banner (Ex 17:15)
<i>Jehovah-mekoddishkem</i>	LORD Who Sanctifies You (Ex 31:13)
<i>Jehovah-shalom</i>	The LORD Is Peace (Judges 6:24)
<i>Jehovah-sabaoth</i>	The LORD of Hosts (I Sam. 1:3)
<i>Jehovah-raah</i>	The LORD My Shepherd (Ps 23:1)
<i>Jehovah-tsidkenu</i>	LORD Our Righteousness (Jer. 23:6)
<i>Jehovah-shammah</i>	The LORD Is There (Ez 48:35)

In the following section we will look in more detail at

- A. ELOHIM
- B. EL ROI
- C. YAHWEH
- D. JEHOVAH-JIREH
- E. JEHOVAH-RAAH

We have a God who *wants* us to know Him. How awesome is that! God also desires that we love Him with all our heart and mind and strength. The more we know Him, the more we will love Him. We are invited to have a relationship with the Creator of the Universe, with the God who is Almighty, with the Everlasting God—the One who can guide us, give us peace, and provide all our needs. Let us worship His holy Name.

## TAKE ROOT

Do further study on other names which interest you. Look up the Scripture references given on the chart and read the context of the name. Consider using the online resources listed in the previous lesson on *The Scriptures* to do a word study.

### “EL SHADDAI”

BY MICHAEL CARD<sup>5</sup>

*EL SHADDAI, EL SHADDAI, EL ELYON NA ADONAI;  
AGE TO AGE YOU’RE STILL THE SAME BY THE POWER OF THE NAME.  
EL SHADDAI, EL SHADDAI, \*ERKAHMKA NA ADONAI;  
WE WILL PRAISE AND LIFT YOU HIGH, EL SHADDAI.*

*(\*ERKAHMKA: WE WILL LOVE YOU)*

## A. Elohim

### THE CREATOR GOD

*Elohim* is the word the Bible uses to introduce us to God.

*Genesis 1:1–3—In the beginning, God [elohim] created the heavens and the earth. The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God [elohim] was hovering over the face of the waters. <sup>3</sup>And God [elohim] said, “Let there be light,” and there was light.*

Elohim is the plural form of *el* which is the generic Hebrew word for god. It means mighty, strong. In reference to God, it expresses the general idea of glory, power, and sovereignty.

## The Father—Week 2

And what does it mean when Genesis 1:1 says that the heavens and earth were created by *elohim*, a plural word? Here in the first verse of the Bible we have our first hint of the Trinity. Let's explore that concept a little further.

3. Complete the following chart by filling in the role each person of the Trinity performed in creation. It has been started for you. (There will not be something for every box.)

Reference	God (Father)	Son	Holy Spirit
<b>Genesis 1:1</b>	Created heavens & earth		
<b>Genesis 1:2</b>			
<b>Genesis 1:3</b>			
<b>Psalm 104:30</b> (see vs 24-30 for context)			
<b>John 1:3</b> (See 1:1-3, 14 for context)			
<b>Hebrews 1:2</b>			
<b>Hebrews 11:3</b>			
<b>Colossians 1:15-17</b>			

**Chart 2—The Roles of the Trinity in Creation**

You can see from completing this chart that all three members of the Trinity were actively involved in creating the heavens and the earth.

Our great *Elohim* did not just create the heavens and the earth; He created man also.

*Genesis 1:27—So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.*

4. What important fact do we learn from this verse that gives every human being inestimable worth?

## The Father—Week 2

And our great *Elohim* did not just create mankind—He created you! Read Psalm 139:13-16 and stand in awe of your God.

*Psalm 139:13-16—*

- <sup>13</sup> *For you formed my inward parts;  
you knitted me together in my mother's womb.*
- <sup>14</sup> *I praise you, for I am fearfully and wonderfully made.  
Wonderful are your works;  
my soul knows it very well.*
- <sup>15</sup> *My frame was not hidden from you,  
when I was being made in secret,  
intricately woven in the depths of the earth.*
- <sup>16</sup> *Your eyes saw my unformed substance;  
in your book were written, every one of them,  
the days that were formed for me,  
when as yet there was none of them.*

**HE CREATED YOU JUST THE WAY YOU ARE FOR HIS OWN GLORY. REJOICE!**

### DID YOU KNOW

When speaking of pagan gods, plural verbs and adjectives are used as you would expect. However, when Scripture is speaking of the one true God the plural word *Elohim* is always used with singular verbs and adjectives. In his book, *The Names of God*, Nathan Stone describes it as a plurality in unity. "In the very first verse of Genesis the verb *create* is singular, and so all through the chapter and indeed through the Bible."<sup>6</sup>

We see this illustrated in Deuteronomy 10:17 and 6:4.

*Deuteronomy 10:17—For the LORD your God [elohim] is God [elohim] of gods [elohim] and Lord of lords, the great, the mighty, and the awesome God [Elohim], who is not partial and takes no bribe.*

*Deuteronomy 6:4—Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God [elohim], the LORD is one.*

Three reasons are commonly given for why the plural noun is used for the name of the one true God. One is that it is a plural of majesty such as used by rulers and kings, but that use of the plural was not known at the time.<sup>7</sup> It could very likely be used as a plural of intensity "indicating that God has such a vast fullness to his power that a plural name is appropriate to him."<sup>8</sup> And, most importantly, while this plurality does not prove the Trinity, it certainly supports it.

## B. El Roi

### THE GOD WHO SEES

The next name of God we will study is El Roi. In the Hebrew language the name literally means "You are a God who sees me."

Let's begin with some background. In Genesis 15, God makes a covenant with Abram and promises him, among other things, that Abram will have his very own son for an heir. Abram is 75 years old when this promise is made. Fast forward to Genesis 16. Ten years have passed and still no baby. Sarai decides to take things into her own hands.

5. Read Genesis 16:1-6 and answer the following questions:

What was the name of Sarai's female slave and what was her nationality?

Who does Sarai say has prevented her from having children?

Briefly explain Sarai's plan and Abram's response according to verses 2-4.

6. Go back and read Genesis 16:1-6.

How should Abram have responded to Sarai's plan?

What is Hagar's attitude toward her mistress, Sarai, after she knows she is pregnant? Look up the definition of *contempt* and write it below.

After complaining to her husband, Abram, how does Sarai treat her servant Hagar and what is Hagar's response?

7. Now read Genesis 16:7-15 and answer the following questions.

Who is this *angel of the LORD* who tenderly speaks to this frightened, run-away servant?

What does He tell her to do? Do you think this would have been hard or easy?

What does He promise to do in verse 10?

## The Father-Week 2

Fill in the blanks according to verse 11:

*Behold, you are pregnant and shall bear a son. You shall call his name \_\_\_\_\_,*

*because the \_\_\_\_\_ has \_\_\_\_\_ to your affliction.*

Ishmael means "God hears".

Write Hagar's response (verse 13) below.

Here we have an Egyptian slave girl naming God based on what she knows about His character!

There is another significant name in this passage that we don't want to miss and it's in verse 14. The well was called *Beer-lahai-roi* which means "*the well of the Living One who sees me.*" Isn't that rich with meaning? And so comforting!

8. To close out this passage, summarize what you have learned about God from the names given in Genesis 16.

How can knowing the meaning of these names make a difference:

In times when you are lonely?

In times when you are anxious or afraid?

In times when you feel like God is not listening or answering your prayers?

***THE NEXT TIME YOU FIND YOURSELF WONDERING IF GOD KNOWS OR CARES ABOUT WHAT IS HAPPENING IN YOUR LIFE, MEDITATE ON HIS NAME, EL ROI. HE IS THE GOD WHO SEES YOU AND LOOKS AFTER YOU!***

## C. Yahweh (Jehovah / LORD)

### THE "I AM"

In the Old Testament the most frequently used name for God is *Yahweh*. In fact, it is used 6,823 times—! It is God's personal, covenant name; it is the I AM name of God. In our English Bible *Yahweh* is usually written in all capital letters, either LORD or LORD. Sometimes it is written as Jehovah. (More on this later in the "Take Root" section on page 83.) Let's take a look at the richness of the name *Yahweh*.

The book of Exodus opens with the Israelites suffering as slaves in Egypt. Moses was rescued as a newborn and grew up as the son of Pharaoh's daughter. Later Moses had to flee to Midian after killing an Egyptian who was beating his people. While he was in Midian keeping his father-in-law's flock the angel of the LORD appeared to Moses from a bush which was burning but was not consumed. Naturally, Moses turned to look at this strange sight.

*Exodus 3:4-6—<sup>4</sup>When the LORD saw that he had turned aside to see, God called to him out of the bush, "Moses, Moses!" And he said, "Here I am." <sup>5</sup>Then he said, "Do not come near; take your sandals off your feet, for the place on which you are standing is holy ground." <sup>6</sup>And he said, "I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." And Moses hid his face, for he was afraid to look at God.*

God told Moses that He had seen the affliction of the Israelites in Egypt and that He would deliver them and bring them out of Egypt to Canaan, a land flowing with milk and honey. God went on to tell Moses that He was sending *him* to Pharaoh to bring the children of Israel out of Egypt!

*Exodus 3:11-15—*

*<sup>11</sup>But Moses said to God, "Who am I that I should go to Pharaoh and bring the children of Israel out of Egypt?" <sup>12</sup>He said, "But I will be with you, and this shall be the sign for you, that I have sent you: when you have brought the people out of Egypt, you shall serve God on this mountain."*

*<sup>13</sup>Then Moses said to God, "If I come to the people of Israel and say to them, 'The God of your fathers has sent me to you,' and they ask me, 'What is his name?' what shall I say to them?" <sup>14</sup>God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM." And he said, "Say this to the people of Israel: 'I AM has sent me to you.'" <sup>15</sup>God also said to Moses, "Say this to the people of Israel: 'The LORD, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.' This is my name forever, and thus I am to be remembered throughout all generations."*

9. In Exodus 3:14 above underline the name God gives Moses in answer to the question of His name. In another color mark the time phrases given in verse 15.

How long has *Yahweh* been His name? How long is it to continue to be His name?



"I AM" is GOD'S PERSONAL NAME. It is the name which sets Him apart from all other gods.

*But what does "I AM WHO I AM" mean?*

10. Next to each of the following verses write down clues to the meaning of "I AM WHO I AM."

Isaiah 43:10-11

Isaiah 48:12

Malachi 3:6

Revelation 1:8

11. How can this name of God give you an anchor in these days of ever shifting values?

## TAKE ROOT

### Why would Moses even ask God what His name was?

For one thing, the pagan cultures of his day worshiped hundreds of gods. When Moses went to Pharaoh to seek the release of the Hebrews, Pharaoh would surely ask which "god" was demanding this.

Also, remember that even to the Israelites God revealed more and more of Himself over time. While the name LORD is used occasionally in Genesis, it is not until we come to this passage in Exodus 3 that the meaning and significance of it is made known. In Exodus 6:2-3 it says, "*God spoke to Moses and said to him, 'I am the LORD. I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, as God Almighty, but by my name the LORD I did not make myself known to them.'*"

Even though God did not introduce Himself as I AM until Exodus 3, this name appears as early as Genesis 2:4 in speaking of the creation of the heavens and the earth and also when God was making a covenant with Abraham in Genesis 15-17.

## CREATION:

*Genesis 2:4—These are the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created, in the day that the LORD [Yahweh] God [Elohim] made the earth and the heavens. Genesis 2:4*

12. Think back to what you learned about the name *Elohim*. How does this use of LORD God clarify that *Elohim* is the *one* true God?

## The Father-Week 2

### COVENANT:

It was also the LORD [Yahweh] who made a covenant with Abraham promising him the land of Canaan and offspring as numerous as the stars. (Genesis 15-17)

### YAHWEH

The eternal I AM who always was and always will be.

The self-existent One. The One who never changes.

### HOW DOES GOD SAY YAHWEH, HIS PERSONAL NAME IS TO BE TREATED?

13. Look up the following verses and record how the LORD said His name is to be treated and the consequences for failure to do so.

Exodus 20:7

Leviticus 24:16 (the Name)

14. God's name is holy. It is set apart as special. It is to be revered and never used lightly. Look up the following verses and record how we *are* to use His holy name.

Psalms 99:3

Psalms 103:1

Psalms 105:3

15. How do we, as a culture, use God's name too lightly? Can you think of any examples of this? Why do you think this is so?

16. How should we respond when we hear someone treating our Lord's name too lightly or not with the dignity and humility it deserves?

17. How can we speak in a way that honors God's name and gives weight to the greatness of His name?

## TAKE ROOT

### HOW DID THE "I AM" NAME OF GOD COME TO BE TRANSLATED AS JEHOVAH, YAHWEH, AND LORD?

Since the Old Testament was originally written in Hebrew we will start with some interesting facts about ancient Hebrew.

- Hebrew is written from right to left and from the back of the book to the front.
- There is no capitalization in Hebrew.
- There is no punctuation.
- There are no vowels in the ancient manuscripts.

(Vowel points were added by Medieval Jewish scholars to make it easier to read.)

In Hebrew "I AM" is written simply as four consonants commonly referred to as the *tetragrammaton*. When rearranged to read from left to right the English sounds were originally translated as J H V H and later, more accurately, as Y H W H.

'Starting to get the picture? But, what about the vowels? And why did LORD come to be substituted for *Jehovah* or *Yahweh*?

Look back at Leviticus 24:16. What was the penalty for blaspheming the I AM name of God (YHWH)?

To be safe the Jews decided not to pronounce it at all. Why is this ironic? Look back at Exodus 3:15 to answer this question.

As time went by, the actual pronunciation of YHWH was forgotten. What were they to do when reading the Scriptures aloud in the synagogue? On the chart on the Names of God you will see that one of His names is *Adonai*, meaning *lord*, as in master or ruler. In public reading the Jews began substituting *Adonai* when they came to the unpronounceable *I AM* name of God.

When Medieval Jewish scholars began adding vowel points to the Hebrew consonants, they simply added the vowels from *Adonai*, thus arriving at *Jehovah* or *Yahweh*.

The King James Version of the Bible translated *I AM* as *Jehovah* in some of the compound names of God; for example, *Jehovah-jireh* in Genesis 22:14.

Most modern English translations keep the convention of substituting LORD for the I AM name of God, using capital letters to distinguish it from *Adonai*, Lord. When reading the Bible remember that LORD is God's personal, covenant name, the name of the eternal God who never changes and who is always present with us.

Record any insights into *Yahweh* which are especially meaningful to you.

## D. Jehovah-Jireh

### THE LORD WILL PROVIDE

*Jehovah-jireh* may be the most familiar of the Jehovah names of God. We love to cling to the promise that God will provide all we need and surely, He will. Let's explore together the fullness of God's gracious provision. We will begin by exploring Genesis 22 where this name is found.

In Genesis 15-18 we have the account of God's promise to Abraham that he would have offspring as numerous as the stars in the sky (Genesis 15:5). Later, God clarified that the son of the covenant would come through Sarah even though she was far past the age for bearing children. Indeed, in Genesis 21 we have the account of Isaac being born when Sarah was 90 and Abraham was 100 years old. God had kept His word and provided a miracle son. And then, just when they were enjoying their old age and reveling in their son, God severely tested Abraham's faith once again. Let's take a close look at this very significant passage of Scripture.

18. As you read through Genesis 22:1-18 (provided below):

- Mark the word *love* with a heart. (This is the first use of the word love in the Bible.)
- Distinctly mark each occurrence of *only son*.
- Double underline each phrase which contains the word *provide(d)*.

Genesis 22:1-18

<sup>1</sup>After these things God tested Abraham and said to him, "Abraham!" And he said, "Here I am." <sup>2</sup>He said, "Take your son, your only son Isaac, whom you love, and go to the land of Moriah, and offer him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains of which I shall tell you." <sup>3</sup>So Abraham rose early in the morning, saddled his donkey, and took two of his young men with him, and his son Isaac. And he cut the wood for the burnt offering and arose and went to the place of which God had told him. <sup>4</sup>On the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes and saw the place from afar. <sup>5</sup>Then Abraham said to his young men, "Stay here with the donkey; I and the boy will go over there and worship and come again to you." <sup>6</sup>And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering and laid it on Isaac his son. And he took in his hand the fire and the knife. So they went both of them together. <sup>7</sup>And Isaac said to his father Abraham, "My father!" And he said, "Here I am son." He said, "Behold, the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for a burnt offering?" <sup>8</sup>Abraham said, "God will provide for himself the lamb for a burnt offering, my son." So they went both of them together.

<sup>9</sup>When they came to the place of which God had told him, Abraham built the altar there and laid the wood in order and bound Isaac his son and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood. <sup>10</sup>Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife to slaughter his son. <sup>11</sup>But the angel of the LORD called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" And he said, "Here I am." <sup>12</sup>He said, "Do not lay your hand on the boy or do

## The Father-Week 2

anything to him, for now I know that you fear God, seeing you have not withheld your son, your only son, from me. <sup>13</sup>And Abraham lifted up his eyes and looked and behold, behind him was a ram, caught in a thicket by his horns. And Abraham went and took the ram and offered it up as a burnt offering instead of his son. <sup>14</sup>So Abraham called the name of that place, "The LORD will provide" [Jehovah-jireh]; as it is said to this day, "On the mount of the LORD it shall be provided. <sup>15</sup>And the angel of the LORD called to Abraham a second time from heaven. <sup>16</sup>and said, "By myself I have sworn, declares the LORD, because you have done this and have not withheld your son, your only son, <sup>17</sup>I will surely bless you, and I will surely multiply your offspring as the stars of heaven and as the sand that is on the seashore. And your offspring shall possess the gate of his enemies, <sup>18</sup>and in your offspring shall all the nations of the earth be blessed, because you have obeyed my voice.

19. God tells Abraham to take his only son, Isaac, and offer him as a sacrifice. We know from Genesis 16 that Abraham had a son, Ishmael, by Sarah's slave Hagar. Galatians 4:22-23 clarifies the distinction between Ishmael and Isaac. Look up these verses and fill in the blanks below.

The son of the slave [Hagar] was born according to the \_\_\_\_\_.

The son of the free woman [Sarah] was born through \_\_\_\_\_.

20. Isaac was the one God had determined would be the son to inherit the promises of His covenant with Abraham. In that respect Isaac was Abraham's only son. Not only was Isaac the son God had promised would provide Abraham with descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky, but he was also the son Abraham loved. After miraculously giving Abraham this son, *why* would the LORD ask him to sacrifice Isaac? How could Isaac provide offspring for Abraham if he had no sons?
21. Even though this command of God's must have been impossible for Abraham to understand and distressed him beyond comprehension, what was his response?

## The Father-Week 2

Galatians 3:16 tells us that Abraham's ultimate offspring of the promise would be Christ. Let's look at some of the ways this account of God's provision for Abraham points us to God's provision for us through the offering up of His Son, Jesus.

22. According to John 3:16 who gave His only son to be sacrificed?
23. Most commentators agree that Isaac was probably a young man when this occurred<sup>9</sup> and Abraham was well over one hundred years old. What was Isaac's role in this? Could Abraham have forced Isaac to lay down on that altar?

Did God the Father force Jesus to die for us? See John 10:17-18.

24. What did God provide as a substitute in Isaac's place?

How did John the Baptist refer to Jesus in John 1:29?

What does Jesus' sacrifice take away?

25. According to Genesis 22:2 what kind of offering was this to be?

Even though this event takes place before the law was given the type of sacrifice seems significant. Each offering had its own purpose and regulations. In general, the burnt offering was a fragrant offering to the LORD. It was a voluntary offering made to cover sin or to fulfill a vow. This offering was usually from the herd or flock and was to be a male without blemish (Leviticus 1:1-17).

The word *jireh* literally means "to see." How did this come to be translated as "provide"? God sees our needs and where He sees, He provides. What a wonderful God we have!

26. What is our greatest need and how did God provide for it?

Through the offering of His only Son God provided for our sins to be forgiven and His justice to be satisfied. It would have been enough, more than enough, if redemption is all God provided for us, but in His love and compassion He provides so much more.

## DID YOU KNOW

In Genesis 22:2 God tells Abraham to offer Isaac on one of the mountains in the land of Moriah. Later in 2 Chronicles 3:1 we learn that Solomon built the house of the LORD in Jerusalem on Mount Moriah. This is very significant! Read the following interesting observation from Dr. J. Vernon McGee concerning the location when Abraham offered up Isaac.

"It is the belief of a great many that Moriah—that is, this particular part—is the place where the temple was built centuries later and also the place that the Lord Jesus was sacrificed—right outside the city walls. When I was in Jerusalem, I had the feeling that Golgotha and the temple area were not very far apart. They belong to the same ridge. A street has been cut through there, and the ridge has been breeched, but it is the same ridge and it is called Moriah. Let's not say that the Lord Jesus died in the exact spot—we don't know—but certainly He died on the same ridge, the same mountain, on which Abraham offered Isaac."<sup>10</sup>

27. Read the following verses and note what else God provides for those who trust in Him.

Proverbs 3:5-6

Matthew 6:25-34

Romans 15:13

Philippians 4:19

28. Read Philippians 4:15-16 to see the context of the promise Paul made to them in verse 19. What is the connection between Philippians 4:15-16 and 4:19?

What areas of need are the greatest in your life right now? Run to your *Jehovah-jireh* with them. He may not meet them in the way you think is best, but as you trust Him, He will meet them in the way that is best for your eternal good.

***TAKE A MOMENT TO THANK GOD FOR SENDING HIS ONLY SON AND FOR JESUS' WILLINGNESS TO LAY DOWN HIS LIFE ON OUR BEHALF. WHAT A GREAT PRICE WAS PAID FOR OUR REDEMPTION!***

## E. Jehovah-Raah

### THE LORD MY SHEPHERD

For a fuller understanding of what it means that the LORD is my shepherd let's explore the role of a shepherd in the days when the Psalms were written. At that time the job of a shepherd was typically given to the youngest son. It was a lowly job with little prestige. The sheep were very valuable to the family who owned them but the job of tending them was difficult. Sheep often wander, are difficult to train, have a debilitating fear of many things, have no protection like claws or sharp hooves, are not camouflaged, have poor vision, and are very slow. Needless to say, that's a lot of vulnerability which requires an equal level of protection by the shepherd.

We will examine Psalm 23 as we let the LORD reveal himself as shepherd. David most likely wrote this Psalm at the time he was a king but remembering back to his days as a shepherd boy.

*Psalm 23:1-6*

*<sup>1</sup>The LORD is my shepherd; I shall not want. <sup>2</sup>He makes me lie down in green pastures. He leads me beside still waters. <sup>3</sup>He restores my soul. He leads me in paths of righteousness for his name's sake. <sup>4</sup>Even though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil, for you are with me; your rod and your staff, they comfort me. <sup>5</sup>You prepare a table before me in the presence of my enemies; you anoint my head with oil; my cup overflows. <sup>6</sup>Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life, and I shall dwell in the house of the LORD forever.*

29. As you read Psalm 23 underline all the actions the shepherd is doing in this passage then answer the following questions:

Are the sheep in this passage wild animals or purchased, cared for possessions?

Who cares for the sheep in this passage and how does he do so?

30. Read John 10:11 and 10:14

Who is the good shepherd in these verses?

What is the shepherd doing in these verses?

Why do you think the title "shepherd" is a good title for God?



## The Father-Week 2

31. Read Isaiah 53:6 and 1 Peter 2:25.  
What are the people doing in these passages?

In what ways are people good examples of sheep?

### DID YOU KNOW

Sheep will not lie down unless they have absolutely no fear and are not hungry. They also will not drink from fast flowing water so shepherds sometimes had to dam up creeks so the sheep were able to drink still water. What excellent care by the shepherd!

32. Let's look at the connection between the shepherd and the sheep in Psalm 23:1.  
Fill in the blank below...

The LORD is \_\_\_\_\_ shepherd.

David found comfort in knowing that God was shepherding him personally.

33. Read John 10:27  
According to this passage how can we know we are a sheep in His flock?

34. Read Luke 15:3-7  
According to this passage how important is your life to God?

35. Look back on the underlined portions of Psalm 23.  
Which stands out to you and comforts you most?

Why?

## The Father-Week 2

36. Let's compare Psalm 23:6 with Psalm 27:4  
What was David's hope in these passages?

Is this where you place your hope today?

Our God, Jehovah, chose to be our shepherd, to lead and guide us as we listen to His voice. Let us place our greatest hope and prayer in being with God the Father for all eternity, to dwell in His house and gaze upon His beauty!

## Conclusion

The prophet Ezekiel had a vision of what Jerusalem would look like during the Millennial Kingdom. For eight chapters he describes the details of the new temple and the layout of the land. Ezekiel ends with this glorious climax, "...And the name of the city from that time on shall be, *The LORD Is There [Jehovah-shammah]*." (Ezekiel 48:35)

We began in Genesis with *El Roi*, God sees us, and end with *Jehovah-shammah*, God Himself dwelling *with* us in all His glory.

But, wonder of wonders, God does not just want us to know His name. If you have repented of your sins and put your trust in Jesus, God has a special name just for you. Jesus ends His message to the Church in Pergamum with these words:

*Revelation 2:17—He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To the one who conquers I will give some of the hidden manna, and I will give him a white stone, with a new name written on the stone that no one knows except the one who receives it.*

***MAY WE FALL ON OUR FACE AND WORSHIP THE EVERLASTING GOD.***

***Praise the LORD!  
Praise, O servants of the LORD,  
Praise the name of the LORD!  
Blessed be the name of the LORD  
From this time forth and forevermore!  
From the rising of the sun to its setting,  
The name of the LORD is to be praised!  
Psalm 113:1-3***

# Hymn For Meditation

## **“I Sing the Mighty Power of God”**

By Isaac Watts, altered

I sing the mighty power of God  
That made the mountains rise,  
That spread the flowing seas abroad,  
And built the lofty skies.

I sing the wisdom that ordained  
The sun to rule the day;  
The moon shines full at His command  
And all the stars obey.

I sing the goodness of the Lord  
That filled the earth with food;  
He formed the creatures with His word  
And then pronounced them good.

Lord, how Thy wonders are displayed  
Where'er I turn my eye:  
If I survey the ground I tread  
Or gaze upon the sky!

There's not a plant or flower below  
But makes Thy glories known;  
And clouds arise and tempests blow  
By order from Thy throne;

While all that borrows life from Thee  
Is ever in Thy care,  
And everywhere that man can be,  
Thou, God, are present there.

# Appendix

## **Endnotes**

## **Additional Resources**

## **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 1

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 2

REFLECTIONS

## Endnotes

1. A. W. Tozer, *The Knowledge of the Holy* (New York: Harper Collins Publishers, 1961), 1, 2.
2. "Ancient-Symbols," accessed July 17, 2021, [https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield\\_of\\_trinity.html](https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield_of_trinity.html).
3. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 161.
4. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 181.
5. Michael Card, "El Shaddai," 1981, "The Hymnal for Worship and Celebration (Waco, Texas: Word Music, 1986), 36.
6. Nathan Stone, *Names of God* (Chicago: Moody Press, 1944), 15.
7. Stone, 16.
8. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 158.
9. "How Old Was Isaac When Abraham Almost Sacrificed Him?" Got Questions Ministries, Accessed July 17, 2021, <https://www.gotquestions.org/how-old-was-Isaac.html>.
10. J. Vernon McGee, *Through the Bible with J. Vernon McGee, Genesis 22:1-20, e-Sword Version*.

## Additional Resources

Arthur, Kay. *Lord, I Want to Know You*. Colorado Springs, Colorado: WaterBrook Press, 2000.

Arthur, Kay. *To Know Him by Name*. Sisters, Oregon: Multnomah Books, 1995.

Packer, J. I. *Knowing God*. Downers Grove, Illinois: Inter-Varsity Press, 1973.

Stone, Nathan. *Names of God*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1944.

Tozer, A. W. *The Knowledge of the Holy*. New York: Harper Collins Publishers, 1961.

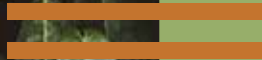
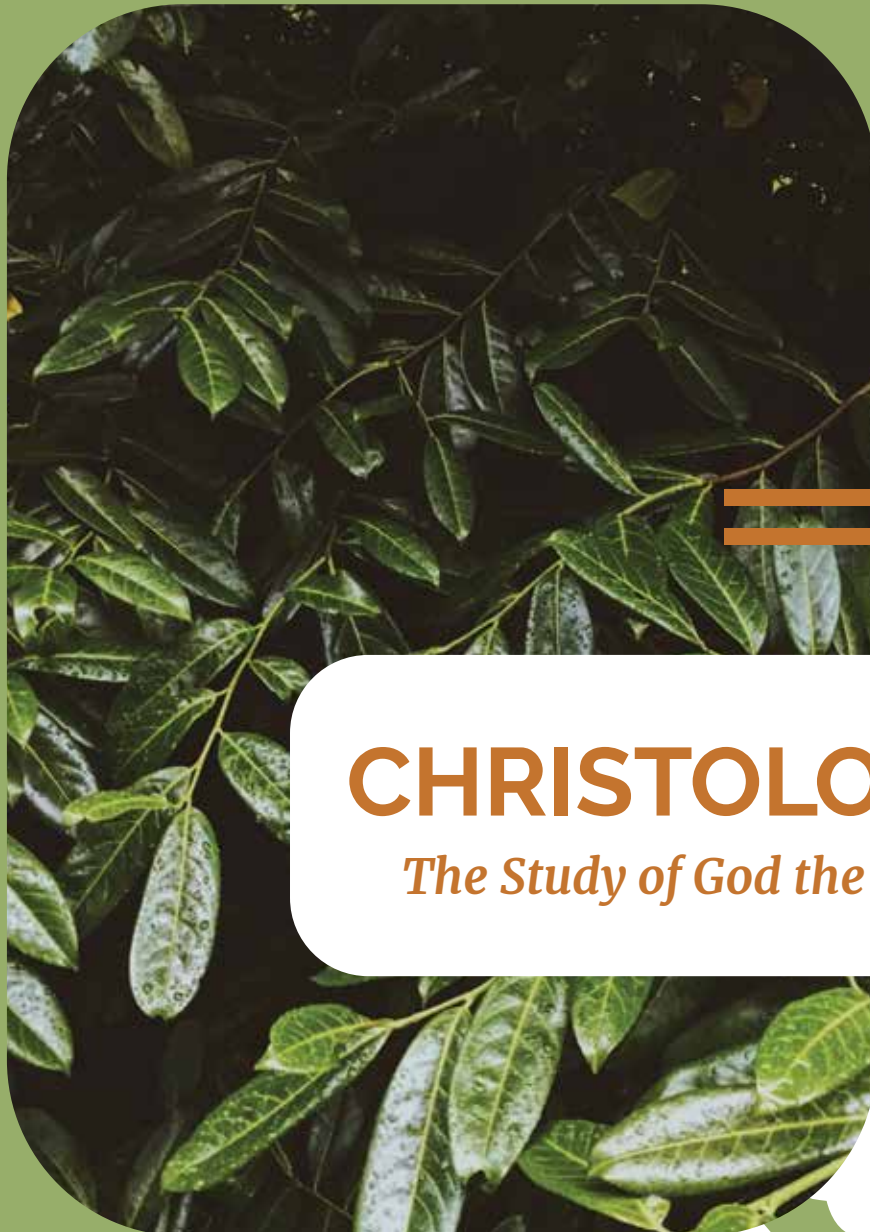
**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week two*



*reflections*





# CHRISTOLOGY

*The Study of God the Son*



# The Son - Week One

## Introduction

He was born in Belfast, Ireland in 1898. His friends called him Jack. He, his parents, and his older brother were voracious readers and there was always a never-ending supply of books in their home. According to Jack, "There were books in the study, books in the dining room, books in the cloakroom, books (two deep) in the great bookcase on the landing, books in a bedroom, books piled as high as my shoulder in the cistern attic, books of all kinds."<sup>1</sup>

Jack's mother died a few months before his tenth birthday. He was devastated and the young boy who had been raised in a Protestant home turned his back on God and became an avowed atheist when he was about 13 years old.

However, God had other plans for Jack. His passion for books continued into adulthood and when he realized that some of his favorite authors (G.K. Chesterton, for example) and some of his closest friends and colleagues (J.R.R. Tolkien, for one) were Christians, Jack moved from atheism to theism in 1929. Two years later, at age 33, Clive Staples Lewis, the author we recognize as C.S. Lewis, entered into a personal relationship with Jesus Christ. Lewis went on to write more than 30 books; his most well-known and beloved include *Mere Christianity*, *The Screwtape Letters* and *The Chronicles of Narnia*.

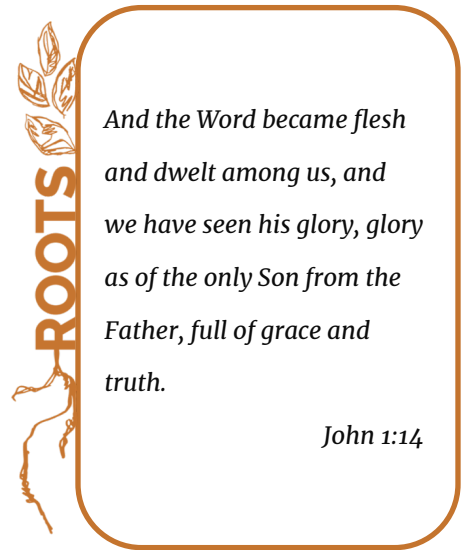
C.S. Lewis challenged others in their beliefs about Jesus. He wrote:

"I am trying here to prevent anyone saying the really foolish thing that people often say about Him: I'm ready to accept Jesus as a great moral teacher, but I don't accept his claim to be God. That is the one thing we must not say. A man who was merely a man and said the sort of things Jesus said would not be a great moral teacher. He would either be a lunatic – on the level with the man who says he is a poached egg – or else he would be the Devil of Hell. You must make your choice. Either this man was, and is, the Son of God, or else a madman or something worse. You can shut him up for a fool, you can spit at him and kill him as a demon or you can fall at his feet and call him Lord and God, but let us not come with any patronizing nonsense about his being a great human teacher. He has not left that open to us. He did not intend to."<sup>2</sup>

Each of us must also reach a conclusion about Jesus. Is He a liar, a lunatic or the Son of God as He claimed?

Your answer will not only impact your life here and now but, more importantly, your eternal destiny. It can be spent forever with the LORD or forever under His wrath. Choose wisely.

Let's turn to the Bible and study for ourselves what the Scriptures say about Jesus.



# Knowing God the Son

In this section, we will study God the Son from four different—though related—perspectives.

1. ETERNAL ESSENCE
2. PRE-INCARNATE EXISTENCE
3. INCARNATE EXISTENCE: FULLY MAN
4. INCARNATE EXISTENCE: FULLY GOD

This first week of study will cover the first 3 of these 4 aspects of God the Son. The aspect of God the Son as fully God in His incarnate existence will be covered in week 2 of the study.

## 1. Eternal Essence

The last section of this study covered that God is triune. This trinity of God is often called the “Trinity”. Both God the Father and God the Son are members of the Trinity along with God the Holy Spirit. As a quick review from the last section, here is what the Bible says about the trinity of God:

- There is one God (unity).
- God is three distinct persons (Father, Son and Spirit).
- Each person of God is fully God. (God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit).

From eternity past, God the Son has been an equal part of the triune God and will remain so for all eternity.

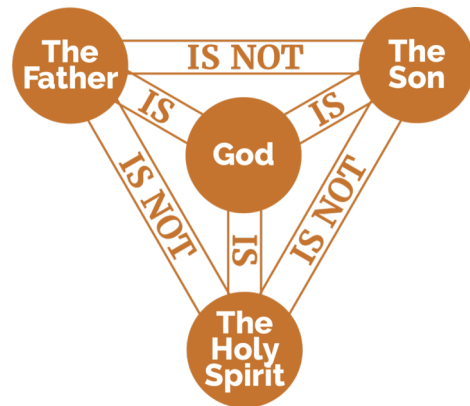


Figure 1—“The Shield of the Trinity”<sup>3</sup>

## 2. Pre-incarnate Existence

The next section on God the Son’s incarnate existence will describe when God the Son chose to become a man, but this was not the beginning of His interaction with humanity. Have you ever thought about what God the Son was doing before He took on flesh and became a human being? To find out, answer the following questions based on the verses given:

1. Who was Jesus with and when, according to this verse?  
*John 17:5—And now, Father, glorify me in your own presence with the glory that I had with you before the world existed.*

## The Son—Week 1

2. Read Colossians 1:16-17 given below:

*Colossians 1:16-17—<sup>16</sup>For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities – all things were created through him and for him. <sup>17</sup>And he is before all things, and in him all things hold together.*

What did Jesus do according to verse 16?

What is Jesus doing according to verse 17?

The appearance of God the Son in the Old Testament gives us further information about what His existence was before He took on flesh. Consider this account found in the book of Joshua. For context, this account picks up after the death of Moses. God commissioned Joshua to lead the Israelites into the Promised Land. They have crossed the Jordan River and are now preparing to conquer their first city within the land, the walled city of Jericho. At this time, Joshua encounters a unique individual.

Read Joshua 5:13-15, then answer the following questions:

3. How does the individual identify himself according to verse 14?

4. How does Joshua respond?

The man does not rebuke Joshua for his response but tells him to do something (see verse 15).

5. What is Joshua instructed to do, and why?

Can you identify another time in the Old Testament when these same instructions were given to a person?

### DID YOU KNOW

#### ***Definition of Theophany & Christophany***

"A theophany is a manifestation of God in the Bible that is tangible to the human sense."<sup>4</sup> Many Bible scholars believe that whenever someone in the Old Testament was visited by "the angel of the LORD," this was in fact a visit with the pre-incarnate Christ, also known as a christophany. According to MacArthur and Mayhue, "Given what John 1:18 says about the Son—that 'no one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known' - appearances of God in the Old Testament must have been the Son, not the father."<sup>5</sup>

## The Son—Week 1

6. What can you deduce about who this individual is and why do you think he came? (Remember the context.)

### TAKE ROOT

For more examples of Christophanies, read Numbers 22:22-35 and Judges 6:11-24.

7. This has been just a quick glimpse at what God the Son was doing before He took on flesh, before the incarnation. Consider the Scriptures in this section and summarize in 2-3 sentences what Jesus was doing before he became a human being.

8. How does knowing what Jesus was doing *before* becoming a man expand your view of who He is?

To conclude this section, offer a short prayer of praise and thanksgiving to Him!

### 3. Incarnate Existence: Fully Man

In the previous section we learned what Jesus was doing *before* He became a human being. Now let's look at the profound truth revealed to us in the New Testament—God Almighty, the self-existent One, chose to become a man. He chose to become one of us. This is known as the *incarnation*, from the Latin meaning "to take on flesh."

The Gospel of John states this most succinctly in 3 verses:

*John 1:1-2—<sup>1</sup>In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God and the Word was God. <sup>2</sup>He was in the beginning with God.*

*John 1:14a—And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us . . .*

The incarnation of Jesus united the divine and the human natures in one Person; He was fully God and fully man. It is important to note that when Jesus became a human being, He did not cease to be God! Colossians 1:19 states, "*For in [Jesus] all the fullness of God was pleased to dwell.*"

Several aspects of the incarnation are described in more detail on the following pages.

- The Completeness
- The Genealogy
- The Timing
- The Uniqueness
- The Significance
- The Purpose

## THE COMPLETENESS OF THE INCARNATION

While remaining fully God, Jesus took on a new nature—a human nature—which included a normal, human, physical body.

9. What human characteristics did Jesus show in the following passages?

Luke 2:52

Luke 22:42

John 4:6

John 11:35

Hebrews 2:9

Hebrews 2:17-18

Hebrews 4:15

10. Which of these passages stands out to you most, and why?

11. How does knowing that Jesus was truly human encourage you that He can understand everything you are going through?

Jesus rested when he was tired. He suffered pain. He was tempted and He prayed. He can relate to whatever situation you may be enduring because He lived life as a human on earth. He is an example to us that there are times when we need rest, times when we need to press on in doing good works and times when we must pray. Jesus prayed to the Father throughout His life. If He needed prayer and continually went to prayer for guidance and comfort, how much more do we need to do the same?

## GENEALOGY OF JESUS

Compiled from Matthew 1:1-17 and Luke 3:23-38

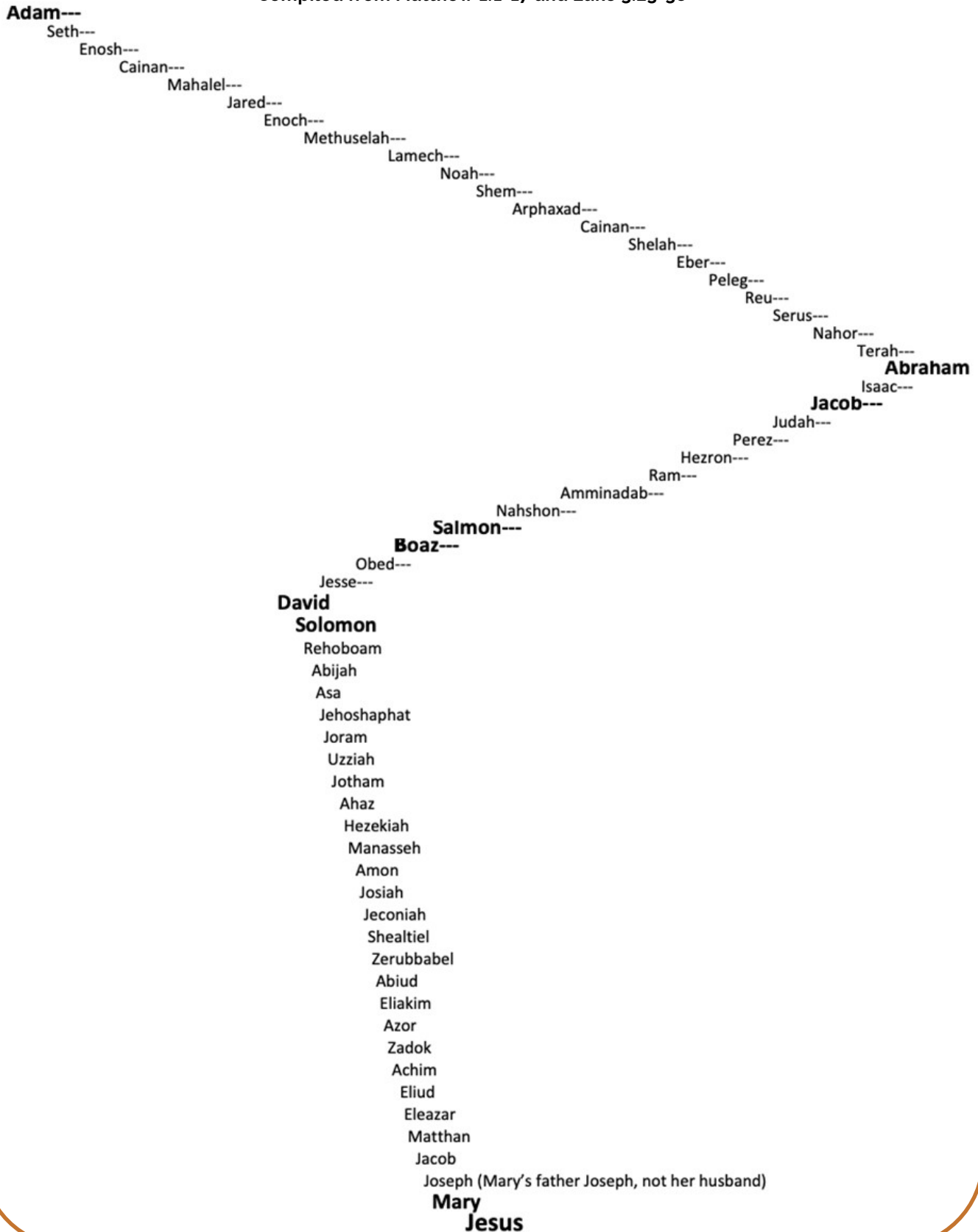


Figure 2—Genealogy of Jesus



## THE GENEALOGY OF THE INCARNATION

The reality of the humanity of God the Son taking on flesh is highlighted in realizing that just like every other person in the world, Jesus came into the world through a family. God worked through His chosen men and women to bring His Son into the world according to His will.

When you look at the "Genealogy of Jesus" chart it is easy to get overwhelmed by all of the names and wonder, "Why does this matter?" It is also obvious when looking at this chart that *men* are "front and center" in it - which is true of all genealogies in the Bible. We thought it would be helpful and interesting to study a few of the women related to the men listed in Jesus' genealogy. Our hope is that by studying these women your heart and soul will be filled with thankfulness and give glory to God for the unlikely women He chose to be a part of Jesus' lineage!

### Leah (wife of Jacob)

Read Genesis 29:16-30

12. Which wife was preferred by Jacob? What evidence do you find in the text to support this?

Now read Genesis 29:31-35 focusing specifically on verse 35.

13. Jacob, son of Isaac, didn't choose Leah as his favorite wife, but if you look at the genealogy chart under Jacob's name you can see through whom *God* chose to send His son. Which woman did God choose?

14. Just to show how important this precious woman was to God, read Revelation 5:1-5. In this passage Jesus is referred to as the Lion of the tribe of \_\_\_\_\_.

### Rahab (wife of Salmon)

Read Hebrews 11:30-31.

15. How does this verse describe Rahab?

16. What did Rahab do and what was her reward?

## The Son-Week 1

### Ruth (wife of Boaz)

Read Ruth 1:3-5.

17. What hardships did Ruth endure before meeting Boaz?

Read Ruth 2:11-13.

18. For what does Boaz commend Ruth?

## TAKE ROOT

Boaz was a descendant of Rahab, the prostitute who became a mighty woman of faith. Boaz married Ruth, a Moabite woman, who returned to the land of Judah with her mother-in-law, Naomi, after the death of their husbands. Perhaps Boaz had a soft heart for Ruth's difficult situation because he knew Rahab had also endured great hardship in her life.

### Bathsheba (wife of David)

God promised an eternal kingdom through the line of David.

19. Read the following passages and write down the description given regarding the descendant of David who would sit on the throne.

2 Samuel 7:12-13

Isaiah 11:1-2

Jeremiah 23:5-6

King David had multiple wives, but the one God chose to include in Jesus's lineage was an interesting and unexpected choice. One evening, as King David walked on the roof of his home, he saw a beautiful woman bathing; her name was Bathsheba. He sent for her, committed adultery with her, and eventually, had her husband killed. David married Bathsheba but the child they had conceived died. Bathsheba was understandably distraught, but God, in His mercy and kindness, chose to use this woman to eventually send His own son, Jesus.

20. According to 2 Samuel 12:24, who was David and Bathsheba's child through whom Jesus came?

## **The Son—Week 1**

As you can see, sometimes God chooses the most unlikely of people to carry out His plans. These women we have studied were not chosen by man, but rather they were chosen by God.

21. Have you ever felt like you were unworthy or ill-equipped for a task for which you knew the Lord was calling you? What was it?

How does knowing that God can equip and call anyone He wants to accomplish His plans encourage and comfort you?

22. Which of these women we have just studied stands out to you most and why?

## **THE TIMING OF THE INCARNATION**

The incarnation of Jesus Christ was complete and brought about through God's chosen genealogy. It was also accomplished in God's perfect timing.

23. Write out Galatians 4:4 below.

24. Circle the time phrase in this verse. What does this phrase mean? Rewrite the phrase using your own words.

## DID YOU KNOW

### Roads:

During the time of Christ, the Romans had an extensive road system in place that connected their entire empire. One major highway extended as far as southeast Italy. Another highway connected territory along the Mediterranean Sea with territory east of Israel bringing travelers and trade directly through the region of Galilee.

### Languages:

Aramaic was the common language in Israel during Jesus' time. Hebrew was spoken mainly by the scribes, Pharisees and Sadducees, and was often read in the synagogues. Greek was the language of the Romans, the political class, and anyone who wanted to do business in Rome. It is likely that Jesus spoke all three of these languages.

Think about God's perfect timing in sending His Son and the impact this had on the scope of Jesus' ministry and the ministry of His disciples!

## THE UNIQUENESS OF THE INCARNATION

The incarnation of the Son of God was complete, through God's chosen genealogy, in God's perfect timing and it was also unique. Though Jesus Christ is fully God and fully man—his humanity had a stark difference from any other man born of woman.

25. In Galatians 4:4 that you wrote out previously, double underline the phrase "born of woman."

In contrast to this phrase, what gender is emphasized in Jesus' genealogy (and all genealogies in Scripture)?

In Genesis 3:15 (printed below), the LORD God is talking to the serpent in the garden of Eden shortly after the Fall. This is the very first prophecy in the Bible that speaks of a coming Messiah.

*Genesis 3:15—I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring; he shall bruise your head and you shall bruise his heel.*

Note the emphasis on "the woman" and "her offspring" (Jesus). Regarding this MacArthur and Mayhue write, "By omitting any relationship to Adam, God suggests that the promised offspring will not partake of Adam's sin."<sup>6</sup>

## The Son—Week 1

Fast forward to the angel Gabriel visiting a young woman named Mary. Turn to Luke 1:26-35 and read the astonishing message the angel Gabriel gives to her.

26. How is Mary described in verse 27?

The Greek word for *virgin* is *parthenos* which refers to a woman who has never had sexual relations with a man.

27. When Mary asks how she, as a virgin, will conceive a child, Gabriel's response is amazing! Write his answer below from verse 35.

28. List the 2 persons involved in the miraculous conception of Jesus. Next to each one, write what nature (human or divine) they represent.

29. What did Gabriel say the child would be called according to verse 35?

While remaining God, at the incarnation, Jesus Christ took on a new nature—a human nature—which included a physical body, *however (unlike us) He did not have a sin nature.*

Think back to the creation story in Genesis 1 and 2. Adam and Eve were each originally created with a human nature and a human physical body. They were without sin and freely able to fellowship with their Creator. The Fall (Genesis 3) brought sin into the world and sin meant spiritual separation from God and eventually physical death. Since that fateful day, every single baby born on planet earth now has a sin nature. The sinlessness of Jesus Christ, was part of God's amazing plan to rescue us from sin and death and restore full fellowship with Him, just as it was in the garden of Eden.

30. Just so you don't miss this point, read the following verses then fill in the blanks below.

Hebrews 4:15      Jesus was without \_\_\_\_\_.

1 Peter 2:22      Jesus committed no \_\_\_\_\_.

1 John 3:5      In Jesus there is no \_\_\_\_\_.

Jesus DID NOT have a \_\_\_\_\_ nature.

## THE SIGNIFICANCE OF THE INCARNATION

It is of significant importance to mankind that Jesus Christ was fully God and fully man though He was one person. Philippians 2:5-8 further explains how Jesus, being one person, could be both fully God and fully man.

*Philippians 2:5-8—<sup>5</sup>Have this mind among yourselves, which is yours in Christ Jesus, <sup>6</sup>who, though he was in the form [.....] of God, did not count equality with God a thing to be grasped, <sup>7</sup>but emptied himself, by taking the form [.....] of a servant, being born in the likeness of men. <sup>8</sup>And being found in human form [.....], he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.*

31. Ignoring the blanks for now, underline each of these phrases, "*form of God*" and "*form of a servant*," in verses 6 and 7.

The Greek word for *form* in these two instances is *morphē* which emphasizes the continuous essence of a person's nature. Therefore, the phrase "*though he was in the form of God*" speaks to the reality of Christ's deity. He always has been and always will be God. The phrase "*taking the form of a servant*" speaks to the reality of His taking on servanthood as a human being with a human nature. This too is an essence of Christ, but this one began at His conception and will continue throughout eternity!

32. Go back to the passage above and in the brackets in verses 6 and 7 write the word *morphē*.

But how was this accomplished? Verse 7 states that Jesus "*emptied himself*." The Greek word is *kenoō* which means "to empty." However, some theologians have erroneously described this as Christ emptying himself of certain aspects of His deity when He became a man. Yet this would be impossible for the eternal, immutable God to do; He would then cease to be God!

So, of what did Christ empty Himself? MacArthur and Mayhue answer this best:

"While the verb *kenoō* does mean 'to empty,' it is used exclusively in a metaphorical sense in the New Testament. It never means 'to pour out,' as if Jesus were pouring his divine attributes out of himself. If that were Paul's intent, he would have used the word *ekcheō* (e.g., Luke 22:20; John 2:15; Titus 3:6). Instead, *kenoō* means 'to make void,' 'to nullify,' or 'to make of no effect'. . . Christ himself is the object of this emptying; he nullified *himself*. As the King James Version translates it, he 'made himself of no reputation' (Phil. 2:7). The rest of the verse tells how Christ nullified himself in his incarnation: 'by taking the form of a servant, being born in the likeness of men' (Phil. 2:7). Christ made himself of no reputation precisely by taking on a human nature. He emptied himself not by pouring out portions of his deity but by adding to himself full and true humanity. His was an emptying by addition, not by subtraction."<sup>7</sup>

## The Son-Week 1

33. Look again at Philippians 2:5-8. Circle the phrase "*being found in human form*" in verse 8.

The Greek word for *form* in this verse is *schēma*. It refers to His physical body. The verse goes on to say, Christ "*humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.*" Jesus' physical body died and was placed in a tomb, but hallelujah, that is not where it stayed! God raised Christ's body from the dead and gave Him an eternal glorified body.

34. Go back to the passage above and in the bracket in verse 8 write the word *schēma*.

Consider this - Jesus Christ will forever be the God-man! He maintains His sinless, human nature and has a glorified human body even as He sits at the right hand of God in heaven. As Hebrews 10:12 says, "*But when Christ had offered for all time a single sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God.*"

Do you understand the significance of this for us as believers? One day we too will be free of our sin natures, have eternal, glorified bodies and live forever with our Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ!

***HALLELUJAH, WHAT A SAVIOR!***

## THE PURPOSE OF THE INCARNATION

Why would the exalted, eternal Second Person of the Trinity condescend and become a human being? Why would He be willing to confine Himself to a womb, be born and then totally depend upon human parents for nourishment and care? Why would He, a human being without a sin nature, allow Himself to be touched by sinful, needy people? Why would He *die* for them? What is the *purpose* of the incarnation?

There are two reasons why Jesus came to earth. They are both profound.

The first and primary reason why Jesus came is *for God to receive all the glory*.

God says in His Word, in Isaiah 42:8, "I am the LORD; that is my name; my glory I give to no other, nor my praise to carved idols."

Paul understands this truth about glory belonging to God alone; he mentions it frequently in his letters. Here are examples from Ephesians, Romans and 1 Timothy:

### Ephesians

Writing to the church in Ephesus about the spiritual blessings every believer has in Christ, Paul worships God by stating, "to the praise of **his glory**" three times in the first chapter (Eph. 1:6, 12, 14). In the third chapter, Paul ends his prayer with praise, "**to him be the glory** in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations, forever and ever. Amen." (Eph. 3:21).

### Romans

To the church in Rome, Paul writes, "For from him and through him and to him are all things. **To him be glory forever**. Amen." (Rom. 11:36).

### 1 Timothy

In his first letter to Timothy, Paul praises God with these words, "To the King of the ages, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and **glory** forever. Amen." (1 Tim 1:17)

## The Son—Week 1

The gospel is God-centered, not man-centered, and ultimately God will receive all the glory of which He alone is worthy! We will look at this in more detail in the chapter on Salvation.

The second reason why Jesus came to earth is *unconditional love*. This is why God gave His Son and why Jesus submitted to His Father and willingly came to earth as a human being.

*John 3:16—For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life.*

Let's look at specific ways this love manifested itself through Jesus.

35. Look up the following verses and fill in the blanks.

Matthew 5:17

Jesus came to fulfill the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_.

Matthew 26:26-28

Jesus came to establish a new \_\_\_\_\_.

John 1:18 and John 14:9

Jesus came to make His \_\_\_\_\_ known to humanity.

Acts 10:42

Jesus came to \_\_\_\_\_ the living and the dead.

1 Corinthians 15:26

Jesus came to destroy \_\_\_\_\_.

1 Timothy 1:15

Jesus came to save \_\_\_\_\_. (We will cover this in more detail in the sections on Sin and Salvation.)

1 Peter 2:21

Jesus came to be an \_\_\_\_\_ for believers to follow.

1 John 3:8 and Revelation 20:10

Jesus came to destroy the \_\_\_\_\_ and his \_\_\_\_\_.

36. Now look up these verses that pertain to everyone who believes in Jesus as Lord and Savior and fill in the blanks provided.



## The Son-Week 1

John 14:3

Jesus came to prepare a place for you so that where \_\_\_\_\_ is, \_\_\_\_\_ may be also.

Philippians 3:21

Jesus came so that one day your \_\_\_\_\_ body will be transformed and become like His \_\_\_\_\_ body!

Revelation 21:1-4

Jesus came so that the dwelling place of God will be with \_\_\_\_\_ on a new earth. He will dwell with us, and we will be His \_\_\_\_\_. He will wipe away every \_\_\_\_\_ from our eyes, and \_\_\_\_\_ shall be no more, neither shall there be \_\_\_\_\_ nor \_\_\_\_\_ nor \_\_\_\_\_ anymore, for the former things have passed away.

37. Is there a reason for His coming that you had not thought about before? Which one(s)?

38. How does His coming to earth as a human being influence your perspective of eternity? Do you know for certain you will spend eternity with Him?

39. Is your heart overflowing with love and gratitude to Jesus Christ for all that He has done? We hope so! Respond by writing a short prayer of praise and thanksgiving to Him in the space provided on the back of this sheet.

## The Son-Week 1

*Use this space for writing your prayer of praise and thanksgiving...*

# The Son-Week 2

*Week 1 of this unit on God the Son covered His eternal essence, His pre-incarnate existence and the fullness of His humanity in the incarnation. This week will continue the study of the incarnation by covering the fullness of His deity in His incarnate existence.*

## 4. Incarnate Existence: Fully God

As mentioned previously, the incarnation of Jesus united the divine and the human natures in one Person; He was fully God and fully man. The incarnation of the Son of God as Jesus Christ, the Messiah, was planned by God before time began and promised to mankind when sin first entered the world.

The fact that the Messiah would be both fully man and fully God was given in the prophecies of the Old Testament. The fact that Jesus was that Messiah was confirmed by Gabriel, Simeon, Mary and Jesus Himself as He claimed to be the fulfilment of the Old Testament prophecies. This week's lesson will look first at those prophecies and the testimony of them being fulfilled. The lesson will conclude with studying Jesus' own claims to be God through His 'I am' statements.

### THE PROMISED MESSIAH WILL BE GOD AND MAN

When sin entered the world God announced His plan to redeem humankind. At first it was rather cryptic. In the Garden of Eden God said to the serpent, *"I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring; he shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise his heel"* (Genesis 3:15). Throughout the centuries God unveiled more of what this offspring of the woman would be like, until He was fully revealed with the coming of Jesus Christ, the Messiah.

This prophecy in Isaiah 9:6-7 gives us several details about the promised Messiah.

*Isaiah 9:6-7—<sup>6</sup>For to us a child is born, to us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder, and his name shall be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace. <sup>7</sup>Of the increase of his government and of peace there will be no end, on the throne of David and over his kingdom, to establish it and to uphold it with justice and with righteousness from this time forth and forevermore. The zeal of the LORD of hosts will do this.*

#### DID YOU KNOW

##### **Messiah**

The Old Testament refers to this coming Redeemer as the Anointed One which, in the Hebrew, is Messiah (māšiyah) and in the New Testament Greek, Christ (Christós).

## The Son—Week 2

Answer the following questions based on the Scripture just given, Isaiah 9:6-7:

1. What hint is there of the humanity of the Messiah?

2. What do His names tell you about His deity?

3. On whose throne will the Messiah sit?

This prophecy clearly states that the promised Messiah (Christ) was both fully man and fully God in one Person.

Isaiah 53 gives us a different view of this coming Messiah.

*Isaiah 53:3-6—<sup>3</sup>He was despised and rejected by men, a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief; and as one from whom men hide their faces he was despised, and we esteemed him not. <sup>4</sup>Surely he has borne our griefs and carried our sorrows; yet we esteemed him stricken, smitten by God, and afflicted. <sup>5</sup>But he was pierced for our transgressions; he was crushed for our iniquities; upon him was the chastisement that brought us peace, and with his wounds we are healed. <sup>6</sup>All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned—everyone to his own way; and the LORD has laid on him the iniquity of us all.*

Although Isaiah 53 speaks of the Messiah as a man of sorrows, despised and rejected by men, the Israelites largely discarded those verses in favor of others more to their liking. For centuries the Jews lived under the harsh rule of one world power after another. They desperately longed for freedom. As a nation they were waiting for a Messiah from the line of David who would take the throne, rule, reign, deliver them from oppression and establish peace.

## JESUS CHRIST IS THE PROMISED MESSIAH

At long last, in Luke 1:28-38, we have the account of the angel Gabriel's visit to a young woman named Mary. In part it reads:

*Luke 1:30-33—<sup>30</sup>And the angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. <sup>31</sup>And behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall call his name Jesus. <sup>32</sup>He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. And the Lord God will give to him the throne of his father David, <sup>33</sup>and he will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end."*

Mary knew the Scriptures and understood this astonishing announcement to mean that her child would be the long-awaited Messiah.

In Luke 2:29-32 we have the words of a righteous old man named Simeon. The Holy Spirit had revealed to him that he would not die before he had seen the Lord's Christ (Messiah). When Mary and Joseph brought the newborn Jesus to the temple for their purification rites, Simeon took Jesus up in his arms and blessed God. This blessing was recorded by Luke.

## The Son—Week 2

*Luke 2:29–32—<sup>29</sup>Lord, now you are letting your servant depart in peace, according to your word; <sup>30</sup>for my eyes have seen your salvation <sup>31</sup>that you have prepared in the presence of all peoples, <sup>32</sup>a light for revelation to the Gentiles, and for glory to your people Israel.*

Unfortunately, since the Jews were looking for a political savior instead of one who would bring spiritual salvation, many would fail to realize that Jesus was indeed the Messiah, the Christ.

Luke 4:16–30 records a visit Jesus made to His hometown of Nazareth. On the Sabbath day He went to the synagogue as was His habit. He stood up and read from the scroll of Isaiah:

*Luke 4:18–19—<sup>18</sup>“The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he has anointed me to proclaim liberty to the captives and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty those who are oppressed, <sup>19</sup>to proclaim the year of the Lord’s favor.”*

After rolling up the scroll Jesus sat down and then made a shocking claim (verse 21):

*<sup>21</sup>“ . . . Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing.”*

This was a clear claim to be the Messiah. At first the people marveled at His gracious words, but then Jesus proceeded to confront the people with their unbelief. Their reaction? Instead of hailing Him as the promised Messiah they were filled with wrath and sought to kill him.

Many Jews missed Jesus because they were looking for the wrong kind of Messiah.

4. Our current culture also has a distorted view of Jesus Christ. Write down some of the distortions that you are aware of. In other words, what do they deny about Jesus Christ? What do they assign to Jesus that is counter to how the Scriptures declare Him to be?
5. Which of these lies are you most tempted to embrace?
6. How about Scripture in general—how does our current culture, in general, treat Scripture? How is it similar or dissimilar to the Jews in Jesus' time, rejecting the parts of Scripture that didn't line up with their own ideas?

## The Son—Week 2

One day Jesus *will return* and sit on David's throne and bring lasting peace to earth, but *today* Jesus is calling people to repent and turn to Him for salvation.

We have looked at a small sampling of verses concerning the Messiah, the Christ. Next, we will look at Jesus' claims to be the Messiah, which are found in His own "I AM" statements in the Gospel of John.

### JESUS' DECLARATIONS ABOUT HIMSELF AS FULLY GOD

In the lesson on God the Father we saw that *I AM, Yahweh*, in the Old Testament Hebrew, was God's personal name. In the Greek New Testament *ego eimi* is translated as "I AM." In the Gospel of John Jesus tells us about Himself through several "I AM" statements.

In response to the Pharisees' questions, "*Who are you?*" . . . "*Are you greater than our father Abraham, who died?*" . . . "*Who do you make yourself out to be?*" (John 8:25, 53), Jesus gives a startling response.

*John 8:56-59—<sup>56</sup>Your father Abraham rejoiced that he would see my day. He saw it and was glad. <sup>57</sup>So the Jews said to him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and have you seen Abraham?" <sup>58</sup>Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was, I am." <sup>59</sup>So they picked up stones to throw at him, but Jesus hid himself and went out of the temple.*

7. Who does Jesus claim to be?

8. How did the people respond to Jesus' answer?

9. What did their response show about their understanding of Jesus' claim?

To gain a fuller understanding of how Jesus described Himself, the remainder of this section will look at Jesus' other I AM claims. Look up each of the following verses in the Gospel of John and complete the I AM statement, then look up any other verses listed and answer the questions.

CLAIM #1

I AM ----- John 6:35, 48, 51

1. To put this statement in context, look briefly at John 6:1-15. What great miracle had Jesus performed the previous day?

**TAKE ROOT** -

Read John 6:1-59 for a fuller understanding of the context.

This is a long passage, but it is so rich!

To learn more about the manna God sent from heaven, read Exodus 16:4-15, 36 and Deuteronomy 8:3.

That evening Jesus withdrew from the excited crowd and went to the other side of the Sea of Galilee; however, the next day the crowds followed Him there. Jesus admonished them saying they were only seeking Him because He gave them food to eat. He went on to tell them they should not work for food which perishes, but that which endures to eternal life. Jesus also told them that they needed to believe in Him because He had been sent by God.

Read John 6:30-37.

2. What is their arrogant reply in verse 30? Remember what miracle Jesus had performed just the day before!
3. With what miracle does the crowd compare Jesus' feeding of the 5,000?
4. According to Jesus' statement in verse 32 whom does the crowd credit with giving their fathers manna in the wilderness?
5. Their fathers ate manna and were hungry again the next day. The people ate the physical bread that Jesus had fed them the day before, but they were hungry again. According to verse 35 what does Jesus offer them?
6. What was the response of the crowd (verse 36)?
7. What is your response to Jesus' invitation to believe? What is Jesus' promise to those who come to Him (verse 37)?

## The Son—Week 2

### CLAIM #2:

I AM \_\_\_\_\_ John 8:12; 9:5

In John chapter 7 we learn that Jesus probably spoke the words in John 8:12 during the last day of the Feast of Booths, or the Feast of Tabernacles, as it is also called. A prominent feature of this festival was the lighting of four large lamps in the women's court of the temple where the people gathered to sing praises and dance.

Light was an important symbol to the Jewish people. Look up the following verses and answer the questions.

1. Read Exodus 13:21-22. What symbols of light represented God's presence with the Israelites in the wilderness?
2. Read Psalm 27:1. What did King David say about the LORD?
3. Read Psalm 119:105. What gives light to our path?
4. Isaiah 42:1-9 is a prophecy of the Messiah who was to come. According to verse 6 what will the Messiah be?
5. In John 1:1-14 we have a description of Jesus, the Word of God. Fill in the blanks from the following verses:

*John 1:4-5—<sup>4</sup>In him was life, and the life was the \_\_\_\_\_ of men. <sup>5</sup>The \_\_\_\_\_ shines in the \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_ has not overcome it.*

Continuing in John 1, verses 6-8 tell us that John [the Baptist] was not the light, but that he came to bear witness about the light. Fill in the following from verse 9:

*<sup>9</sup>The \_\_\_\_\_ light, which gives light to \_\_\_\_\_ was coming into the world.*



## The Son—Week 2

6. Read John 8:12. Again Jesus spoke to them, saying, "I am the light of the world. Whoever follows me will not walk in \_\_\_\_\_, but will have the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_."

It is clear from the verses which follow that the Pharisees understood Jesus' statement as a claim to be the Messiah, but once again they did not believe.

7. What might have motivated the Pharisees to reject Jesus as the Messiah?
8. What would it have 'cost' the Pharisees to accept that Jesus was who He claimed to be?
9. How about you? Do you believe that Jesus is who He claims to be? If not, what would it 'cost' you to believe?

There will come a glorious day when all those who believe in Jesus will live eternally in the light of God's glory.

*Isaiah 60:19-20—<sup>19</sup>The sun shall be no more your light by day, nor for brightness shall the moon give you light; but the LORD will be your everlasting light, and your God will be your glory. <sup>20</sup>Your sun shall no more go down, nor your moon withdraw itself; for the LORD will be your everlasting light, and your days of mourning shall be ended.*

In Revelation 21:22-23 we have this description of the New Jerusalem.

*Revelation 21:22-23—<sup>22</sup>And I saw no temple in the city, for its temple is the Lord God the Almighty and the Lamb. <sup>23</sup>And the city has no need of sun or moon to shine on it, for the glory of God gives it light, and its lamp is the Lamb.*

## The Son—Week 2

The next two “I AM” statements are interwoven with each other in John 10:1-16.

As you read the following passage underline the “I AM” statements in verses 7, 9, 11, and 14.

John 10:1-16—<sup>1</sup>“Truly, truly, I say to you, he who does not enter the sheepfold by the door but climbs in by another way, that man is a thief and a robber. <sup>2</sup>But he who enters by the door is the shepherd of the sheep. <sup>3</sup>To him the gatekeeper opens. The sheep hear his voice, and he calls his own sheep by name and leads them out. <sup>4</sup>When he has brought out all his own, he goes before them, and the sheep follow him, for they know his voice. <sup>5</sup>A stranger they will not follow, but they will flee from him, for they do not know the voice of strangers.” <sup>6</sup>This figure of speech Jesus used with them, but they did not understand what he was saying to them.

<sup>7</sup> So Jesus again said to them, “Truly, truly, I say to you, I am the door of the sheep. <sup>8</sup> All who came before me are thieves and robbers, but the sheep did not listen to them. <sup>9</sup> I am the door. If anyone enters by me, he will be saved and will go in and out and find pasture. <sup>10</sup> The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have life and have it abundantly. <sup>11</sup> I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep. <sup>12</sup> He who is a hired hand and not a shepherd, who does not own the sheep, sees the wolf coming and leaves the sheep and flees, and the wolf snatches them and scatters them. <sup>13</sup> He flees because he is a hired hand and cares nothing for the sheep. <sup>14</sup> I am the good shepherd. I know my own and my own know me, <sup>15</sup> just as the Father knows me and I know the Father; and I lay down my life for the sheep. <sup>16</sup> And I have other sheep that are not of this fold. I must bring them also, and they will listen to my voice. So there will be one flock, one shepherd.”

### CLAIM #3

I AM \_\_\_\_\_ John 10:7-9

In John 10:7-9 Jesus slightly changes the metaphor that is used in the rest of this passage. Instead of picturing Himself as the shepherd, here Jesus pictures Himself as the door to the sheepfold.

When the Israelites left Egypt to journey to the Promised Land God gave Moses very detailed instructions for building a portable sanctuary where His very presence would dwell among them. A large “fence” with only one gate was placed around the Tabernacle, or Tent of Meeting, as it was also called. Inside the fence was The Holy Place and, again, there was only one entrance. Inside this tent was The Most Holy Place where the presence of God dwelt over the Ark of the Covenant.

Once again, there was only one entrance. Once a year on the Day of Atonement the High Priest was allowed to enter the Most Holy Place, and then only after making atonement for himself and for the sins of the nation of Israel. Death was the consequence for entering any other way.

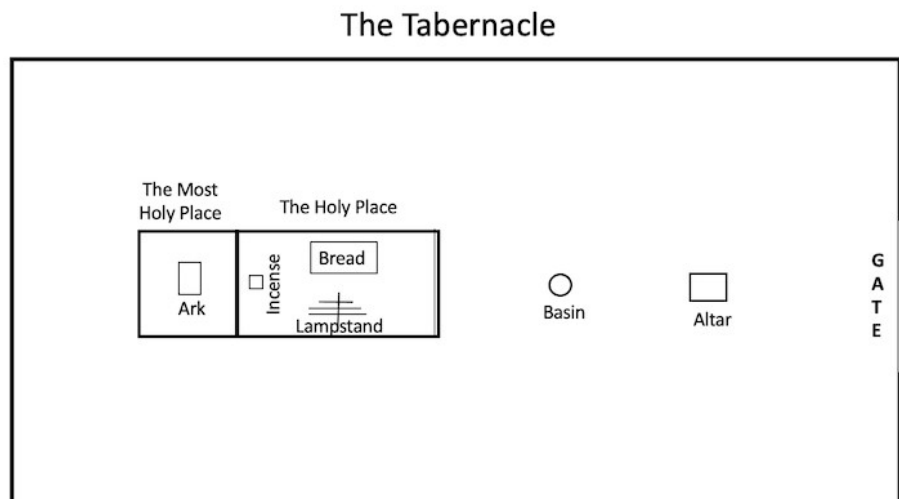


Figure 3—Tabernacle Diagram

## The Son-Week 2

1. In John 10:9 to whom does Jesus promise salvation?
2. Who is the only one who can save?

Once again, we see Jesus' claim to be God.

3. Read Hebrews 10:19-22.  
If we are believers what gives us the confidence to enter the holy place?

What does verse 22 invite us to do?

There is only one entrance to the Father and that is through Jesus, the Son of God. Jesus is the Door, the Gate, the only way. Praise God for the provision He made for us to enter His very presence!

There is also another facet to Jesus being the door of the sheep. In Jesus' day sheep were herded into an enclosure for the night. Often the shepherd made himself the gate to the pen by sleeping over the entrance to protect the sheep from wolves or robbers.

Jesus puts Himself as a barrier between His children and danger and leads us in green pastures. He cares for us and meets all our needs. When we trust in Him, we are able to find rest for our weary souls.

### CLAIM #4

I AM \_\_\_\_\_ John 10:11, 14

In the section on God the Father we saw that one of God's "I AM" names is *Jehovah-Raah*, The LORD My Shepherd. By claiming the same title Jesus further reinforces that He is the Son of God.

Read through John 10:1-16 again.

1. This passage tells us that the sheep know the voice of their shepherd and will follow him. What does Jesus promise those who follow Him?

Verse 3: He will \_\_\_\_\_ you.

Verse 4: He will go \_\_\_\_\_you.

## The Son-Week 2

Verse 9: You will be \_\_\_\_\_ and find \_\_\_\_\_.

Verse 10: You will have \_\_\_\_\_ life.

Verse 14: You will \_\_\_\_\_ Jesus.

2. In these verses Jesus contrasts Himself with false shepherds (thieves, robbers, hired hands). Summarize the actions of a false shepherd.

How will Jesus' true sheep respond to a false shepherd?

3. What do you think John 10: 9 means when it says that those who enter by Jesus "*will go in and out and find pasture?*" Think back to what you learned in the last lesson on *Jehovah-Raah*, The LORD My Shepherd.
4. Note that verse 3 says that Jesus calls His sheep by name. How intimate and precious is that! If you are truly His sheep what will your response be?

***WHAT A SHEPHERD! HE SEEKS OUT HIS SHEEP. HE CALLS THEM BY NAME. HE GOES BEFORE HIS SHEEP LEADING THE WAY, PROTECTING THEM, AND PROVIDING FOR THEM. TRUST HIM!***

### CLAIM #5

I AM the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_ John 11:25

John 11 recounts the death and resurrection of Lazarus just days before Jesus Himself is crucified. His raising of Lazarus from the dead is the pinnacle of Jesus' miracles—a final proof that He is God incarnate and an opportunity for many to believe in Him.

The chapter opens with Mary and Martha sending a message to Jesus telling Him that their brother Lazarus is ill. These three were beloved friends of Jesus. Mary and Martha were hopeful Jesus would come immediately and heal their brother, but He did not. In fact, Jesus tarried two days before beginning the trek to Bethany to visit His friends. By the time Jesus arrived Lazarus had been dead four days.

## The Son—Week 2

When Martha heard that Jesus was nearing Bethany, she went out to meet Him, but Mary stayed seated in the house.

*John 11:21-27—<sup>21</sup>Martha said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died. <sup>22</sup>But even now I know that whatever you ask from God, God will give you.” <sup>23</sup>Jesus said to her, “Your brother will rise again.” <sup>24</sup>Martha said to him, “I know that he will rise again in the resurrection on the last day.” <sup>25</sup>Jesus said to her, “I am the resurrection and the life. Whoever believes in me, though he die, yet shall he live, <sup>26</sup>and everyone who lives and believes in me shall never die. Do you believe this?” <sup>27</sup>She said to him, “Yes, Lord; I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God, who is coming into the world.”*

On a prior visit to their home Martha is often criticized for chastising Mary for sitting and listening to Jesus instead of helping her in the kitchen (Luke 10:38-42). However, this time, even though Martha is deeply grieving the death of her brother and no doubt wonders why Jesus had not come sooner, she expressed great faith in Him.

1. Fill in the following blanks which summarize Martha's declarations of faith recorded in John 11:21-27.

*Lord, if you had been here* .....

*But even now I know that whatever you ask from God,* .....

*I know that he will* ..... *in the* ..... *on the last day.*

*I believe that you are the* ....., *the* ....., *who is*

.....

Martha believed that Jesus was indeed the promised Messiah. She believed in the resurrection of the righteous on the last day, yet she did not fully understand what Jesus meant when He said, "I am the resurrection and the life." She was about to learn!

Jesus goes with Mary and Martha and their crowd of mourners to Lazarus' tomb. Jesus tells them that if they believe they will see the glory of God. Jesus calls to Lazarus to come out of the tomb—and he does (John 11:40-44)!

Further on in chapter 11 we learn that many believed, for only God can give life to someone who is dead. However, the chief priest and Pharisees hardened their hearts. They felt threatened by Jesus and resolved to kill Him.

## **The Son-Week 2**

Jesus raising Lazarus from the dead confirmed what Jesus stated to Martha in John 11:25 and shows that He is able to do what He states in 11:26 by showing that ***Jesus is the source of life!***

Read John 3:36

2. What must one do to have eternal life?

3. What is the proof of belief?

4. What is the consequence of not believing?

Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead, but only temporarily. Lazarus still had a mortal body and would one day die physically. However, not long after He raised Lazarus, Jesus was crucified, then raised eternally from the dead by His Father. Jesus' resurrection changed everything! Because Jesus overcame death, we too will one day be resurrected from the dead. (We will explore this subject in more detail when we get to the section on Salvation.)

### **DID YOU KNOW**

#### **Death**

"Death is the great horror which sin has produced (Rom. 5:12, Jas 1:15). Physical death is the divine object lesson of what sin does in the spiritual realm. As physical death ends life and separates people, so spiritual death is the separation of people from God and the loss of life which is in God (John 1:4). Jesus has come so that people may live full lives (John 10:10). Rejecting Jesus means that one will not see life (John 3:36) and that his final destiny is 'the second death', the lake of fire (Rev. 20:14-15)."<sup>7</sup>

## CLAIM #6

I AM the \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_ John 14:6

Read John 14:1-6.

1. Jesus begins by telling his disciples not to be troubled. Look back at the end of John 13. Why are the disciples troubled?
2. What is the answer to their troubled hearts (verse 1)?
3. Jesus tells the disciples He is going away to prepare them a place. Where is that place?

**Jesus goes on to tell them that He is the way, the truth, and the life.**

## THE WAY

4. To whom is Jesus the way?

5. Look up Acts 4:11-12 and fill in the blanks for verse 12.

"And there is salvation in \_\_\_\_\_, for there is \_\_\_\_\_ other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved."

We saw previously that Jesus was the only door to God. Now Jesus once again states that He is the way--the only way, to the Father. The only one through whom we can be saved.

## THE TRUTH

John 1:14 tells us that Jesus, the only Son from the Father, was full of grace and truth.

6. According to John 8:31-32, what do we have to do to know the truth that will set us free?
7. In John 17:17 Jesus asks His Father to "*Sanctify them in the truth, your \_\_\_\_\_ is truth.*"
8. Jesus is the Word of God (John 1:14). He is truth. His Word is truth. It is eternally true. It does not change with the culture. Do you need stability in your life? If so, what must you do?

## The Son-Week 2

### THE LIFE

In John 1:3 we saw that Jesus is the Creator and that "*without him was not anything made that was made.*" We also saw proof in John 11 that Jesus is the Resurrection and the Life when He raised Lazarus from the dead.

9. Read John 10:10 and fill in the blanks. The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I

came that they may have \_\_\_\_\_ and have it \_\_\_\_\_. (God is not skimpy with His gifts!)

10. Read John 10:27-28. How long does the life Jesus offers last?

Can anyone take it from you?

### CLAIM #7

I AM \_\_\_\_\_ John 15:1, 5

Read John 15:1-17.

These words take place in the Upper Room where Jesus has just eaten the Feast of Passover with His disciples and just before they leave for the Garden of Gethsemane. Traditionally four cups of wine are drunk with the Passover meal so the fruit of the vine would have been fresh in the disciples' minds.

Let's investigate how the original listeners would have heard these words of Jesus.

1. Read Psalm 80:8. Who do you think the vine refers to in this verse?
2. According to the following verses, what did this choice vine become even though God faithfully cared for it?  
Jeremiah 2:21—

Isaiah 5:3-7—

In the Old Testament Israel is pictured as the vine which God tenderly planted and cared for; yet, because of her idolatry, Israel did not produce the good fruit for which God longed. Now Jesus claims to be the true vine, the One who would fulfill what God had intended for Israel.



## The Son-Week 2

3. According to John 15:1 who is the vinedresser, the one who cultivates and prunes the vines?
4. John 15:2 and 6 tell us that some branches are not truly attached to the vine, or they would bear fruit. What is the fate of those branches?
5. According to these verses in John 15 fruitful branches are to abide in:

Verses 4-5 \_\_\_\_\_

Verse 7: Jesus' \_\_\_\_\_

Verse 9: Jesus' \_\_\_\_\_

### DID YOU KNOW

#### Abide (Greek: ménō)

"To remain, abide, dwell, live. ...  
to remain or be with someone...  
One with him in heart, mind, and will."<sup>9</sup>

Abiding is not just giving Jesus a couple hours on a Sunday and maybe dashing into His presence for a few minutes now and then. It is dwelling with Him. Being one with Him in heart, mind, and will. Praying without ceasing.

6. According to John 15:2 what does the vinedresser do to the branches that do bear fruit?

Is that what you would expect?

7. Why would God prune those who are bearing fruit? See Hebrews 12:10-11.

## The Son—Week 2

*Romans 8:28–30—<sup>28</sup>“And we know that for those who love God all things work together for good, for those who are called according to his purpose. <sup>29</sup>For those whom he foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, in order that he might be the firstborn among many brothers. <sup>30</sup>And those whom he predestined he also called and those whom he called he also justified, and those whom he justified he also glorified.”*

8. According to Romans 8:28-29 those whom He has called are predestined to be

\_\_\_\_\_ to the image of His Son.

That can be painful! However, verse 30 goes on to tell us *that “those whom he called he*

*also \_\_\_\_\_, and those whom he \_\_\_\_\_ he also*

*\_\_\_\_\_.”*

Imagine what that will be like!!

*2 Corinthians 4:16–18—<sup>16</sup>“So we do not lose heart. Though our outer self is wasting away, our inner self is being renewed day by day. <sup>17</sup>For this light momentary affliction is preparing for us an eternal weight of glory beyond all comparison, <sup>18</sup>as we look not to the things that are seen but to the things that are unseen. For the things that are seen are transient, but the things that are unseen are eternal.”*

It is true that no trouble seems light or momentary when we are going through it; however, even if we suffer terribly every day of our life it is nothing in the light of eternity.

9. Can you remember a time when you went through some painful pruning? How did God use that pruning to enable you to bear more fruit?

There is one more “I AM” statement in the Gospel of John that is often overlooked. It is perhaps the clearest evidence that Jesus was indeed God in the flesh.

“Finally, Jesus claims to be God right before He dies. When the soldiers are seeking Jesus out in the garden of Gethsemane to arrest Him, Jesus approached them and asked, ‘Whom do you seek?’ They answered him, ‘Jesus of Nazareth.’ Jesus said to them, ‘I am he’ (John 18:4–5). Our modern English translations add a word here, but the original Greek simply has ‘I am.’ Interestingly, when Jesus said this, the band of soldiers ‘drew back and fell to the ground’ (John 18:6).”<sup>10</sup> Could the soldiers’ response have been due to experiencing a glimpse of His glory?

***THROUGH HIS “I AM” STATEMENTS RECORDED IN THE GOSPEL OF JOHN JESUS CLEARLY CLAIMS TO BE THE MESSIAH, GOD INCARNATE.***

## **Conclusion**

We have looked at Jesus who is fully man and fully God; the eternal God who took on flesh—. As a man Jesus was tired and thirsty. He was tempted as we are, yet without sin. He was despised and rejected and suffered to the point of death on a cross.

As fully God, Jesus proved His divine power by the miracles He performed. He cast out demons, healed the sick, gave sight to the blind, made the lame walk, and even raised the dead. Only God could do that!

We looked at Jesus' claims to be God with His own statements found in the Gospel of John when He said "I AM:"

I AM...

- the Bread of Life
- the Light of the World
- the Door
- the Good Shepherd
- the Resurrection and the Life
- the Way, the Truth, and the Life
- the Vine

As the promised Messiah Jesus has yet to rule on David's throne, but God is always true to His Word. One glorious day Jesus will return as King. He will sit upon the throne of David in Jerusalem and rule the world in perfect righteousness and justice for 1,000 years during the Millennial Kingdom. (We will study that in the lesson on Last Things.)

*Jeremiah 23:5—Behold, days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will raise up for David a righteous Branch, and he shall reign as king and deal wisely, and shall execute justice and righteousness in the land.*

Imagine a world with such a king!! And, wonder of wonders, King Jesus will not only rule in Jerusalem during the Millennial Kingdom, He will reign forever and ever as King of kings and Lord of lords.

The following words are taken from the "Hallelujah Chorus" in Handel's *Messiah*, (Revelation 19:6, 11:15, 19:16). Meditate on them and give glory to God. One day this will be reality!

*For the Lord God omnipotent reigneth  
Hallelujah . . .*

*The kingdom of this world;  
Is become*

*The kingdom of our Lord  
And of His Christ*

*And He shall reign for ever and ever*

*King of kings forever and ever  
Hallelujah . . .*

*And lord of lords forever and ever  
Hallelujah . . .*

*King of kings and lord of lords*

*And he shall reign forever and ever  
Hallelujah . . .*

# Hymn For Meditation

## **“Once in Royal David's City”**

Cecil Frances Alexander, 1848

Once in royal David's city  
Stood a lowly cattle shed,  
Where a mother laid her Baby  
In a manger for His bed:  
Mary was that mother mild,  
Jesus Christ, her little Child.

He came down to earth from heaven  
Who is God and Lord of all,  
And His shelter was a stable,  
And His cradle was a stall:  
With the poor, and mean, and lowly,  
Lived on earth our Savior holy.

Jesus is our childhood's pattern,  
Day by day like us He grew;  
He was little, weak, and helpless,  
Tears and smiles like us He knew:  
And He feeleth for our sadness,  
And He shareth in our gladness.

And our eyes at last shall see Him,  
Through His own redeeming love;  
For that Child so dear and gentle  
Is our Lord in heaven above,  
And He leads His children on  
To the place where He is gone.

# Appendix

## **Endnotes**

## **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 1

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 2

REFLECTIONS

# Endnotes

1. Lyle Dorsett, "C. S. Lewis: A Profile of His Life," Christianity Today, accessed August 21, 2021, <https://www.christianitytoday.com/history/issues/issue-7/cs-lewis-profile-of-his-life.html>.
2. C. S. Lewis, *Mere Christianity* (New York: Touchstone, 1996), Book II, 56.
3. "Ancient-Symbols," accessed July 17, 2021, [https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield\\_of\\_trinity.html](https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield_of_trinity.html).
4. "What is a theophany? What is a Christophany?" Got Questions Ministries, Accessed August 28, 2021, <https://www.gotquestions.org/theophany-Christophany.html>.
5. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 241.
6. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 261.
7. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 260.
8. John F. Walvoord and Roy B. Zuck, *The Bible Knowledge Commentary Old Testament and New Testament Set for e-Sword* (Cook Communications), John 11:1-44, e-Sword edition.
9. Zodhiates, Spiros, Warren Baker, and Eugene Carpenter, *Complete Word Study Dictionary: Old Testament and New Testament for e-Sword*. (Chattanooga, TN: AMG Publishers), G3306, e-Sword edition.
10. "The Truth About Jesus Christ: What are the Seven I Am Statements of Jesus in the Gospel of John?" Compelling Truth, Got Questions Ministries, Accessed August 24, 2021, <https://www.compellingtruth.org/seven-I-AM-statements.html>.

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*

CLASS NOTES  
*week two*

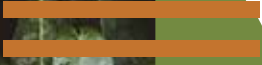
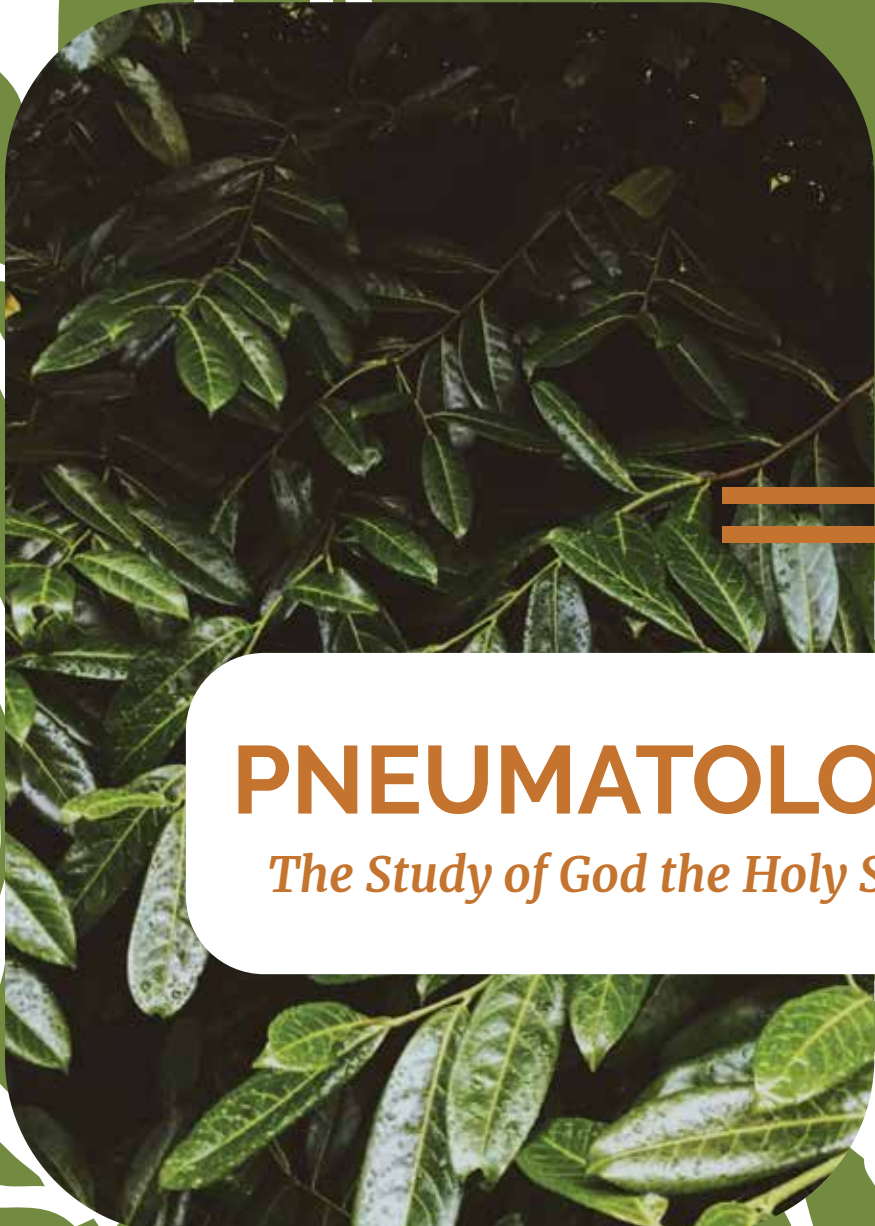


The Son





*reflections*



# **PNEUMATOLOGY**

*The Study of God the Holy Spirit*



# The Holy Spirit - Week One

## Introduction

Charles Haddon Spurgeon was born in 1834 in Kelvedon, Essex. Although he had a limited formal education, he loved the writings of the Puritans and read *Pilgrim's Progress* by John Bunyan over 100 times. He accepted Christ as Lord and Savior at the age of 15 after hearing a pastor preach on one verse, "Look unto me and be ye saved all the ends of the earth; for I am God, and there is no other" (Isaiah 45:22). Soon after, Spurgeon preached his first sermon. By age 17, he had become the pastor of his own church. Delivering the Word of God with power and creativity well beyond his years, the church grew from a congregation of 40 to over 450 members.

Spurgeon's reputation also grew, and he was invited to preach at London's largest Baptist church, New Park Street Chapel, in December 1853. He became the pastor there at age 19. Soon the congregation became too large for the 1200-seat auditorium. In March of 1861, a larger church was built to accommodate the throngs of people who desired to hear his bold and clear preaching of God's Word. It was named the Metropolitan Tabernacle and seated 5,000 people with room for 1,000 more to stand. He pastored there for 38 years until his death. During his lifetime it is estimated that Spurgeon preached to nearly 10 million people! No wonder he is known today as the "Prince of Preachers."

However, Spurgeon's work was not limited to preaching, sermon-publishing, and writing religious books. Among other things, he founded a college to train men for the pastorate, established an orphanage, and organized the distribution of food and clothing to the poor.

After a full and fruitful life grounded in humility, faith and prayer, Charles H. Spurgeon passed into eternity on January 31<sup>st</sup>, 1892, at the age of 57.<sup>1</sup>

Spurgeon, who spoke of being utterly unworthy of his calling as a pastor and utterly dependent on the Holy Spirit to do God's work, wrote this:

"Without the Spirit of God we can do nothing. We are as ships without wind or chariots without steeds. Like branches without sap, we are withered. Like coals without fire, we are useless. As an offering without the sacrificial flame, we are unaccepted."<sup>2</sup>

Spurgeon sought first and foremost to make much of Jesus Christ through the enabling power of the Holy Spirit.

How about us? Do we depend upon the Holy Spirit to make much of Christ? Do we rely upon Him to empower us to bear spiritual fruit, use our spiritual gifts and accomplish things that have *eternal* value? OR do we live the Christian life relying on our own power and strength?

**MAY OUR STUDY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT EXPAND OUR KNOWLEDGE OF HIM, DEEPEN OUR LOVE FOR HIM, AND INCREASE OUR DEPENDENCE UPON HIM SO THAT OUR LIVES GIVE GLORY TO GOD!**



*And I [Jesus] will ask the Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you forever, even the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, for he dwells with you and will be in you.*

*John 14:16-17*

# Knowing God the Holy Spirit

In this section, we will study God the Holy Spirit. As part of the third person of the triune God, He is worthy of our time and effort to study and understand to the best of our ability. This section will cover these aspects of the Holy Spirit:

1. THE ESSENCE OF GOD THE HOLY SPIRIT
2. GOD'S PRESENCE WITH HIS PEOPLE
3. GOD'S PRESENCE IN HIS PEOPLE
  - a. THE EMPOWERMENT OF THE HOLY SPIRIT AMONG GOD'S PEOPLE
  - b. THE PROMISE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT TO GOD'S PEOPLE
  - c. THE ARRIVAL OF THE HOLY SPIRIT FOR GOD'S PEOPLE
  - d. THE WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IN GOD'S PEOPLE

Week 1 will cover the essence of God the Holy Spirit followed by a look at the various ways God has made His presence known with His people over time, and then the early activity of the Holy Spirit among God's people, the promise of the Holy Spirit to God's people and the arrival of the Holy Spirit for God's people. Week 2 will cover the work of the Holy Spirit in God's people in the current age.

## 1. The Essence of God the Holy Spirit

The last two sections of this study covered that God is triune. Both God the Father and God the Son are members of the Trinity along with God the Holy Spirit. You may want to review the lesson on God the Father for a deeper explanation. Following are some of the key points concerning what the Bible says about the trinity of God:

- There is one God (unity).
- God is three distinct persons (Father, Son and Spirit).
- Each person of God is fully God. (God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit).

The Master's Seminary doctrinal statement sums it up this way: ". . .There is one God in three persons, who are distinct from one another yet inseparably one in essence and who are coexistent, coeternal, and coequal."<sup>4</sup>

Similar to understanding that God the Son is both fully God and fully man, it is important to understand that God the Holy Spirit is both fully God and has full personhood. Too often the Holy Spirit is considered to be a 'spirit' without understanding that while He submits to the Father and to the Son, He is equal with them in deity and in personhood. Let's look at these ideas from Scripture.

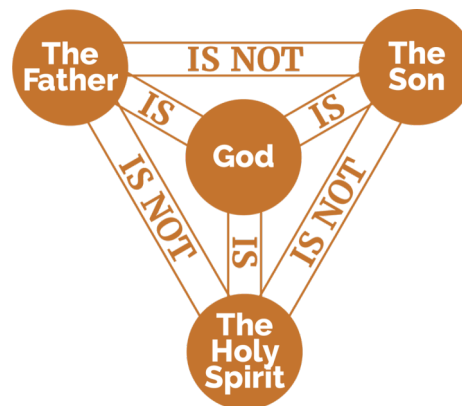


Figure 1—"The Shield of the Trinity"<sup>3</sup>

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

### THE HOLY SPIRIT IS FULLY GOD

1. Read Acts 5:1-4  
How does this passage identify that the Holy Spirit is God?
  
2. Compare Isaiah 6:8-10 with Acts 28:25-27.  
How do these verses identify that the Holy Spirit is God?

As this study looks at the activity of the Holy Spirit in the pages that follow, the reality of the Holy Spirit's full equality with God the Father and God the Son will continue to be developed.

### THE HOLY SPIRIT HAS FULL PERSONHOOD

The Bible provides abundant evidence that the Holy Spirit is a *person*, not merely a force, a power or an "it." Although we may think a person has to have a physical body to be deemed a person, personhood is determined by the possession of three basic characteristics:

- 1) cognition/intellect
- 2) volition/will,
- 3) emotion/affection.<sup>5</sup>

Again, we look to Scripture to give evidence of the Holy Spirit expressing each of these.

#### Cognition/Intellect

3. Look up the following Scriptures and fill in the blanks.

Isaiah 11:1-2 Context: Isaiah is prophesying about Jesus, the Righteous Branch; Fill in the blanks from verse 2.

*Isaiah 11:2—And the Spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the Spirit of \_\_\_\_\_ and*

*\_\_\_\_\_, the Spirit of \_\_\_\_\_ and might, the Spirit of*

*\_\_\_\_\_ and the fear of the LORD.*

*Luke 12:12—For the Holy Spirit will \_\_\_\_\_ you in that very hour what you ought to say.*

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

Continuing with question 3...

*1 Corinthians 2:11—For who knows a person’s thoughts except the spirit of that person, which is in him? So also*

*no one \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ of God except the Spirit of God.*

4. Summarize how these Scriptures demonstrate that the Holy Spirit is a person with cognitive and intellectual abilities.

### Volition/Will

5. Look up the following verses and write down what the Spirit does and how He demonstrates His will.

Acts 16:6-7

Hebrews 2:4

### Emotion/Affection

6. Look up the following verses and write down the emotions and affections the Holy Spirit feels.

Isaiah 63:10

Romans 15:30

1 Thessalonians 1:6

These are just some of the Scriptures that demonstrate the personhood of the Holy Spirit. Far from being a force or power, He is a *person* that has intellect, will and emotions.



## 2. God's Presence with His People

Even before God created the first man and the first woman on a beautiful planet, in a vast universe, *His intent has always been to dwell with His people*. Let's take a quick journey through the Bible to see God unfold His sovereign plan, from the time that sin entered His perfect world until the Holy Spirit came to dwell within every believer. We will leave the future dwelling of God with His people for the section on the End Times in the last section of the entire study..

### A GARDEN

Date: The Beginning

Genesis 3:8-11

Context: The Fall-Adam and Eve have disobeyed God by eating fruit from the forbidden tree.

7. What was God doing and what were Adam and Eve doing, in verse 8?  
GOD –  
  
ADAM and EVE –
  
8. What question did God call out to the man in verse 9, even though He already knew the answer?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
9. In verses 9-11, what statement best describes what is happening between God and Adam?
  - a. they are ignoring one another
  - b. they are mad at each other
  - c. they are talking to one another
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
10. Even though this interaction took place after the Fall, what can you deduce about the relationship of God with Adam and Eve **before** the Fall? Give a brief description below.
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
11. Read Isaiah 59:2  
What did the Fall bring about according to this verse?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
12. In contrast to Adam and Eve hiding in the garden, what is said to be hidden in this verse, and why?

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

Sin brought separation between God and Adam and every person born afterwards. Yet, throughout the ages, because of His mercy and lovingkindness, God continued to pursue His people. In fact, He still pursues them today.

Let's look at the ways God has dwelt among His people since the Fall.

### A TABERNACLE

Date: approx. 1445 BC

Exodus 40:34-38

Context: Moses has led the Israelites out of Egypt. He has been instructed by God to create a moveable tabernacle. The Hebrew word translated "tabernacle" is *miškān* which means *dwelling place*.

13. One of the items crafted and placed in the holiest room in the tabernacle was the ark of the covenant. Read Exodus 25:21-22 and write down *why* the ark was so sacred and special.
14. How did God demonstrate His presence among His people in Exodus 40:34-38?

### A TEMPLE

Date: 965 BC

1 Kings 8:17-21 and 2 Chronicles 7: 1-3

Context: King Solomon has completed the building of a temple for God in Jerusalem.

15. What was placed in the temple according to 1 Kings 8:21?
16. Using the dates given, approximately how many years had it been since the tabernacle was built?
17. Did the people really believe that God's presence was confined to a tabernacle or temple? Read 1 Kings 8:27. Which one of God's attributes did they understand?
18. How did God confirm His presence in the temple according to 2 Chronicles 7:1-3?

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

### A PERSON

Date: ca. 4 BC to AD 30

John 1:1-2, 14

Context: John, the disciple whom Jesus loved, wrote the Gospel of John to bear witness to the deity of Jesus Christ. These are the opening verses to that book.

19. Through *whom* did God dwell among His people according to these verses?

Jesus, fully God and fully man, was crucified around AD 30. As we have already studied, He told His disciples that although He was leaving them and going to the Father, the Father would send another Helper who would be with them forever (John 14:15-16). Fifty days after His resurrection and ascension into heaven, the Holy Spirit arrived with great power.

### EVERY BELIEVER

Date: Pentecost to Today

Romans 8:9, 11; 1 Corinthians 3:16

Context: Paul wrote letters to the churches in Rome and Corinth to strengthen them spiritually and remind them of an important truth.

20. Fill in the blanks for the following 4 verses:

*Romans 8:9— You, however, are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if in fact the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ dwells \_\_\_\_\_ you. Anyone who does not have the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ does not belong to him.*

*Romans 8:11—If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells \_\_\_\_\_ you, he who raised Christ Jesus from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through his Spirit who \_\_\_\_\_ in you.*

*1 Corinthians 3:16— Do you not know that you are God's \_\_\_\_\_ and that God's \_\_\_\_\_ dwells \_\_\_\_\_ you?*

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

1 Corinthians 6:19—Or do you not know that your body is a \_\_\_\_\_ of the Holy Spirit

\_\_\_\_\_ you, whom you have from God? You are not your own.

### THE TRUTH IN THESE VERSES IS AMAZING AND PROFOUND!

So as not to rush through them, set a timer for 5 minutes and meditate on these 4 verses. Ask the Father to help you grasp the significance of the Holy Spirit indwelling every believer and the power the Spirit provides to live an abundant, fruitful life for the Lord.

In the beginning, God walked and talked with Adam and Eve in a beautiful garden in a perfect world. After the Fall, sin separated mankind from a holy God. Yet, He continued to love and pursue His people. He dwelt among them and demonstrated His glory in the tabernacle and in the temple built by Solomon. Hundreds of years later, His glory and presence came to earth in Jesus Christ, God Incarnate. Today, the Spirit of God dwells within every believer who by faith has trusted in Christ's death and resurrection to pay the penalty for sins. Through the power of the Holy Spirit every believer can become more and more like Christ.

Best of all, one day believers will come full circle. They will dwell with the LORD in glorified bodies on a new earth without sin, forever and ever!

Now set the timer for another 5 minutes. Spend time worshiping God for His steadfast love, His faithfulness, His grace, and His mercy. Thank Him for His just and righteous plan to save sinners and bring them into the family of God. Praise Him for the intimate presence and power of the Holy Spirit.

### 3. God's Presence in His People

We often think of the Holy Spirit's ministry beginning with Pentecost when He came to indwell believers, but He was active from creation, continuing through the Old and New Testaments, albeit in a different capacity before Pentecost.

*Genesis 1:1-2—<sup>1</sup>In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth. <sup>2</sup>The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.*

In addition to being active at creation, the Holy Spirit empowered people before coming at Pentecost. This activity of the Holy Spirit as well as the promise of His coming to all of God's people at Pentecost are recorded throughout Scripture. Let's look now at the early activity of the Holy Spirit, the promise of His coming, and the arrival of the Holy Spirit to indwell God's people at Pentecost. Next week's lesson will look further at the work of the Holy Spirit in God's people in the current age.

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

### THE EMPOWERMENT OF THE HOLY SPIRIT AMONG GOD'S PEOPLE

Beginning with Pentecost the Holy Spirit permanently indwells all true believers; by contrast, the major characteristics of His indwelling in the Old Testament can be summarized as follows:<sup>6</sup>

1. Infrequent
2. Involving selected leaders in Israel only
3. Temporary
4. An empowerment for service

To see some examples of the Holy Spirit's empowerment, look up the following verses and answer the questions.

#### BEZALEL

Exodus 35:30-35

Context: The building of the Tabernacle in the Wilderness.

21. What skills did the Spirit of God empower Bezalel to do?

22. What else was Bezalel inspired to do according to verse 34?

#### GIDEON

Judges 6:34

Context: God called fearful Gideon to save Israel from the hand of Midian.

23. How did the Spirit of God come upon Gideon?

*Judges 6:34—But the Spirit of the LORD \_\_\_\_\_ Gideon . . .*

Isn't that a wonderful description! Gideon was timid and afraid, but God's Spirit wrapped Himself around him and gave him the ability to do the task to which God had called him.

#### DAVID AND KING SAUL

1 Samuel 16:1, 13-14

Context: Saul is king over Israel.

24. What happened to Saul because of his disobedience?

25. What happened to David when Samuel anointed him?

## *The Holy Spirit-Week 1*

### THE PROMISE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT TO GOD'S PEOPLE

Even as the Holy Spirit was active among God's people, God was promising to send the Holy Spirit in a new way. This promise appears in both the Old and New Testaments.

#### OLD TESTAMENT PROMISE

Over eight hundred years before Pentecost God promised the prophet Joel that there would come a day when He would pour out His Spirit on all flesh.

26. Read Joel 2:28-29.

To whom would the Spirit be poured out upon in the latter days?

According to Joel 2:28 what signs would accompany the coming of the Spirit at that time?

27. Read Acts 2:1, 16-18.

When was Joel's prophecy partially fulfilled?

#### NEW TESTAMENT PROMISE

John 14 opens with Jesus sharing His last instructions with His disciples before His crucifixion. They are very troubled because Jesus has told them that He will soon be going away. To allay their concerns Jesus promises them several things:

1. He is going to prepare a place for them and will come again and take them to be with Him there (14:1-3).
2. Those who believe in Him will do greater works than Jesus did on earth (14:12).
3. If they ask anything in His name, He will do it (14:14).
4. He will ask the Father to send them the Holy Spirit (14:16-26).

Let's examine the promised Holy Spirit in more detail.

28. Read John 14:15-17, 25-27 on the following page and double underline the different names by which the Holy Spirit is called in this passage.

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

John 14:15-17, 25-27—<sup>15</sup>“If you love me, you will keep my commandments. <sup>16</sup>And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you forever, <sup>17</sup>even the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, for he dwells with you and will be in you. . . .”

<sup>25</sup>“These things I have spoken to you while I am still with you. <sup>26</sup>But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he will teach you all things and bring to your remembrance all that I have said to you.

<sup>27</sup>Peace I leave with you; my peace I give to you. Not as the world gives do I give to you. Let not your hearts be troubled, neither let them be afraid.”

### THE PROMISED HELPER

29. Circle “another” in verse 16.

“Another Helper” is translated from the Greek phrase *állon paraklēton*.

*Állon* means another of the same kind, as opposed to another different one. John MacArthur puts it this way:

“The Greek word specifically means another of the same kind, i.e., someone like Jesus Himself who will take His place and do His work. The Spirit of Christ is the third person of the Trinity, having the same essence of deity as Jesus and as perfectly one with Him as He is with the Father.”

*Paraklēton* is translated Helper in the ESV. A *paraclete* is “one called alongside to help’ and has the idea of someone who encourages and exhorts.”<sup>7</sup>

30. Underline the ways we see the Holy Spirit as Helper in this passage.

31. Summarize in your own words what “another Helper” means in this passage.

32. Circle the word which tells you how long the Helper be with you.  
How does this encourage you?

## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

### THE PROMISED SPIRIT OF TRUTH

Think about the world we live in. Ephesians 2:2 tells us that presently this world is ruled by Satan, the prince of the power of the air.

33. Look up John 8:44. Speaking of the devil, Jesus said,

*John 8:44—He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the \_\_\_\_\_, because there is no \_\_\_\_\_ in him. When he \_\_\_\_\_, he speaks out of his own character, for his is a \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.*

What a stark contrast! The world is feeding us with lies at every turn. But if we are in Christ, His Spirit of Truth dwells within us and is always with us. We can know truth!

34. Write out John 17:17.

How can we know truth?

***WHAT RICH PROMISES ARE GIVEN TO THOSE WHO LOVE JESUS AND KEEP HIS COMMANDMENTS. BE ENCOURAGED! WHATEVER DARKNESS SURROUNDS US OR TRIALS WE MAY FACE, THE HOLY SPIRIT WALKS ALONGSIDE OF US. HE IS ALWAYS AVAILABLE TO ENCOURAGE, COMFORT, TEACH, AND ADMONISH.***

### THE ARRIVAL OF THE HOLY SPIRIT FOR GOD'S PEOPLE

After Jesus' resurrection from the dead, He met with the apostles over a period of forty days and spoke to them about the kingdom of God. He ordered them not to leave Jerusalem but to wait for the promised Holy Spirit. Just before He ascended into heaven Jesus told them, "...you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria and to the end of the earth" (Acts 1:8). Acts 2 records the Holy Spirit's powerful descent upon the apostles during the Jewish feast of Pentecost.

Read Acts 2:1-13 and answer the following questions:

35. The Holy Spirit's sudden arrival is compared to what sound according to verse 2?

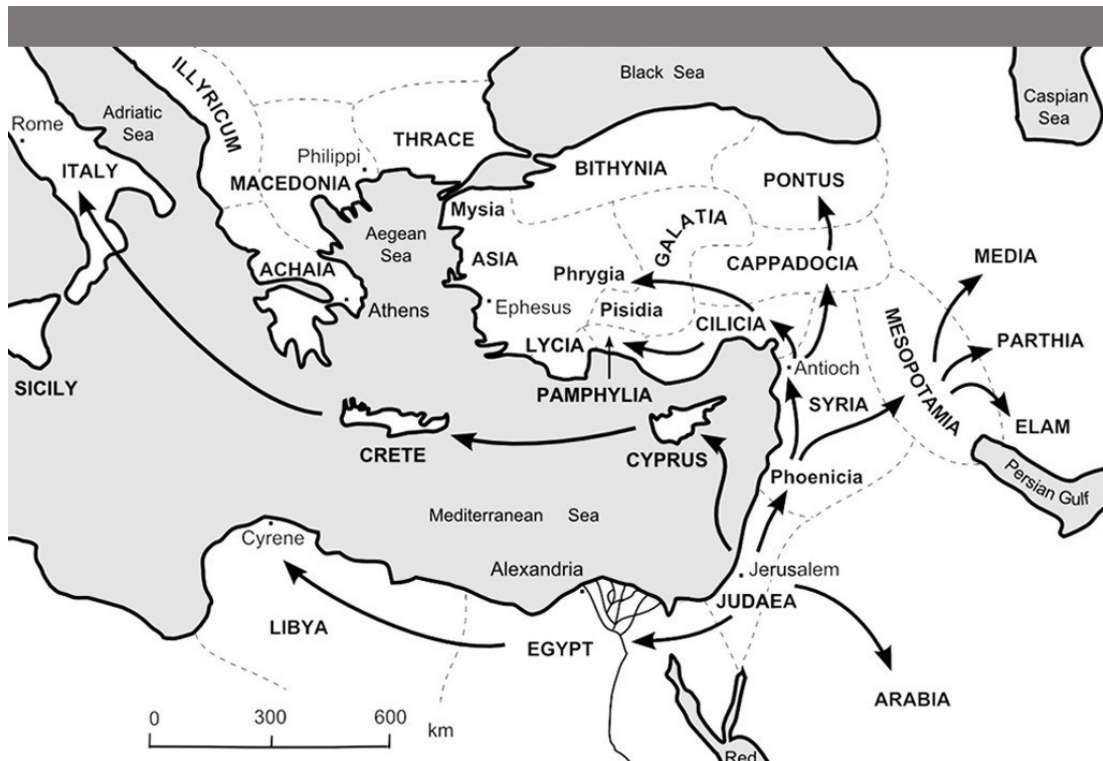
36. How are the divided tongues that appeared and rested on each apostle described?

37. Verse 4 states, "And they were all \_\_\_\_\_ with the Holy Spirit..."



## The Holy Spirit—Week 1

38. What did He give them the ability to do according to verse 4?
39. What does it mean to speak in tongues according to verses 6 and 8?
40. Why do you think these supernatural phenomena accompanied the Holy Spirit's arrival?
41. Who heard the apostles speaking according to verse 5?
42. What were the apostles proclaiming according to verse 11?
43. Many of the visitors to Jerusalem had traveled a long way to celebrate the Passover. Locate and mark the places listed in verses 9 and 10 on the map below. How did this help fulfill Acts 1:8?



Map created by Chris and Jenifer Taylor of The Bible Journey, Downloaded from FreeBibleImages under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License. [www.thebiblejourney.org](http://www.thebiblejourney.org).

Figure 2—Map of Pentecost Witnesses

## ***The Holy Spirit-Week 1***

The Holy Spirit arrived, just as Jesus promised. He came in power and announced Himself with sound (like a mighty rushing wind) and visible appearance (divided tongues as of fire). He supernaturally enabled the apostles to speak other languages so that people from various parts of the world could hear the mighty works of God being proclaimed.

Picture this scene in your mind and imagine being part of it.

44. Read Acts 2:12-13.

What was the crowd's response or explanation for all that was happening?

45. Continue reading Acts 2:14-41 and note Peter's bold preaching of the first gospel presentation ever given. How did Peter explain the event in these verses?

The arrival of the Holy Spirit on the day of Pentecost marked the beginning of the Church Age. The apostles would soon find out that He came not only to save Jews but Gentiles also, and the kingdom of God belongs to both. More on this as we study the Church in a later section.

# The Holy Spirit-Week 2

*Last week's lesson ended with the Holy Spirit's arrival to the believers at Pentecost. This week we will focus on the work of the Holy Spirit in God's people after Pentecost.*

## THE WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IN GOD'S PEOPLE

Salvation, spiritual gifts and spiritual fruit are all a work of the Holy Spirit in God's people. This part of the study will look at the Holy Spirit's involvement in each of these areas as well as what it means to be *filled* with the Spirit.

### REBIRTH, SEAL, AND GUARANTEE

All three persons of the Trinity are active in the work of salvation. We will delve more deeply into that subject when we get to the section on salvation, but for now we will focus on the Holy Spirit's role. The Holy Spirit is active in the *rebirth* of believers at salvation and then *seals* and *guarantees* them. God's Word gives us a full picture of what it means for the Holy Spirit to cause one to be born again and to be sealed and guaranteed.

#### *REBIRTH*

1. Read Ephesians 2:1-3.

What is your spiritual condition from the time you are born until you are saved?

What can a dead person do to help himself?

2. Read Ephesians 2:4-5 and fill in the blank.

"BUT GOD . . . even when we were dead in our trespasses, made us \_\_\_\_\_ together with Christ . . ."

3. According to John 6:63, Who gives us this life?

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

Read John 3:5-8 below. (Context: Since he realized no one could perform the miracles Jesus did unless God was with him, Nicodemus came to Jesus by night to question Him about this. Jesus' answer confused Nicodemus more. He could not understand how a person could be born a second time. He was missing the point that Jesus was talking about a different kind of birth.)

*John 3:5-8—<sup>5</sup>Jesus answered, “Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God. <sup>6</sup>That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. <sup>7</sup>Do not marvel that I said to you, ‘You must be born again.’ <sup>8</sup>The wind blows where it wishes, and you hear its sound, but you do not know where it comes from or where it goes. So it is with everyone born of the Spirit.”*

4. Read through John 3:5-8 once more marking the word “Spirit.”

In this passage Jesus is contrasting those born of the \_\_\_\_\_ with those born of the \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Read John 16:8. Here, Jesus is telling His disciples about the Holy Spirit Whom He will send after He departs. In this verse, what does He say the Spirit will do when He comes?

### TAKE ROOT

The biblical words for *Spirit* (*ruah* in Hebrew, *pneuma* in Greek) signify breath breathed or exhaled hard such as when you blow up balloons, blow out candles, or breathe hard as you run. The words also signify the blowing of the wind, which is sometimes barely perceptible, but at other times becomes a roaring, shattering thing—an overwhelming display of power. The Spirit's action takes both forms, and many in between. The Spirit is God's power in human lives.” J. I. Packer<sup>8</sup>

The Holy Spirit always focuses attention on Jesus, not on Himself. He convicts us of sin, leads us to repentance, and causes us to place our faith in the Lord Jesus, thus enabling us to pass from death into life (John 5:24). Any spirit that draws attention to itself or to a person is not the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit always points to Jesus!

6. Read Titus 3:4-6 given below then fill in the blanks on the following page.

*Titus 3:4-6—<sup>4</sup>But when the goodness and loving kindness of God our Savior appeared, <sup>5</sup>he saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to his own mercy, by washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit, <sup>6</sup>whom he poured out on us richly through Jesus Christ our Savior, <sup>7</sup>so that being justified by his grace we might become heirs according to the hope of eternal life.*

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

Once again, we see the contrast between the works of the flesh and the work of the Spirit in salvation. God saved us, “not because of works done by us in \_\_\_\_\_, but according to his own \_\_\_\_\_, by washing of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_.”

7. Study the definitions in the box at the right. How do they help you understand the Holy Spirit's role in salvation?

### DID YOU KNOW

**Regeneration** (Greek: *paliggenesia*)  
Refers to the spiritual rebirth of the individual soul.

**Renewal** (Greek: *anakainōsis*)  
Means to renew qualitatively. Therefore, a renewing or a renovation which makes a person different than in the past.<sup>9</sup>

2 Corinthians 5:17 puts it this way: “*Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away; behold the new has come.*”

When we are saved we become a completely new person, not just a better version of our old self.

Concerning our salvation, theologian J. I. Packer said,

“In this act of almighty grace, the Holy Spirit is the direct agent. He illuminates, convinces, quickens, induces new birth, imparts repentance, and prompts the converted soul's confession, ‘Jesus is Lord.’”<sup>10</sup>

***PRAISE THE LORD FOR THE WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT IN GIVING US NEW LIFE!***

### SEAL

As we have seen, the Holy Spirit comes to regenerate a sinner's heart by causing him or her to be convicted of sin, repent, and believe by faith in the death, burial, and resurrection of Jesus Christ. At the moment of salvation, the Holy Spirit also *seals* us.

Read the passages of Scripture printed below and on the following page then mark them up when directed to do so.

*Ephesians 1:13-14—<sup>13</sup>In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, <sup>14</sup>who is the guarantee of our inheritance until we acquire possession of it, to the praise of his glory.*

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

2 Corinthians 1:21-22—<sup>21</sup>And it is God who establishes us with you in Christ, and has anointed us,<sup>22</sup> and who has also put his seal on us and given us his Spirit in our hearts as a guarantee.

8. Mark the word “seal” or “sealed” with an S in both of the passages above.

The Greek word translated “seal” is *sphragizō* and it means to mark a person or a thing; to set a mark upon by the impress of a seal or stamp.

In ancient times, soft wax was placed on a letter or other possession and then the wax was stamped with a unique mark that identified the owner. This mark or seal symbolized “security, protection, ownership, authority and authenticity.”<sup>11</sup>

The apostle Paul used this common practice of his day as a word picture to describe the work of the Holy Spirit.

9. According to Ephesians 1:13 printed above, **when** is a person sealed with the Holy Spirit?

10. According to 2 Corinthians 1:21-22 printed above, who gives the Spirit?

11. Therefore, to whom does every believer belong?

### THINK ABOUT THE SPIRITUAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THIS:

**THE SEAL OF THE HOLY SPIRIT AT SALVATION AUTHENTICATES THAT A BELIEVER IS A CHILD OF GOD;  
SECURE, PROTECTED, AND UNDER THE AUTHORITY OF A LOVING, HEAVENLY FATHER!**

### GUARANTEE

Finally, in addition to the Holy Spirit causing believers to be reborn and sealed, the Holy Spirit *guarantees* a future inheritance with the Lord.

Let's look at this truth about the Holy Spirit from these passages.

12. Go back to the 2 Corinthians and Ephesians verses (above and on the previous page) and put a circle around the word “guarantee.”

## The Holy Spirit-Week 2

The Greek word translated "guarantee" is *arrabōn* and it means a pledge, i.e., part of the purchase-money or property given in advance as security for the rest. Synonyms include a down payment or a deposit. The word communicates certainty and assurance that the rest of the payment will be forthcoming.

13. Of what is the Holy Spirit a guarantee according to Ephesians 1:14?

14. Define what this means for the future of a believer. (See 1 Corinthians 15:50-55.)

MacArthur and Mayhue explain the beautiful outcome of the Spirit's work in this way:

"The Spirit is not only God's seal on believers but also God's guarantee . . . that he will ultimately fulfill his promise of eternal life with a resurrected and glorified body."<sup>12</sup>

***NO MATTER WHAT YOU ARE GOING THROUGH, KNOW FOR CERTAIN THAT YOUR FUTURE IS SECURE. GOD DOES NOT LIE, AND HE DOESN'T CHANGE. THE SEAL OF THE SPIRIT GUARANTEES THAT ALL BELIEVERS WILL LIVE FOREVER WITH THE LORD IN A PLACE OF UNIMAGINABLE BEAUTY IN GLORIFIED BODIES THAT WILL NEVER UNDERGO DECAY! REJOICE IN GOD'S GOODNESS!***

15. How can knowing that a believer is sealed and guaranteed by the Spirit encourage someone who fears they can lose their salvation?

16. What difference does it make knowing that your salvation is secure in God?

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

### FILL (LEAD)

In the last section we learned that every believer is permanently indwelt by the Holy Spirit at salvation. It is also true that at salvation every believer possesses the Spirit *in His fullness*, i.e., a believer does not progressively get more of Him as time goes by. However, it is one thing to be indwelt by the Holy Spirit and another thing to be *filled* with the Holy Spirit. Let's look at what it means to be filled with the Spirit.

There are 3 Greek words in the New Testament that are used to describe the filling of the Holy Spirit. They include (1) *plērēs* (2) *pimplēmi* and (3) *plēroō*. They are different words but share a similar meaning—the idea of *domination or total control*.<sup>13</sup>

Of the 14 times in the New Testament where filling of the Spirit is mentioned, only one verse in the New Testament uses *plēroō* and it is Ephesians 5:18.

*Ephesians 5:18—“And do not get drunk with wine, for that is debauchery, but be filled with the Spirit,”*

17. What are believers told not to do in this verse?

18. List some things that a drunk person might say or do.

19. What is controlling the drunk person's speech and/or behavior?

20. Instead of being drunk with wine, what are believers told to do?

The verb Paul uses here, “*be filled*,” is a command. It is also in the present tense which indicates continuous action. In other words, Paul *commands* believers to *continually* be controlled by the Holy Spirit. Therefore, the simplest definition of being **filled** with the Spirit is being **controlled or led** by the Spirit.

21. Read Ephesians 5:19-21 and list the speech and/or behaviors that are characteristic of a person controlled by the Spirit.



## **The Holy Spirit—Week 2**

Just as alcohol controls the thoughts, words, and behavior of a drunk person, so the Holy Spirit is to continuously control the thoughts, words, and actions of a believer.

Practically speaking, how can a believer be filled with the Spirit? Four things are of utmost importance:

1. Submission. Jesus said to deny self, take up your cross daily and follow Him (Luke 9:23). In other words, be willing to do whatever God asks you to do; die daily to self.
2. Obedience to God's Word. Jesus said, "If you love me, you will keep my commandments (John 14:1).
3. Repentance. Regularly confess sin and turn from it to maintain fellowship with God.
4. Dependence. Jesus said, "I am the vine, you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing." (John 15:5).

22. Can you think of a time when you acted or responded in the Spirit instead of in the flesh? Describe it below.

23. Submission, obedience, repentance, and dependence, which one do you struggle with the most? Why?

24. Which do you struggle with the least? Why?

25. Is there any area of your life that you are unwilling to give up control to the Spirit?

We have learned in this section that being indwelt by the Spirit does not necessarily mean being filled with the Spirit. A Spirit-filled life is a Spirit-controlled life. Certain things such as submitting, obeying, repenting, and depending upon Christ, enhance the Spirit's control of our lives. Prayer is also an essential ingredient for living a life filled by God's Spirit.

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

*Romans 8:26–27—<sup>26</sup>Likewise the Spirit helps us in our weakness. For we do not know what to pray for as we ought, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groanings too deep for words. <sup>27</sup>And he who searches hearts knows what is the mind of the Spirit, because the Spirit intercedes for the saints according to the will of God.*

26. According to Romans 8:26-27, what does the Spirit do for us when we pray?

We may begin our prayers in our bedroom, but when we close our eyes and let the Holy Spirit lead, we will find ourselves before the throne of God Almighty.

There are also things we can do which hinder the Spirit's work in our life. These include resisting, grieving and quenching the influence of the Holy Spirit. To understand these better, look up the following verses, fill in the blanks, and answer the questions following each verse.

27. Look up Acts 7:51, fill in the blank provided below and answer the questions that follow.

*Acts 7:51—You stiff-necked people, uncircumcised in heart and ears, you always \_\_\_\_\_ the Holy Spirit. As your fathers did, so do you.*

What does it mean to resist the Spirit?

Is there any area in your life where you resist the Spirit? Pray and ask God to convict you of any way you might be doing this.

28. Look up Ephesians 4:30, fill in the blank provided below and answer the questions that follow.

*Ephesians 4:30—And do not \_\_\_\_\_ the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.*

What does it mean to grieve the Spirit?

Is there any area in your life where you grieve the Spirit? Pray and ask God to convict you of any way you might be doing this.

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

29. Look up 1 Thessalonians 5:19, fill in the blank provided below and answer the questions that follow.

1 Thessalonians 5:19—Do not \_\_\_\_\_ the Spirit.

What does it mean to quench the Spirit?

Is there any area in your life where you quench the Spirit? Pray and ask God to convict you of any way you might be doing this.

### DID YOU KNOW

Quench (Greek: *shénnumi*)

In 1 Thessalonians 5:19, quench is used "Figuratively to dampen, hinder, repress, as in preventing the Holy Spirit from exerting His full influence."<sup>14</sup>

## PRODUCE SPIRITUAL FRUIT

We have seen that when we are in Christ the Holy Spirit indwells all believers, thus giving us the power to live a Spirit-controlled life. How can we measure the degree to which we are allowing the Spirit to control us? The answer is found in Galatians 5:16-25.

30. Read Galatians 5:16-25 marking the words "Spirit" and "flesh" each differently.

*Galatians 5:16-25—<sup>16</sup>But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desires of the flesh. <sup>17</sup>For the desires of the flesh are against the Spirit, and the desires of the Spirit are against the flesh, for these are opposed to each other, to keep you from doing the things you want to do. <sup>18</sup>But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law.*

*<sup>19</sup>Now the works of the flesh are evident: sexual immorality, impurity, sensuality, <sup>20</sup>idolatry, sorcery, enmity, strife, jealousy, fits of anger, rivalries, dissensions, divisions, <sup>21</sup>envy, drunkenness, orgies, and things like these. I warn you, as I warned you before, that those who do such things will not inherit the kingdom of God.*

*<sup>22</sup>But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, <sup>23</sup>gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law. <sup>24</sup>And those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires. <sup>25</sup>If we live by the Spirit, let us also keep in step with the Spirit.*

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

31. Referencing back to Galatians 5:16-25, fill in the following blanks:

Verses 16-19 contrast the desires of the \_\_\_\_\_ with the desires of the \_\_\_\_\_.

Verse 19: Now the \_\_\_\_\_ of the flesh are evident . . .

32. Go back and underline the works of the flesh in Galatians 5:19-21 then fill in the following line:

Verse 22: But the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Spirit is love . . .

Read through the following definitions of the fruit of the Spirit and evaluate the growth, or lack thereof, you see in each area of your life. Pray for the Spirit's enabling to produce sweet fruit where you may be producing the bitter fruit of the flesh.

**Love (*agápē*)** The love of God; love which is totally unselfish; love which gives even when it isn't returned.

**Joy (*chará*)** An inward gladness which is not dependent on circumstances.

**Peace (*eirēnē*)** Tranquility; not just absence of strife, but an inner serenity.

**Patience/longsuffering (*makrothumía*)**

Long-tempered, patience in regard to antagonistic people. It is often associated with mercy.

**Kindness (*chrēstótēs*)** Gracious kindness. A goodness which expresses itself in deeds.

**Goodness (*agathōsunē*)** God's generosity. A goodness which may have to rebuke. That which is morally honorable.

**Faithfulness (*pístis*)** Firm persuasion; trustworthiness; credibility; loyalty.

**Gentleness/meekness (*praütēs*)** Humility; submission to the will of God.

**Self-control (*egkráteia*)** Strength; controlling the power of the will; abstaining from evil.

The fruit of the Spirit is just that--fruit--the visible product of the Spirit's invisible work in our life. It is nothing we strive for in itself, but that does not mean we have no part in its production. A tree does not work hard at producing fruit, but it does need good soil, fertilizer, sun, and water to produce an abundant harvest of sweet fruit.

### DID YOU KNOW

Fruit (Greek: *karpós*)

Refers to "... the visible expression of power working inwardly and invisibly, the character of the 'fruit' being evidence of the character of the power producing it."<sup>15</sup>

## The Holy Spirit—Week 2

Matthew 7:18 tells us that you can recognize a healthy tree by its fruit: “A *healthy tree cannot bear bad fruit, nor can a diseased tree bear good fruit.*” What is inside of us will eventually bring forth fruit for all to see—whether bitter or sweet.

33. From what you have just read about the Spirit's work and other spiritual disciplines you know are important, what would enable you to produce a more abundant harvest of spiritual fruit in your life?

When we are in Christ, we still sin, but the more we are controlled by the Spirit, and the more we spend time in the Word and in prayer, the more we will see steady growth in our production of good fruit. Remember, fruit takes time and nourishment to reach maturity.

*Psalm 1:1-3*

*<sup>1</sup>Blessed is the man*

*who walks not in the counsel of the wicked,*

*Nor stands in the way of sinners,*

*nor sits in the seat of scoffers;*

*<sup>2</sup>but his delight is in the law of the LORD,*

*and on his law he meditates day and night.*

*<sup>3</sup>He is like a tree planted by streams of water*

*that yields its fruit in its season,*

*And its leaf does not wither.*

*In all that he does, he prospers.*

### GIVE SPIRITUAL GIFTS

The Holy Spirit gives spiritual gifts to believers. Before we dive into our study on the purpose and types of spiritual gifts of the Holy Spirit let's look at the difference between natural and spiritual gifts.

*Natural* gifts or talents are aspects of a person that are inherited from birth such as a good singing voice or exceptional athletic abilities. Someone may inherit an aptitude for mathematics from their father or the ability to be an excellent dancer from their mother.

*Spiritual* gifts are given by the Holy Spirit at the moment a person is born again.

## ***The Holy Spirit-Week 2***

### *PURPOSE*

Spiritual gifts are given by the Holy Spirit with a particular purpose. The Holy Spirit does not gift believers for the benefit or glory of the person who has the gift. God tells us what this purpose is in several places in Scripture.

34. According to each of the following verses, why is every believer given at least one spiritual gift?

Ephesians 4:11-12

1 Peter 4:10

35. Read Romans 12:4-8. What should we do with the gifts we are given by God?

### *TYPES OF SPIRITUAL GIFTS*

Just like there are lots of different personalities and natural abilities among believers, there are many different kinds of spiritual gifts.

36. According to 1 Corinthians 12:11 who decides which gifts a believer gets?

37. Carefully read the following passages which contain lists of spiritual gifts and note what spiritual gifts you see in the passage:.

1 Corinthians 12:8-10

1 Corinthians 12:28-30

Romans 12:6-8

## The Holy Spirit-Week 2

38. To understand the lists of spiritual gifts that you just made, use a dictionary if needed and match the following gifts with their correct definitions (you can check your answers on the following page) :

Evangelist	Mercy
Exhorting	Prophecy / preaching
Faith	Shepherd / teacher
Giving	Spiritual discernment
Helping/serving	Teaching
Leading/administrating	

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to joyfully and generously give money or valuables to others to the glory of God.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to care for fellow believers through shepherding, caring for, encouraging, and protecting them.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to explain, encourage and apply the gospel to those who are not saved.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to intuitively empathize with someone in need and assist in meeting their needs.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to read, understand and explain Scripture in a simple manner.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to trust God in one's life even when the outcomes of a situation seem bleak or uncertain.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to guide and steer fellow believers to God and accomplishing His will.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to recognize when there is an error in doctrine or a false teacher or teaching.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to read, understand and proclaim the Bible.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to encourage others towards godliness and holiness.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The ability to intuitively recognize the needs of others in the church and fill in to meet their needs in various ways that are often not seen or recognized by anyone else.

## **The Holy Spirit—Week 2**

39. Can you identify one or more of your spiritual gifts from the list on the previous pages? If so, what is it (are they)?

40. Are you actively using your gift/gifts to serve others at this time? How so? If not, how can you begin to use your gifts to serve the church and honor God with the gifts He's given you?

If you cannot identify which spiritual gift/gifts you have been given it may be helpful to ask a close fellow believer if they see any specific gifts in you. It also may be helpful to begin serving in your church and notice which areas of service feel natural to you and require the least effort with the greatest success or fruit.

The Holy Spirit has given at least one spiritual gift to each believer. It is to be used to serve and build up the body of Christ.

## **Conclusion**

The Holy Spirit is not a force or a power. He is God and one of the three persons of the Trinity. If you have heard and believed that Jesus Christ is Lord you were immediately sealed with the Holy Spirit who promises to lead, guide, convict and be with you forever. As we yield our lives to the Spirit's control, we will use our spiritual gifts to build up the church, glorify God and make much of Christ.

*(Answers to question 38: 1.Giving 2.Shepherd 3.Evangelist 4.Mercy 5.Teaching 6.Faith 7.Leading 8.Spiritual Discernment 9.Prophecy 10.Exhorting 11.Helping/serving)*



# Hymn for Meditation

## **“Spirit of God, Descend Upon My Heart”**

George Croly (1854)

Spirit of God, descend upon my heart;  
Wean it from earth, through all its pulses move;  
Stoop to my weakness, mighty as Thou art,  
And make me love Thee as I ought to love.

Hast Thou not bid us love Thee, God and King?  
All, all Thine own, soul, heart and strength and mind;  
I see Thy cross—there teach my heart to cling:  
O let me seek Thee, and O let me find.

Teach me to feel that Thou art always nigh;  
Teach me the struggles of the soul to bear,  
To check the rising doubt, the rebel sigh;  
Teach me the patience of unanswered prayer.

Teach me to love Thee as Thine angels love,  
One holy passion filling all my frame;  
The baptism of the heaven descended Dove,  
My heart an altar; and Thy love the flame.

# Appendix

## **Endnotes**

## **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 1

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 2

REFLECTIONS

# Endnotes

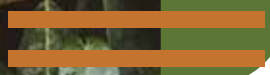
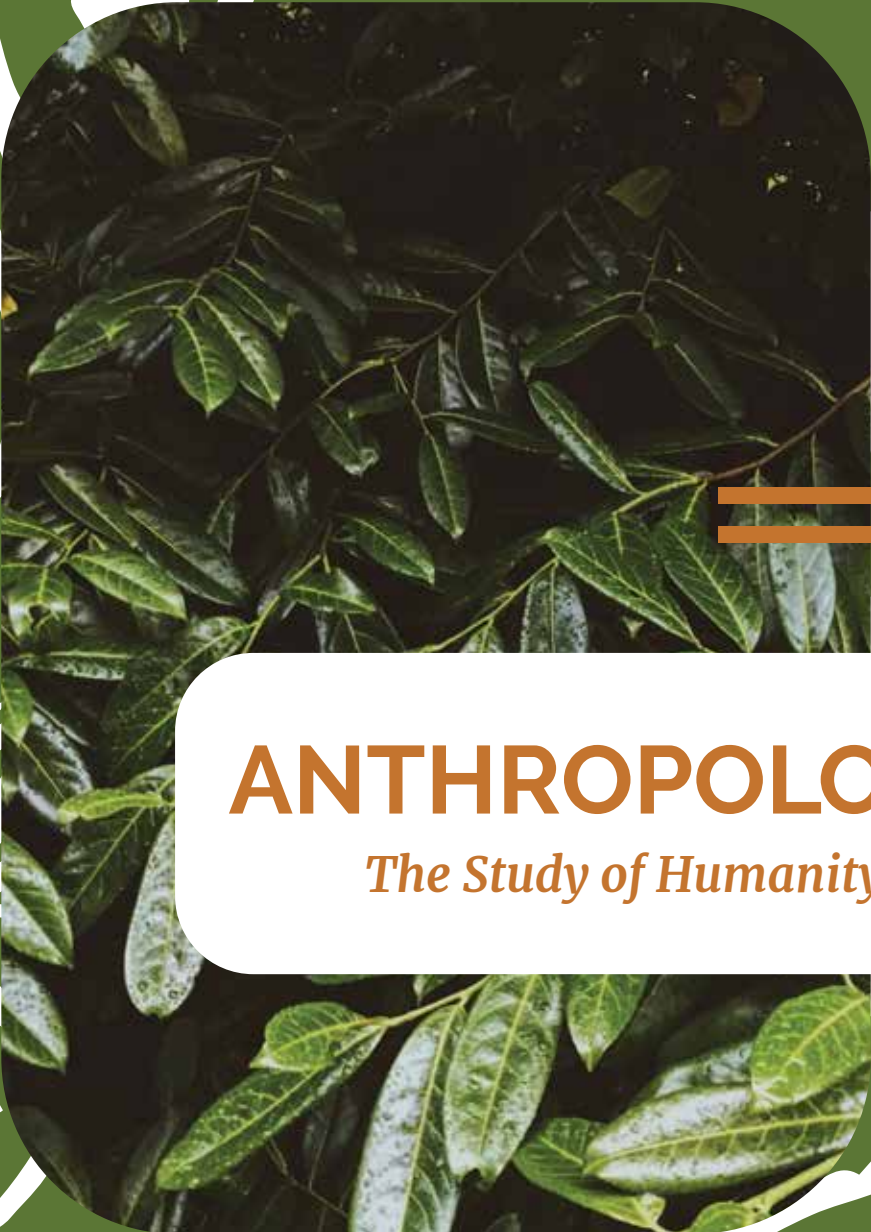
1. Stephen McCaskell, *Through the Eyes of Spurgeon—Official Documentary*. YouTube, March 30, 2015, film, 1:57:41.
2. Clayton Kraby, Website accessed October 30, 2021.  
<https://reasonabletheology.org/ch-spurgeon-on-the-work-of-the-holy-spirit/>
3. "Ancient-Symbols," accessed July 17, 2021,  
[https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield\\_of\\_trinity.html](https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield_of_trinity.html).
4. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 345.
5. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 334-335.
6. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 367.
7. John MacArthur, *The MacArthur Bible Commentary for e-Sword*. (Thomas Nelson), John 14:16, e-Sword edition.
8. James I. Packer, "The Work of the Holy Spirit in Conviction and Conversion," Lausanne Movement, Accessed November 8, 2021,  
<https://lausanne.org/content/the-work-of-the-holy-spirit-in-conviction-and-conversion>.
9. Spiros Zodhiates, Warren Baker, and Eugene Carpenter, *Complete Word Study Dictionary: Old Testament and New Testament for e-Sword*. (Chattanooga, TN: AMG Publishers), G3824 and G342, e-Sword edition.
10. Packer, "Work of the Holy Spirit."
11. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 358.
12. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 359.
13. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 369.
14. Zodhiates, "Word Study Dictionary," G4570.
15. W. E. Vine, Merrill F. Unger, and William White, Jr., *Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of Old and New Testament Words* (New York: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1985), 256.

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week two*



*reflections*



# ANTHROPOLOGY

*The Study of Humanity*





# Humanity

## Introduction

Have you ever heard of a man named Dr. Karl Brandt? Probably not. He was Adolf Hitler's attending physician and one of the leaders of a secret operation to put to death disabled children during World War II. The goal was to eliminate "life unworthy of life;" special needs children the Nazi socialist party believed to be both a genetic and financial burden on German society. In August of 1939, as part of this operation, a decree was issued requiring all physicians, nurses, and midwives to report any newborn baby or child under the age of 3 who showed signs of severe mental or physical disability. In October that same year, public health authorities began to encourage parents of children with disabilities to admit their young children to designated pediatric clinics throughout Germany and Austria. There, specially recruited medical staff murdered these children either by lethal overdoses of medication or by starvation.<sup>1</sup>

Fast forward to May of 1940. German troops have now invaded the tiny country of Holland and the killing of innocent people has been expanded to include those of Jewish descent. Have you ever heard of Casper ten Boom? We hope so! He owned a watch shop in Amsterdam, Holland. When a local pastor declined to hide a Jewish baby for fear of being caught and losing his life, Casper responded in this way, as told by his daughter, Corrie ten Boom.

"Father held the baby close, his white beard brushing its cheek, looking into the little face with eyes as blue and innocent as the baby's own. At last he looked up at the pastor. 'You say we could lose our lives for this child. I would consider that the greatest honor that could come to my family.'"<sup>2</sup>

Why was the German physician, Dr. Karl Brandt, so willing to end the life of children and Casper ten Boom, the Dutch watchmaker, so willing to give his life to save a child? Although we cannot answer this question regarding Dr. Brandt, we can answer it for Casper ten Boom. Casper knew the LORD and knew His Word. He understood that every human being is made in the image of God. This is what gives every person dignity and value no matter their race, religion, physical or mental condition or anything else.



*So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.*

*Genesis 1:27*

# Man and Woman: Created in the Image of God

In this section, we will study the creation of humanity by God in His image. We will then examine in more detail the creation of man and woman, the uniqueness of being made male or female and the sacredness of marriage.

## Creation of Mankind

We will begin by looking at God's creation of the world and everything in it.

1. Write out Genesis 1:1, the very first verse of the Bible in the space below.

The fact that God created everything is reiterated in the New Testament by the Apostle Paul in his letter to the Colossians. Paul states it this way (here referencing Jesus Christ, God the Son, as active alongside the Father in creation):

*Colossians 1:16—For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities – all things were created through him and for him.*

2. Read Genesis 1 through 2:3. Write down the differences you see in the way man was created in contrast to all else in creation.

3. What did God say about all that He had created in Genesis 1:31?

4. What did God do on the seventh day according to Genesis 2:2-3?

### DID YOU KNOW

The Hebrew word *yom* is translated "day" in our English Bible. Whenever *yom* is used with a numerical adjective (for example, first day, second day, etc.) it always refers to a literal twenty-four-hour period of time.<sup>3</sup>

Moses affirmed that God created everything in 6 twenty-four-hour days when he gave the people instructions regarding their work week:

*Exodus 20:9-11—<sup>9</sup>Six days you shall labor, and do all your work, <sup>10</sup>but the seventh day is a Sabbath to the LORD your God. On it you shall not do any work, ...<sup>11</sup> For in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day...*

## Humanity

As we continue to focus on the pinnacle of God's creation, man, it is important to remember that the Hebrew word 'adam' is translated 'man' in the Bible. 'Man' can refer to mankind in general, meaning both male *and* female, or it can mean a male distinct from a female. The context will let you know.

5. Read Genesis 1:26-27 printed below. Reread it and underline the word *image* in these verses.

*Genesis 1:26-27—<sup>26</sup>Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over the livestock and over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth."*

*<sup>27</sup>So God created man in his own image,*

*In the image of God he created him;*

*male and female he created them.*

6. The Hebrew term for "image" (*tselem*) means resemblance, a copy, a representative figure. According to Genesis 1:26-27, in whose image were both male *and* female created?

Pause for a moment and think about the significance of this:

- Man was created in God's likeness. As His image bearers, male and female were to represent God on the earth. Nothing else God created had this unique relationship with Him or this profound purpose.
- God created both male and female so that the characteristics of the Godhead were fully and completely put on display.
- The image of God is found within every human being.

## Image Bearers of God

We turn now to the question of what it means to be image bearers of God.

Following are seven characteristics that explain what it means to be made in the image of God. This list is not exhaustive since that would require discussion of every aspect of God that is reflected in man, a list that is beyond the scope of this study. This list touches on seven key points regarding man being the image bearer of God.

*Intellect* – man has a mind; he can reason and think logically. He is aware of himself, others, and his surroundings. He can communicate through language and writing.

*Emotions* – man can feel a wide range of emotions such as joy, sorrow, anger, and regret. He can express emotion through both laughter and tears.

## Humanity

*Will* – man can exert his will (volition). He can select from various choices. He can make moral judgments that differentiate right from wrong.

*Relationships* – man can relate to God and other people; he is a relational being.

*Creativity* – man can imagine, invent, and build. He can be artistic and enjoy beauty.

*Dominion* – man was given authority and the ability to rule over God's creation.

*Spirit* – man is a complex unity of soul/spirit and body. The man's spirit is eternal – it has a beginning, but, like God, has no end.<sup>4</sup>

***BEING MADE IN THE IMAGE OF GOD IS A MAGNIFICENT HONOR AND PRIVILEGE.***

***IT IS WHAT GIVES EVERY HUMAN BEING DIGNITY AND VALUE.***

7. Read Isaiah 43:6-7. For what *purpose* does God say He created “sons” and “daughters”?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
8. In God's wisdom, how does man and woman created in His image accomplish this purpose?

Unfortunately, sin has badly marred the image of God in humanity.

9. What are some ways our society determines the worth and value of a human being?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
10. From whom or from what do you get your sense of value and worth? (Be honest!)

If that person, job, possession, etc., were taken away, would your sense of value and worth remain intact?

## Humanity

11. How can knowing that you are an image bearer of God, created to display His glory, change the way you go about your daily life?
12. Do you struggle with difficult people in your life? How can knowing that they bear God's image affect your attitude and interactions with them?

## The Man

Genesis 1 gives a high level description of God creating man and woman in His image. A more detailed account of the creation of man and woman is given in Genesis 2. In this detailed account, it becomes clear that they were created at distinct times and in distinct ways. We look now to this account in Genesis 2 for the details of the creation of man as well as God's care, work, and command for the man he had created. Genesis 2 also describes the need of the man which God met through the creation of woman.

### Creation of Man

13. Read Genesis 2:5-9, then fill in the blanks below from verse 7.

*Genesis 2:7—Then the LORD God \_\_\_\_\_ the man of \_\_\_\_\_ from the  
ground and \_\_\_\_\_ into his nostrils the breath of \_\_\_\_\_ and the man  
became a \_\_\_\_\_.*

Picture this verse in your mind as you read it again. Take a moment to ponder the intimacy and intentionality involved in the creation of the man by his Creator.

## Care of the Man

God did not just create the man and leave him to fend for himself on a newly created earth. God intentionally placed the man and cared for him.

14. Read Genesis 2:5-9 again. According to Genesis 2:8, where did God put the man after He formed him?

15. According to verse 9, what was man given to eat and what words are used to describe the food? See also Genesis 1:29-30.

### DID YOU KNOW

The Hebrew word for "garden" is *gan* and indicates an enclosed space protected by a wall or hedge, a place of safety.

This garden was in Eden, a word meaning "delight" or "pleasure."

16. Review these verses (Genesis 2:5-9). What do they demonstrate about God and His care for man?

## Work of the Man

God's Word gives us further understanding of what the life of man looked like before sin entered into the world. Read Genesis 2:15-25.

17. What was the man to do in the garden, according to verse 15?

18. Do a word study on OR look up the definitions of *work* and *keep*:

Work—

Keep—

### DID YOU KNOW

The Hebrew word for work (*abad*) means to till the ground or labor. It implies serving someone other than oneself.

When the focus of the labor is the Lord, it implies worship.

The man was also told to "keep" or guard the beautiful garden where God had placed him. Here we see the God-given roles of the man as *provider* and *protector*.

## Humanity

We turn now to 2 Thessalonians 3:6-12. While this warning is addressed by Paul to both men and women within the church, we will focus here on the implications for men as a further demonstration of God's command to men to work.

19. Cross-reference 2 Thessalonians 3:6-12 and answer the following questions:

What concern does Paul have about certain brothers, according to verses 6 and 11?

In verse 10, what was the command he gave as a consequence for these brothers?

What kind of example was Paul to these men?

What does Paul tell these men to DO in verse 12?

This section describes the God-given work of *man* in Genesis and the charge to men in Thessalonians to not be idle, but to work hard.

20. What are some ways women can instill a good work ethic in their sons, grandsons, nephews, or any other young men God has placed in their lives?

21. How can women encourage the young men God has placed in their lives to be "protectors"?

22. Why is it important for single women, to look for the qualities of provider and protector before entering a serious relationship with a man?

## Need of the Man

In Genesis 1:31 God stated that everything He had made was very good. Now, moving on through the detailed account in Genesis 2, in verse 18, we read that man being by himself (alone) is not good.. Note that it doesn't say man was *lonely*; he would have enjoyed fellowship with God and the companionship of the animals, however there was no counterpart suitable for him.

In Genesis 2:19-20, God had man name all the animals. By naming the animals, man was applying his God-given authority to rule over them. It also would have made him painfully aware that he lacked a suitable counterpart.

23. Write out Genesis 2:18 below and underline the word 'helper':

The Hebrew word for "helper" is *èzer*.

24. Cross-reference the following verses that use this exact same Hebrew word. Write the verses out below and underline 'help':

Psalm 33:20—

Psalm 70:5—

25. Who is the help/helper in these verses?

How does knowing this elevate the woman in her role as a helper?

26. Briefly summarize the life of the man up to this point.



# The Woman

Woman was created equal with man as an image bearer of God, but her creation was distinct from the man. God's presentation of her to the man and the man's response to her make clear that her God-given role is different than the man's.

## Creation of Woman

In Genesis 2:21-22 we read how God created the woman.

27. Circle the word "rib(s)" in the verses below.

*Genesis 2:21-22—<sup>21</sup>So the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, and while he slept took one of his ribs and closed up its place with flesh. <sup>22</sup>And the rib that the LORD God had taken from the man he made into a woman and brought her to the man.*

The Hebrew term for "rib" (*tse'la'*) can mean "side" (of a person). So, we could say that woman was made from man's side or of the same "stuff."

Do you see the equality in the relationship? Woman was also intricately fashioned by God and bears the image of God, just like the man.

## Presentation of the Woman

Similar to God putting the man in the garden after creating him, God is intentional with the woman He has just created.

28. According to Genesis 2:22, where did God take the woman after making her?

The phrase describing the moment as God '**brought her to the man**' is a semi-formal expression that is used elsewhere in Scripture to describe the action of a father when bringing his daughter in marriage to the bridegroom (Gen. 29:23)<sup>5</sup>

So, from the very beginning, God ordained marriage to be between one *man* and one *woman*.

## Man's Response to the Woman

The account of the creation of the woman continues in Genesis 2 with the response of the man to God presenting her to him.

29. Read Genesis 2:23 given below then circle the words "Woman" and "Man".

*Genesis 2:23—Then the man said,*

*"This at last is bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh; she shall be called Woman because she was taken out of Man."*

In this verse the man's statement clearly demonstrates that he understands the woman's intrinsic equality with him - "*bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh.*" However, in naming her Woman (*ishsha*) because she was taken out of Man (*ish*), he is also making it clear that she is different from him. This is because *ishsha* comes from a Hebrew root word meaning **soft, delicate, or tender**.<sup>6</sup>

In other words, the man is extolling her femininity in contrast to his masculinity!

# Masculinity and Femininity

Now that we have looked at the detailed account of the creation of man and woman, let's further explore this concept of men and women, masculinity and femininity, first by looking at how both together display the image of God and then at how their roles are distinct and complementary.

30. Read Luke 13:34 and answer the two questions that follow:

What word picture does Jesus use to describe His feelings for Jerusalem's "children"?

Is this a masculine or feminine word picture?

31. Read Isaiah 42:13 and then answer the questions which follow:

What word picture does Isaiah use to describe God?

Is this a masculine or feminine word picture?

32. How do these two passages reiterate the fact that God created both male and female to fully display the Godhead?

We often talk about the 'roles' of men and women and how they differ. One definition given by Merriam-webster of the term 'role' is 'the function or part performed especially in a particular operation or process.' For example, the parents played a significant *role* in their child's education.

Here, in the Genesis account, the man and woman were given a task to accomplish together but their roles—their individual parts in the task—would look different because of the inherent differences in them as a man and a woman.

33. Read through God's charge to the man and the woman in Genesis 1:28. List the things God commanded the man and the woman to do *together*.

## DID YOU KNOW

Besides the obvious anatomical difference between men and women there are also physiological and cognitive differences. Men have more muscle mass than women, based on body weight. In contrast, women are more efficient at storing fat in preparation for pregnancy and lactation. Women generally have better communicative abilities, are more perceptive and perform better at tasks using fine motor skills. In general, men have better spatial and mathematical abilities.<sup>7</sup>

## Humanity

34. Thinking back on how the man and the woman were created and on their physical differences, how do the roles of the man and the woman *differ* to accomplish the tasks God commanded them to do? (In other words, how will their femininity and masculinity impact their participation in accomplishing the tasks?)

## Marriage

God created man, He created woman, and He ordained the marriage of the man to the woman. God created marriage and therefore He alone has the right to define it. This first marriage in Genesis demonstrates that God designed marriage to be between one man and one woman. Genesis 2:24 picks up with the historical account of the first marriage immediately after God presented the woman to the man.

Starting with this foundation, we will now look further at the oneness of marriage.

*Genesis 2:24-25— <sup>24</sup>Therefore a man shall leave his father and his mother and hold fast to his wife, and they shall become one flesh. <sup>25</sup>And the man and his wife were both naked and were not ashamed.*

35. According to Genesis 2:24-25 printed above, who was the man to leave? (Notice the foreshadowing of *family* here).

To whom was the man to “hold fast”?

36. Therefore, after marrying, to whom is one's primary loyalty?

37. If you are married, is your spouse your primary human relationship? If not, why not?

If not, what practical steps can you take to prioritize your spouse in your day-to-day life?

## Humanity

38. Verse 24 states that the two shall become \_\_\_\_\_ flesh.

“One flesh” does not just mean the sexual union within a marriage. It goes beyond this to *the sharing of life together as one*.

### DID YOU KNOW

The Hebrew word translated “hold fast” is *dabaq*. It means to cling to, cleave to, stick to, join together. This word refers “*not* to the sexual union of the couple, but rather to an intentional and unbreakable commitment, with the *best* interest of the other party being both the motivation and the goal of the one making the commitment.”<sup>8</sup>

There is one final truth to understand before leaving the subject of marriage and that is the headship of the man.

First, let’s look at the “chain of command” in relationships that Paul taught the Corinthians while writing to clear up confusion about head coverings, a particular symbol of authority in their culture.

39. Read 1 Corinthians 11:3, fill in the blanks and then answer the questions below.

GOD is the head of \_\_\_\_\_.

CHRIST is the head of every \_\_\_\_\_.

The HUSBAND is the head of his \_\_\_\_\_.

What do you learn from this verse about leadership and authority in a marriage—including who holds the ultimate authority?

Paul’s letter to the Ephesians further describes the responsibilities in marriage. In Ephesians, Paul is describing to the believers in Ephesus Jesus’ sacrificial love for his bride, the Church. Paul continues by saying that the union of a man and woman in marriage is to reflect this beautiful relationship.

40. Read Ephesians 5:33 below and answer the questions.

*Ephesians 5:33—However, let each one of you love his wife as himself, and let the wife see that she respects her husband*

What is Paul’s command to the husbands in the church?

## Humanity

41. All throughout the New Testament believers are exhorted to love others (John 13:34, 1 John 4:7), even our enemies (Matthew 5:43-46) but what is Paul's distinct command to wives in Ephesians 5:33?

Give examples of ways a wife may disrespect her husband.

List some practical ways a wife can demonstrate respect for her husband.

If you are not married, how can you demonstrate respect for the men God has placed in your life? (For example, father, brother, pastor, boss, etc.)

## Conclusion

So there you have it, the beginning of God's grand and glorious story! God created the universe in six twenty-four-hour days and rested on the seventh. Everything He made was *very good*. The earth teemed with living creatures in the seas and on the land. The stars twinkled in the dark night sky. There was beauty, color, and variety everywhere. God's crowning achievement was the man and the woman, made in His image, and given authority to care for everything He made. There was harmony between the husband and his wife as they fulfilled their complementary God-given roles, a foreshadowing of the covenant union between Christ and his bride. They fellowshiped with God in the garden and were naked and unashamed. Take a moment to savor a perfect world without sin!

42. Now list some ways our society has distorted God's perfect design for each of the following:

The roles of men and women—

Marriage—

## Humanity

Sex—

The sanctity of life—

Gender—

Sadly, sin has damaged God's beautiful design for marriage, sex, sanctity of life and gender. Perhaps you, or someone you know, has believed and acted upon the lies put forth in our society about these issues. Is there any hope? Yes, with God, there is always hope! Read the truth found in God's Word from a letter Paul wrote to the church in Corinth.

*1 Corinthians 6:9-11—<sup>9</sup>Or do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: neither the sexually immoral, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor men who practice homosexuality, <sup>10</sup>nor thieves, nor the greedy, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God. <sup>11</sup>And such were some of you. But you were washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.*

43. Fill in the blank from the first sentence in verse 11.

And such \_\_\_\_\_ some of you.

What does the tense of this verb tell you about Paul's view of the state of these people?

44. Some of the believers in Corinth were sexually immoral, were adulterers, were greedy, were drunkards, etc. BUT what happened in the name of the Lord Jesus and by the Spirit of God, according to the rest of verse 11? Fill in following blanks to answer that question!

You were \_\_\_\_\_, you were \_\_\_\_\_, you were

\_\_\_\_\_”

This can happen today to anyone who repents of sin and turns to the Lord Jesus for forgiveness. This is the hope we need to embrace for ourselves and share with others. Our past can be redeemed, and we can be new creations in Christ!

*2 Corinthians 5:17—Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away; behold, the new has come.*

**PRAISE GOD FOR THIS INDESCRIBABLE GIFT!**

# Hymn for Meditation

## **“Day by Day”**

Carolina Sandell Berg

Translated by Andrew L. Skoog

Day by day, and with each passing moment,  
Strength I find to meet my trials here,  
Trusting in my Father's wise bestowment,  
I've no cause for worry or for fear.  
He whose heart is kind beyond all measure  
Gives unto each day what He deems best—  
Lovingly, its part of pain and pleasure,  
Mingling toil with peace and rest.

Every day, the Lord Himself is near me  
With a special mercy for each hour;  
All my cares He fain would bear, and cheer me,  
He whose Name is Counselor and Pow'r;  
The protection of His child and treasure  
Is a charge that on Himself He laid;  
“As thy days, thy strength shall be in measure,”  
This the pledge to me He made.

Help me then in every tribulation  
So to trust thy promises, O Lord,  
That I lose not faith's sweet consolation  
Offered me within Thy holy Word.  
Help me, Lord, when toil and trouble meeting,  
E'er to take, as from a Father's hand,  
One by one, the days, the moments fleeting,  
Till I reach the promised land.

# Appendix

**Endnotes**

**Additional Resources**

**Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES

REFLECTIONS



# Endnotes

1. United States Holocaust Memorial Museum, "Euthanasia Program and Aktion T4," Holocaust Encyclopedia, accessed September 19, 2021, <https://encyclopedia.ushmm.org/content/en/article/euthanasia-program>.
2. Corrie ten Boom with Elizabeth and John Sherrill, *The Hiding Place*, (Grand Rapids, MI, Chosen Books, 2009), 115.
3. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth*, (Wheaton, IL, Crossway, 2017), 404.
4. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine", 413.
5. Michael Rydelnik and Michael Vanlaningham, General Editors, *The Moody Bible Commentary*, (Chicago, The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, 2014), 43.
6. Rydelnik and Vanlaningham, "Moody Commentary," 43-44.
7. Bruce Goldman, "Two minds: The Cognitive Differences Between Men and Women," Stanford Medicine, Spring, 2017, <https://stanmed.stanford.edu/2017spring/how-mens-and-womens-brains-are-different.html#>.
8. Rydelnik and Vanlaningham, "Moody Commentary," 44.

## Additional Resources

- [answersingenesis.org](http://answersingenesis.org) Answers in Genesis offers a wealth of information on creation.
- Elliot, Elisabeth. *Let Me Be a Woman*. Carol Stream, Illinois: Tyndale House, 1976.
- Kassian, Mary A. and Nancy Leigh DeMoss. *True Woman 101 Divine Design*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2012.
- Piper, John and Wayne Grudem. *Recovering Biblical Manhood and Womanhood*. Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2006.
- Wolgemuth, Nancy DeMoss. *Adorned: Living Out the Beauty of the Gospel Together*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2017.

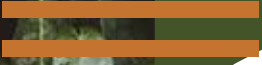
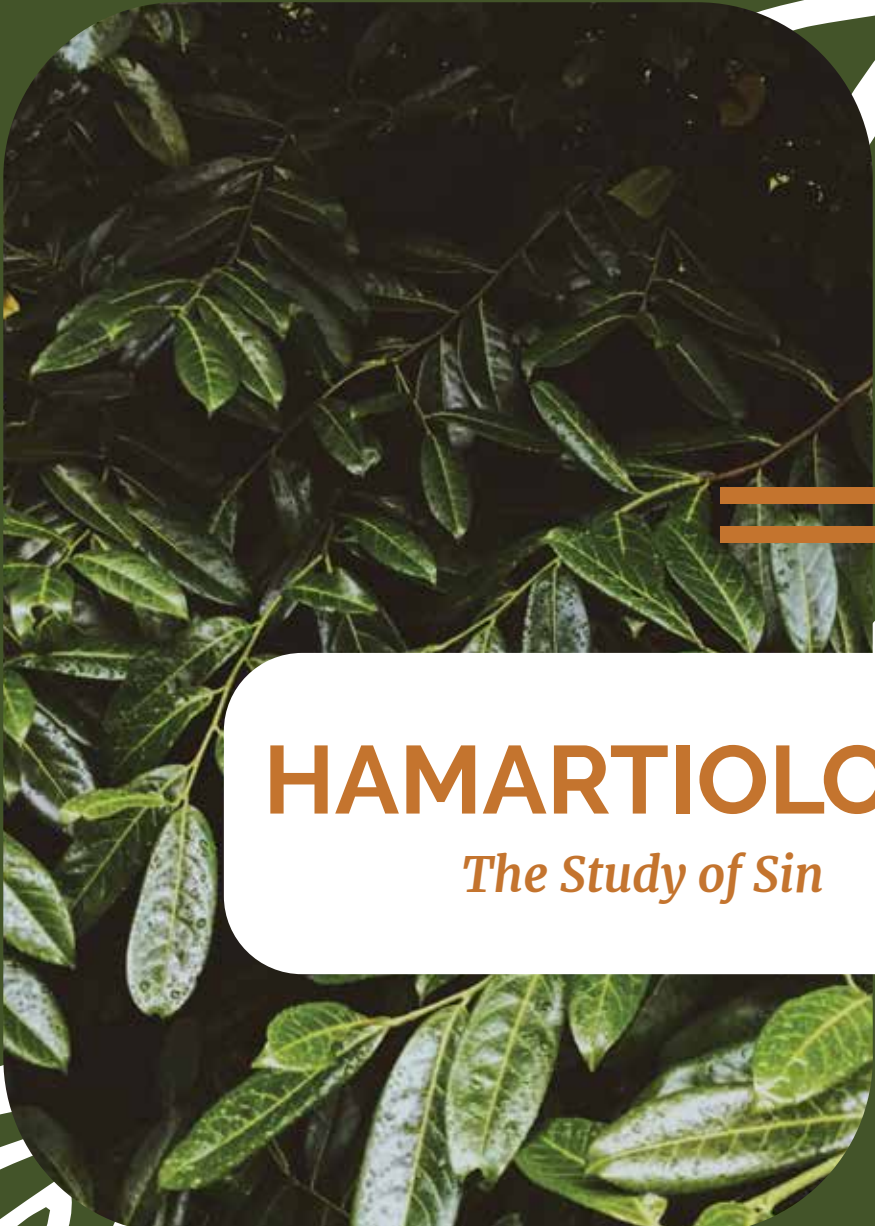
CLASS NOTES

Humanity





*reflections*



# HAMARTIOLOGY

*The Study of Sin*



# Sin - Week One

## Introduction

"Weak definitions of sin will produce weak doctrines concerning the Savior from sin. . . ."<sup>1</sup>

"Of the Bible's sixty-six books and 1,189 chapters, only two books and four chapters do not mention sin or sinners. Genesis 1-2 and Revelation 21-22 stand alone as unique chapters that rehearse the creation before sin and the new heaven and new earth, which will never be infected by sin. The rest of the Bible, from Genesis 3:1 to Revelation 20:15, abounds with the themes of human sin and the need for salvation."<sup>2</sup>

### WHAT IS SIN?

Since sin is so prevalent in the Bible, it behooves us to look carefully at what it is.

John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue give this concise summary:

**"The center of all sin is autonomy, which is the replacing of God with self."**

They expand on this definition of sin to include

**"any lack of conformity to God's will in attitude, thought, or action, whether committed actively or passively. . . Always closely associated with sin are its products—pride, selfishness, idolatry, and lack of peace (shalom)."**<sup>3</sup>

The Westminster Shorter Catechism summarizes sin simply as,

"any want of conformity unto, or transgression of the law of God."<sup>4</sup>



*For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.*

*Romans 3:23*

# Origin of Sin

In our look at Genesis 1 and 2 we saw that God created Adam and Eve in His own image. They were created without sin and lived in innocent, perfect fellowship with God. They were placed in a beautiful garden where Adam was given dominion over every living thing on the earth. God gave him only one restriction:

*Genesis 2:16b-17—You may surely eat of every tree of the garden, but of the tree of knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die.*

Unfortunately, Eve and then Adam, disobeyed and brought death and corruption upon the earth and all mankind. This 'fall' of mankind into sin is recorded for us in Genesis 3.

Understanding Genesis 3 is fundamental for understanding the origin of sin and the consequences of that sin. For this reason, the rest of this week's lesson will be an inductive study of Genesis 3. Please note that when asked to mark words always include pronouns & synonyms. Colors and symbols are just suggestions.

## TAKE ROOT

The word translated "sin" in our English Bibles is derived from several different words in the original languages. You can see from the following list that sin has many dimensions. The following definitions are summarized from *Biblical Doctrine* by John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue.<sup>5</sup>

### Old Testament Hebrew

<i>khata'</i> :	sinning, sinned, missing the mark
<i>pasha'</i> :	to rebel, to trespass or to betray
<i>'abar</i> :	to transgress, to pass over (i.e. violating a covenant)

### New Testament Greek

<i>harmartia</i> :	sin; The study of sin, <i>harmartiology</i> , is derived from this word.
<i>harmartanō</i> :	miss the mark, err, be mistaken, fall short
<i>adikia</i> :	unrighteousness, injustice
<i>planaō</i> :	wandering, straying
<i>anomia</i> :	lawlessness
<i>apeitheō</i> :	carries the sense of being disobedient and willfully obstinate toward God's will
<i>asebeia</i> :	ungodliness, wickedness, impiety
<i>agnoia</i> :	refers to ignorance or the absence of understanding
<i>parabasis</i> :	the breaking of or deviation from God's law



## Genesis 3:1-7—Temptation and Fall Into Sin

*Genesis 3:1-7—<sup>1</sup>Now the serpent was more crafty than any other beast of the field that the LORD God had made. He said to the woman, “Did God actually say, ‘You shall not eat of any tree in the garden?’”<sup>2</sup>And the woman said to the serpent, “We may eat of the fruit of the trees in the garden,<sup>3</sup>but God said, ‘You shall not eat of the fruit of the tree that is in the midst of the garden, neither shall you touch it, lest you die.”<sup>4</sup>But the serpent said to the woman “You will not surely die.<sup>5</sup>For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”<sup>6</sup>So when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was to be desired to make one wise, she took of its fruit and ate, and she also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate.<sup>7</sup>Then the eyes of both were opened, and they knew that they were naked. And they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves loincloths.*

### GOD

1. Read Genesis 3:1-7, provided above, and mark God/LORD God with a purple triangle.

### THE SERPENT

2. Read through Genesis 3:1-7 again, this time marking the word serpent with a red snake.
3. Based on these verses, how would you describe the serpent's character?
4. What do John 8:44 and Revelation 20:2 show you about the serpent?

God's command to Adam was recorded for us in Genesis 2:16-17.

*Genesis 2:16-17—<sup>16</sup>And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, “You may surely eat of every tree of the garden,<sup>17</sup>but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day you eat of it you shall surely die.”*

## Sin-Week 1

5. We must be aware of the devil's tactics so that we do not fall prey to them. Look back through these verses and summarize the serpent's tactics.

Verse 1: (Hint— Compare the devil's statement here with God's command to Adam recorded in Genesis 2:16-17)

Verse 4:

Verse 5: (Hint—Notice what the serpent is appealing to)

## THE WOMAN—EVE

The woman (whose name is given to us as Eve in Genesis 3:20) is the first one tempted by the serpent and the first one to sin. Let's look at the progression of the woman's actions (or lack of them) that led up to her sin.

6. Read through Genesis 3:1-7 on page 201 again. This time underline "woman" with a squiggly pink line.
7. In verses 1 and 2 the serpent came and spoke to the woman, and she engaged in dialogue with him. Look up 1 Timothy 6:11, James 4:7 and 1 Peter 5:8, and write down how Eve should have responded—and how we should respond when faced with temptation.
8. Did the woman accurately represent what God had said about eating the fruit of the trees? Refer back to Genesis 2:16-17.

## Sin-Week 1

9. In verse 5 the serpent saw that the woman was still there listening and contemplating his words, so he tempted her further. He basically told the woman that God had lied to her and was withholding something desirable from her. Verse 6 shows us her response:

She \_\_\_\_\_ that the tree was good for \_\_\_\_\_ and was a \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_ . . .  
and was desired to make one \_\_\_\_\_.

10. What does 1 John 2:16-17 tell us about these kinds of desires?

The woman didn't flee from the serpent at the very beginning. She exaggerated God's command and made Him look harsh. She continued listening to the devil and contemplating further the possibility that God had not been truthful with her, but instead was withholding something desirable from her. She then makes the dreadful decision to disobey God and eat of the fruit from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, and not only that, but she also gave some to her husband.

11. According to Genesis 2:18 why had God created Eve?

What had she become to her husband instead?

12. What warning would you give to wives today based on this?

If you are a wife, is there anything in your life that you see needs to change in light of this?

## THE MAN—ADAM

Sadly, the man, Adam, also chose to sin against God.

13. Go back Genesis 3:1-7 again and double underline "husband" in blue and pronouns referring to both the man and the woman in both pink and blue.
14. Where was Adam when his wife was having this conversation with the serpent?
  
15. What do you think he should have done long before she ate of the forbidden fruit?
  
16. What did Adam do when Eve offered him the fruit?

## Genesis 3:7-19—Consequences of Sin

After Adam and Eve give in to temptation and sin against God, the consequences are immediate and devastating. When God confronts them in their sin, additional consequences come with the curses of God. But there is a bright spot in all of it, a promise from God even as the full weight of their sin is brought to light.

### GENESIS 3:7—PERSONAL CONSEQUENCE

*Genesis 3:7—Then the eyes of both were opened, and they knew that they were naked. And they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves loincloths.*

17. The first consequence of sin is given to us in Genesis 3:7, but to understand it we need to go back and consider the state of the man and the woman immediately after the woman was created. How are the man and the woman, Adam and Eve, described in Genesis 2:25?

How are they described at the end of Genesis 3:7, after they have sinned?

Contrasting these two descriptions, summarize the first consequence of sin for Adam and Eve on the line below:

CONSEQUENCE OF SIN: \_\_\_\_\_

## GENESIS 3:8-13—RELATIONAL CONSEQUENCE

*Genesis 3:8-13—<sup>8</sup>And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden. <sup>9</sup>But the LORD God called to man and said to him, “Where are you?” <sup>10</sup>And he said, “I heard the sound of you in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked, and I hid myself.” <sup>11</sup>He said, “Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten of the tree of which I commanded you not to eat?” <sup>12</sup>The man said, “The woman whom you gave to be with me, she gave me fruit of the tree, and I ate,” <sup>13</sup>Then the LORD God said to the woman, “What is this that you have done?” The woman said, “The serpent deceived me, and I ate.”*

18. Read Genesis 3:8-13 and continue marking God, serpent, woman (wife), and man (husband) as you did in the previous verses. Remember to mark the pronouns and synonyms for each.
19. What did the man and his wife do when they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
20. How did their relationship with the LORD God change when they sinned? Summarize this on the line below as a consequence of sin.

CONSEQUENCE OF SIN: \_\_\_\_\_

One more observation is worth making in this text as it is instructional for us in regard to the God-given roles of man and woman.

21. Whom did the LORD God first call to account for what had happened?

Can you think of ways this principle is carried on throughout Scripture?

## GENESIS 3:14-15—CONSEQUENCES FOR THE SERPENT

Genesis 3:14-15—

<sup>14</sup>The LORD God said to the serpent,

“Because you have done this, cursed are you above all livestock

and above all the beasts of the field;

on your belly you shall go,

and dust you shall eat

all the days of your life.

<sup>15</sup>I will put enmity between you and the woman,

and between your offspring and her offspring;

he shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise his heel.”

22. Continue reading Genesis 3:14-15 and marking God, serpent, and woman with their pronouns.

23. Based on these verses, summarize the consequences of sin for the serpent on the lines below.

CONSEQUENCES OF SIN FOR THE SERPENT:

Verse 14: (The physical serpent) \_\_\_\_\_

Verse 15: (The spiritual serpent) \_\_\_\_\_

### THE FIRST GOSPEL

*Protoevangelium*, “The First Gospel”

Genesis 3:15 is often called the *protoevangelium* since it is the first announcement of a future deliverer.

## Sin-Week 1

24. To clarify all the pronouns in Genesis 3:15, read carefully through this verse again, then fill in the following blanks with the word(s) **each pronoun (I, you, your, her, he) stands for**. For example, at the beginning of the verse, "I" is replaced by "The LORD God" as shown below.

The first two have been done for you.

Genesis 3:15—The LORD God will put enmity between the

serpent and the woman, and between \_\_\_\_\_ offspring and

\_\_\_\_\_ offspring; \_\_\_\_\_ shall bruise

\_\_\_\_\_ head,

and \_\_\_\_\_ shall bruise \_\_\_\_\_ heel.

This verse sets up the conflict between the kingdom of Satan and the kingdom of God and looks ahead to the time when Satan will strike at the offspring of the woman.

25. We have already seen that the serpent represented Satan. But who are Satan's offspring? To answer this question, see John 8 where Jesus is talking to religious Jews who considered themselves Abraham's children (i.e., children of the promise) According to John 8:44 who does Jesus tell them their father is and why?
26. It is interesting to note that we usually refer to the offspring, or seed, of a man, but Genesis 3:15 refers to the offspring of the woman. How does it confirm that Jesus is the offspring of the woman who would crush the serpent?

27. Think for a moment about the final victor of the fight between Satan and Jesus.

What events in Scripture can be connected to the promised bruising and crushing? (See also Revelation 20:7-10)

### BRUISE

Bruise (Hebrew: *šûp*)  
A verb meaning to crush, bruise, strike or snap at.

### DID YOU KNOW

"A recovered skeleton of at least one first-century crucifixion provides evidence that the Roman executioners placed the nails so that the victim could not tear free. The feet were nailed through the structure of the foot below the ankle in a place that could be identified as closely related to the heel—either nailing each foot to one side of the vertical beam or twisting the lower body sideways to nail both feet with one nail."<sup>6</sup>

## GENESIS 3:16—CONSEQUENCES FOR WOMAN AND MARRIAGE

*Genesis 3:16—To the woman he said, “I will surely multiply your pain in childbearing; in pain you shall bring forth children. Your desire shall be for your husband, and he shall rule over you.”*

28. Mark the words for God, woman, and man (husband) in Genesis 3:16 as you did in previous sections..

29. Reference Genesis 3:16 to fill in the blanks for the next two consequences:

CONSEQUENCE OF SIN FOR THE WOMAN:

She will bear children in \_\_\_\_\_ (both physical and spiritual).

CONSEQUENCE OF SIN FOR THE MAN AND THE WOMAN:

Her desire will be for her husband, and he will \_\_\_\_\_ over her.

In his Bible Commentary John MacArthur explains, “Just as the woman and her seed will engage in a war with the serpent, i.e., Satan and his seed (Gen. 3:15), because of sin and the curse, the man and the woman will face struggles in their own relationship. Sin has turned the harmonious system of God-ordained roles into distasteful struggles of self-will. Lifelong companions, husbands and wives, will need God’s help in getting along as a result. The woman’s desire will be to lord it over her husband, but the husband will rule by divine design (Eph. 5:22-25).”<sup>7</sup>

## GENESIS 3:17-19—CONSEQUENCES FOR GROUND AND MAN

*Genesis 3:17-19—<sup>17</sup>And to Adam he said, “Because you have listened to the voice of your wife and have eaten of the tree of which I commanded you, ‘You shall not eat of it,’ cursed is the ground because of you; in pain you shall eat of it all the days of your life <sup>18</sup>thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you; and you shall eat the plants of the field. <sup>19</sup>By the sweat of your face you shall eat bread, till you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken; for you are dust, and to dust you shall return.”*

30. Continue reading and marking the words (and synonyms and pronouns) for God, woman (wife), and man (Adam).



## Sin-Week 1

31. According to verse 17 what two sins did Adam commit?
32. Verse 17 gives the consequence of sin on the ground. Record it in the blanks below.

CONSEQUENCE OF SIN ON THE GROUND:

It will bring forth \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

33. Read Romans 8:20-21. From what does creation want to be set free?
34. How would the fact that the ground was cursed affect Adam and all mankind after him?  
Summarize this consequence to Adam on the line below.

CONSEQUENCE OF SIN ON ADAM: \_\_\_\_\_

### GENESIS 3:19—ULTIMATE CONSEQUENCE

35. The final consequence given in verse 19 was that Adam would return to \_\_\_\_\_. What does that mean? What had God said would happen if Adam ate the forbidden fruit?
36. Record the ultimate consequence of sin on Adam and the entire human race below:

**THE ULTIMATE CONSEQUENCE OF SIN ON ADAM AND THE ENTIRE HUMAN RACE:**

-----

In Genesis 2:17 God told Adam that on the day he ate of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil he would surely die.

37. Obviously Adam and Eve did not immediately die physically when they sinned, so in what way did they die on that day?
38. According to Romans 5:12 what was the result of Adam's sin for all humankind?

## Sin-Week 1

39. Physical death is not the end of our existence. Read Revelation 20:14-15. What is the ultimate, eternal terror for all those whose name is not written in the book of life? (Only those who have repented of their sins and trusted in Jesus alone for their salvation are found in the book of life.)

On the day they sinned Adam and Eve died spiritually. They were sent from the Garden of Eden and separated from the pure and unbroken fellowship they had enjoyed with God. Their bodies began to decay, and they began to die physically. Every person born after them has been born in sin and suffers from the consequences of it. But praise God, from the very beginning He provided a way for all to be freed from spiritual death and be made alive through the offspring of the woman--the Lord Jesus Christ.

*1 Corinthians 15:22—For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ shall all be made alive.*

### **Genesis 3:20-24—God's Covering for Sin**

*Genesis 3:20-24—<sup>20</sup>The man called his wife's name Eve, because she was the mother of all living. <sup>21</sup>And the LORD God made for Adam and for his wife garments of skins and clothed them. <sup>22</sup>Then the LORD God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of us in knowing good and evil. Now, lest he reach out his hand and take also of the tree of life and eat, and live forever--" <sup>23</sup>therefore the LORD God sent him out from the garden of Eden to work the ground from which he was taken. <sup>24</sup>He drove out the man, and at the east of the garden of Eden he placed the cherubim and a flaming sword that turned every way to guard the way to the tree of life.*

40. Continue reading and marking this passage as before. Also, shade "garments of skin" in red and "tree of life" in green.
41. The man and woman tried to cover their nakedness by sewing leaves together. What did God provide for them to be covered with and why is that significant? See Hebrews 9:22.
42. Whose blood was shed for the forgiveness and covering of our sins? See Hebrews 9:11-12.

## Sin-Week 1

Genesis 2:9 tells us that in the midst of the garden of Eden there were two trees, the tree of life and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

43. Why did God send Adam and Eve out from the garden of Eden? Was it just punishment for their sin or was it also an act of mercy? Explain your answer.

44. We see the tree of life mentioned again in the Book of Revelation. Read the following verses and record what you learn from them.

Revelation 2:7

Revelation 22:1-2, 14, 19

How gracious is our God! If He had allowed Adam and Eve to remain in the Garden of Eden and they had eaten of the tree of life they would have been destined to live forever in their sinful state, eternally separated from God. But, praise God, the tree of life is now in heaven where those who have been saved by God's grace may eat of it and live forever in His very presence.

***OUR JUST GOD MUST PUNISH SIN. OUR GRACIOUS GOD PROVIDED HIS OWN SON TO PAY THE PENALTY FOR OUR SIN THAT WE MAY LIVE FOREVER IN PERFECT FELLOWSHIP WITH HIM.***

***PRAISE HIS HOLY NAME!***

***FOR THE WAGES OF SIN IS DEATH,  
BUT THE FREE GIFT OF GOD IS ETERNAL LIFE IN CHRIST JESUS OUR LORD.***

***ROMANS 6:23***

## Sin-Week 1

# Sin-Week 2

Think back for a moment over the last two weeks of study. Mankind was created to glorify God and enjoy Him forever. Man and woman were living in perfect fellowship with God and with each other. Then man sinned against God and ruined that perfect fellowship. Sin created a chasm that separated sinful man and woman from their holy God. Mankind could not undo their sin. The separation between mankind and God is beyond the ability of man to overcome.\* Spiritual, physical and eternal death became a reality for mankind as the due penalty for their rebellion against God.

The next unit will cover the good news of God's gracious provision to reconcile sinful man to Himself, but first we must understand the depth of our desperate state.

## All of Mankind

It was Adam who sinned - so why do we talk about all of mankind being alienated from God because of sin? God's Word tells us that all of mankind was plunged into sin when their representative, Adam, sinned.

*Romans 5:12—Therefore, just as sin came into the world through one man, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men because all sinned*

1. 'One man' in these verses refers to Adam. What percent of mankind are sinners due to Adam's sin?

We don't become sinners when we sin, we sin because we are sinners. Every child is born with a sin nature—this is why toddlers don't have to be taught how to be selfish or throw a temper tantrum - they are born knowing how to sin! David captures this well in Psalm 51 which records David calling out to the Lord to be cleansed from his sin.

*Psalm 51:5 (NIV) - Surely I was sinful at birth, sinful from the time my mother conceived me.*

2. We are sinners just like David was. According to this verse, when did we become sinful?

\*Some falsely teach that man can bridge the gap, but Scripture teaches that no amount of 'good' works or human effort can atone for sin and reconcile man to God. See Sin—Week 2.

## All are Totally Depraved and Spiritually Dead

### DID YOU KNOW

*Depraved* means marked by corruption or evil; perverted.

All of mankind are born sinners, but how sinful are we really? Scripture tells us that no part of man was left unpolluted by sin. The corruption was total, full, and complete. "Every part of our being is affected by sin—our intellects, our emotions and desires, our hearts (the center of our desires and decision-making processes), our goals and motives, and even our physical bodies."<sup>8</sup> The term *totally depraved* is used to capture the completeness of our corruption by sin.

3. Look up the following verses and note what part of man is corrupted by sin:

Genesis 6:5

Jeremiah 17:9

Romans 7:18

Titus 1:15

People can still do *relatively* good things such as giving money to a charity, helping a neighbor, being kind and thoughtful. However, even these 'good works' are polluted by our sin and are as filthy rags compared to the holiness of God.

John MacArthur states:

"Just as smoke from a fire permeates everything in a room, the whole person is corrupted by sin. No part of man escapes."<sup>9</sup>

Romans 3 verses 10-20 gives us proper perspective on mankind's 'goodness' relative to God's holiness. God's holiness demands perfection.

*Romans 3:10-20*—<sup>10</sup>as it is written:

"None is righteous, no, not one;

<sup>11</sup> no one understands;

no one seeks for God.

<sup>12</sup> All have turned aside; together they have become worthless;

no one does good,

In God's common grace, people are held back from being as bad as they could be. John Owen says:

"Sin aims always at the utmost; every time it rises up to tempt or entice, might it have its own course, it would go out to the utmost sin in that kind. Every unclean thought or glance would be adultery if it could; every covetous desire would be oppression, every thought of unbelief would be atheism, might it grow to its head... it is like the grave that is never satisfied."<sup>10</sup>



## Sin-Week 2

Our spiritual alienation from God because of sin renders us spiritually dead. Though physical death was delayed when they sinned, Adam and Eve experienced spiritual death immediately. Along with sin, this spiritual deadness was passed along to all of mankind from Adam and Eve. To understand spiritual deadness more, let's look at the first six verses of Ephesians 2.

### DID YOU KNOW

*Spiritually dead* refers to the state of spiritual alienation from God<sup>11</sup>

*Ephesians 2:1-6* 'And you were dead in the trespasses and sins <sup>2</sup>in which you once walked, following the course of this world, following the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that is now at work in the sons of disobedience – <sup>3</sup>among whom we all once lived in the passions of our flesh, carrying out the desires of the body and the mind, and were by nature children of wrath, like the rest of mankind. <sup>4</sup>But God, being rich in mercy, because of the great love with which he loved us, <sup>5</sup>even when we were dead in our trespasses, made us alive together with Christ – by grace you have been saved –

Paul wrote the book of Ephesians as a letter to Christians living in Ephesus. It was not written to a subset of extra 'bad' people—the description found in verses 1-3 is for all people before God's saving work in their lives.

7. Mark the passage according to the following suggestions:

- Mark dead with an X above it
- Mark alive with a ! above it
- Mark God with a triangle and Christ with a cross
- Circle you, we, and us
- Put a box around But

8. These verses describe the life of every person in their 'natural' state, including you. Using these verses, complete following prompts:

You were...

dead in:

following:

living in:

carrying out:

by nature:



## Sin-Week 2

9. According to verse 3, the "passions of our flesh" involve carrying out the desires from what parts of man?

Look up Galatians 5:19-21 and Colossians 3:4-8. These are not exhaustive lists, but illustrative. How would you describe the life of one living in the 'passions of our flesh'?

10. Back to Ephesians 2, what did the person, dead in their trespasses and sins, do in order to seek God for salvation?

11. What important 2-word phrase does verse 4 start with and why is it significant?

12. What does God do in verses 4 through 5 and why does He do it?

Thinking further on spiritually alive and spiritually dead people, consider 1 Corinthians 2:14. In 1 Corinthians 2 Paul is contrasting the 'spiritual' person with the 'natural', spiritually dead person.

***1 Corinthians 2:14—The natural person does not accept the things of the Spirit of God, for they are folly to him, and he is not able to understand them because they are spiritually discerned.***

13. Using what you learned from Ephesians 2 about spiritual life and death, rewrite 1 Corinthians 2:14 in your own words.

We are not people who have just 'sinned' a little. We are dead in our sin, unable to do anything pleasing to God. We are saturated with sin through and through. We don't need Jesus Christ to give our 'goodness' a little boost, we need the Father to give us the Holy Spirit to make us alive with completely new life in Jesus Christ.

## All Physically Die and Go to Eternal Life or Eternal Death

Death is the ultimate consequence of sin, as we saw from Genesis 3:19 in week 1 of sin. Death is not a 'natural part' of the human experience. It may be common to the human experience, but it is not 'natural'. It was not a part of the earth when God looked at all that He had created and said it was good, very good! When Adam sinned, he also brought death into the world and death, like sin, has been a part of the human experience ever since.

### PHYSICAL DEATH

Physical death involves the separation of the body and the spirit. James 2:26 says, "*the body apart from the spirit is dead.*"

Though Adam and Eve did not physically die at the moment they sinned, the process of physical death did start. Genesis 3:19 makes this clear, "*By the sweat of your face you shall eat bread, till you return to the ground. For out of it you were taken; for you are dust, and to dust you shall return.*"

Every person will experience physical death\* but what follows depends entirely on their relationship with God when they die.

14. Ecclesiastes 12:6 gives several analogies for death then verse 7 explains what happens when mankind dies. Read Ecclesiastes 12:6-7 and then write Ecclesiastes 12:7 in your own words.

### TAKE ROOT

When we talk about death, it is helpful to remember that there are three different types of death that we could be speaking of. These are:

- Spiritual death (spiritually alienated from God)
- Physical death (separation of spirit and body)
- Eternal death (eternal separation from God's presence)

Everyone experiences the first two of these, spiritual and physical death. *Eternal death is only experienced by those who physically die while spiritually dead in sin.*

\* With the exception of those who are alive at the rapture (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18). The rapture will be covered in the last unit of the study on end times. The other exception is two men from the Old Testament—Enoch and Elijah.

## ETERNAL LIFE

Sometimes we describe *being saved* as being *in Christ* or as having *spiritual life* or *eternal life*. If this is our state when we die, then our spirit will go to be with God forever. Eventually we will have resurrected bodies and will live on a new earth in the presence of God. However, if we are still in our sin, spiritually dead, when we die, then we will have eternal death. Eternal death will be covered in more detail in a moment. For now, we will focus on what those who are *in Christ* can expect in physical death as they enter into eternal life.

When we, as children of God, understand what awaits us after physical death, our fear of death is broken. In fact, we can begin to contemplate it as the Apostle Paul did when he said, *"For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain. If I am to live in the flesh, that means fruitful labor for me. Yet which I shall choose I cannot tell. I am hard pressed between the two. My desire is to depart and be with Christ, for that is far better. But to remain in the flesh is more necessary on your account."* (Philippians 1:21-24)

Let's explore this concept a little bit further by looking at Hebrews chapter 2 verses 14-15.

*Hebrews 2:14-15* <sup>14</sup>Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, [Jesus] himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil, <sup>15</sup>and deliver all those who through fear of death were subject to lifelong slavery.

15. What is the condition of those who fear death?

16. Why is this a condition that Christians should *not* remain in?

Finally, consider why Paul says he looks forward to leaving his earthly body behind—even while remaining committed to serving God faithfully while here.

*2 Corinthians 5:1,5, 6-9*— <sup>1</sup> For we know that if the tent that is our earthly home is destroyed, we have a building from God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens... <sup>5</sup>He who has prepared us for this very thing is God, who has given us the Spirit as a guarantee.

<sup>6</sup> So we are always of good courage. We know that while we are at home in the body we are away from the Lord, <sup>7</sup> for we walk by faith, not by sight. <sup>8</sup> Yes, we are of good courage, and we would rather be away from the body and at home with the Lord. <sup>9</sup> So whether we are at home or away, we make it our aim to please him.

Christ became man, and died, to deliver [his own people] from those perplexities of soul, by letting them know that death is not only a conquered enemy, but a reconciled friend, not sent to hurt the soul, or separate it from the love of God, but to put an end to all their grievances and complaints, and to give them a passage to eternal life and blessedness; so that to them death is not now in the hand of Satan, but in the hand of Christ—not Satan's servant, but Christ's servant—has not hell following it, but heaven to all who are in Christ.<sup>12</sup>

- Matthew Henry  
on Hebrews 2:14-15

## Sin-Week 2

17. From verses 1, 6 and 8, compare our current state with our future, eternal state.

18. Do you fear death? If so, why?

If you have eternal life in Christ and are living in fear of death, what do you think could change this?

If you do not have eternal life; if you do not know Jesus Christ as your Lord and Savior, you can be saved today. Repent of your sin to God in prayer, ask God to remove your sin and give you the righteousness of Christ as you confess Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior of your life. If you have done this, talk to your small group leader or another friend in Christ. Let them encourage you and be encouraged by you!

## ETERNAL DEATH

Eternal death awaits those who physically die while being spiritually dead. 'Eternal death' then does not mean that the person ceases to exist, but rather that the person will be forever separated from the presence of God. They will experience everlasting punishment for the sins they committed against God in their life on earth.

2 Thessalonians 1:9 says that those who do not "*know God*" and those who do not "*obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus ... will suffer the punishment of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the lord and from the glory of his might*"

In Revelation 20, John is describing the final judgement of unredeemed mankind. This takes place just after the 1000 year reign of Jesus Christ, after the final defeat of Satan, events we will study in more detail in the unit on End Times. This judgement marks the beginning of eternal death for those who are not in Christ.

*Revelation 20:11-15* <sup>11</sup>Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it. From his presence earth and sky fled away, and no place was found for them. <sup>12</sup>And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Then another book was opened, which is the book of life. And the dead were judged by what was written in the books, according to what they had done. <sup>13</sup>And the sea gave up the dead who were in it, Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them, and they were judged, each one of them, according to what they had done. <sup>14</sup>Then Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire. <sup>15</sup>And if anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

## Sin-Week 2

19. Is there any place for the 'dead' to hide to avoid God's judgement and is anyone exempt?
20. On what basis are the 'dead' being judged?
21. Could there be anything written in the books recording a person's deeds by which a person could be saved? (Look up Galatians 2:16.)

## Conclusion

We all deserve eternal separation from God and punishment for our sin against God. Born as sinners, totally depraved and spiritually dead, we have no ability to seek after God or do good to earn favor with God. With man, there is no hope for reconciliation to our Holy God. But God made a way through Jesus Christ.

***WHEN WE REPENT OF OUR SIN AND PLACE OUR FAITH IN CHRIST ALONE FOR SALVATION, WE ARE MADE SPIRITUALLY ALIVE AND RECONCILED TO GOD. ALTHOUGH WE MAY EXPERIENCE PHYSICAL DEATH, WE KNOW THAT WE HAVE ETERNAL LIFE WITH GOD!***

***PRAISE BE TO GOD FOR HIS ASTOUNDING PROVISION TO US THROUGH JESUS CHRIST!***

*Colossians 1:19-22—*

*<sup>19</sup> For in [Christ] all the fullness of God was pleased to dwell, <sup>20</sup> and through him to reconcile to himself all things, whether on earth or in heaven, making peace by the blood of his cross.*

*<sup>21</sup> And you, who once were alienated and hostile in mind, doing evil deeds, <sup>22</sup> he has now reconciled in his body of flesh by his death, in order to present you holy and blameless and above reproach before him*

# Hymn for Meditation

## **“Grace Greater than Our Sin”**

Julia H. Johnston (1849-1919)

Marvelous grace of our loving Lord,  
Grace that exceeds our sin and our guilt,  
Yonder on Calvary's mount outpoured,  
There where the blood of the Lamb was spilt.

Refrain:

Grace, grace, God's grace,  
Grace that will pardon and cleanse within!  
Grace, grace, God's grace,  
Grace that is greater than our sin!

Sin and despair, like the sea waves cold,  
Threaten the soul with infinite loss;  
Grace that is greater, yes, grace untold,  
Points to the refuge, the mighty cross.

Dark is the stain that we cannot hide—  
What can avail to wash it away?  
Look! There is flowing a crimson tide;  
Whiter than snow you may be today.

Marvelous, infinite, matchless grace,  
Freely bestowed on all who believe!  
You that are longing to see His face,  
Will you this moment His grace receive?

# Appendix

## **Endnotes**

## **Additional Resources**

## **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 1

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 2

REFLECTIONS

# Endnotes

1. Samuel H. Moffett, *A History of Christianity in Asia: Volume I: Beginnings to 1500, 1<sup>st</sup> edition* (New York: Harper Collins Publishers, 1992), 172.
2. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 452.
3. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 454.
4. "Shorter Catechism of the Assembly of Divines," A Puritan's Mind, Accessed September 13, 2021, <https://www.apuritansmind.com/westminster-standards/shorter-catechism/>.
5. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 452-453.
6. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 251.
7. John MacArthur, *The MacArthur Bible Commentary for e-Sword*. (Thomas Nelson), Genesis 3:16, e-Sword edition.
8. Wayne Grudem, *Systematic Theology* (Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan), 497.
9. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 467.
10. John Owen, "The Mortification of Sin" (Philadelphia: Presbyterian Board of Publications, 1880) 14.
11. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 460.
12. "Matthew Henry's Commentary on the Whole Bible, Commentary on Hebrews 2," Blue Letter Bible, accessed December 18, 2022, [https://www.blueletterbible.org/Comm/mhc/Hbr/Hbr\\_002.cfm](https://www.blueletterbible.org/Comm/mhc/Hbr/Hbr_002.cfm).

## Additional Resources

Lewis, C. S. *The Problem of Pain*. New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Owen, John. *The Mortification of Sin*. Philadelphia: Presbyterian Board of Publications, 1880.



sin

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*

*sin*

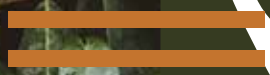
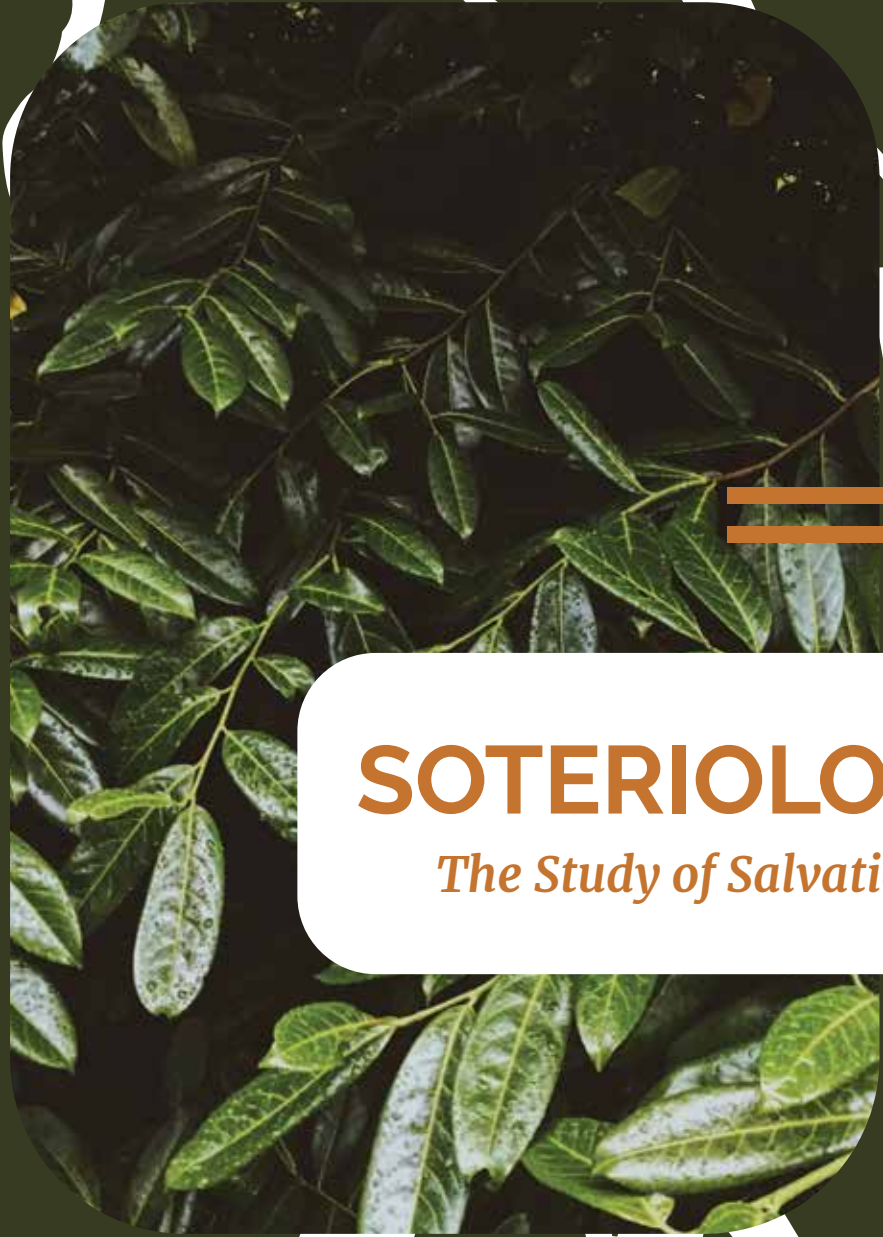
**CLASS NOTES**  
*week two*

*sin*





*Sin*



# **SOTERIOLOGY**

*The Study of Salvation*



# Salvation - Week One

## Introduction

John Newton was born in London in 1725. He was nurtured by a godly mother who taught him the Bible, but she died of tuberculosis when Newton was 7 years old. His father was a sea captain and from age 11 to 17, Newton accompanied him on five voyages, living the rough life of a sailor while receiving a thorough education in seamanship. The godly influence of his mother appeared lost as Newton grew to be an immoral man who drank heavily and demeaned God. He became involved in the English slave trade, transporting men, women, and children from off the coast of West Africa to the Americas to be sold into slavery.

Amazingly, through a series of events, God got hold of John Newton's hard heart. He was gradually transformed from blaspheming slave trader to a humble servant of Jesus Christ. He became an Anglican minister in 1764 and for the next 43 years of his life, Newton faithfully preached the gospel, shepherded his church, and wrote 280 hymns to accompany his sermons.

Newton was also a close friend and mentor to William Wilberforce, a member of the British Parliament who worked tirelessly to abolish slavery in England. Newton helped Wilberforce found the Anti-Slavery Society in 1787. A year later, Newton wrote a pamphlet entitled *Thoughts Upon the African Slave Trade*. It was a graphic account of his experiences aboard slave ships which included a repentant acknowledgement of his personal involvement in the trade. Newton lived to see slavery outlawed in England in May of 1807 before dying in December that same year.<sup>1</sup>

Newton never got over God's grace, the unearned and undeserved favor that was demonstrated towards him, a terrible sinner. In one of his most beloved hymns Newton wrote:

"Amazing grace, how sweet the sound, that saved a wretch like me. I once was lost but now am found was blind but now I see."<sup>2</sup>

John Newton experienced grace and new life in Christ *and we can too!* No matter our past, no matter our age, no matter what we've done or what's been done to us, God's grace is greater than all our sin!

***BE FILLED WITH LOVE, GRATITUDE AND WONDER AS WE STUDY THE PRECIOUS GIFT OF SALVATION. TO GOD BE THE GLORY, GREAT THINGS HE HAS DONE!***



*And those whom he predestined he also called, and those whom he called he also justified, and those whom he justified he also glorified.*

Romans 8:30

# Salvation

"In coming to the doctrine of soteriology, the student of Scripture arrives at the pinnacle of Christian theology because the themes and topics addressed in the study of salvation run to the very heart of the gospel and to the center of redemptive history."<sup>3</sup>

## What is Salvation?

Salvation occurs when a just and holy God delivers His people from their sins and the consequences of sin. The sinner is saved by grace through faith in Jesus Christ. The new believer is now united to Christ and receives all the spiritual blessings this intimate relationship provides, including eternal life in His presence.

*Ephesians 2:8-9—<sup>8</sup>For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God, <sup>9</sup>not as a result of works, so that no one may boast.*

### DID YOU KNOW

Faith: The Greek word for faith is *pistis*. Its definition includes two aspects, intellectual belief and complete trust, and *both* must be present for salvation to occur. Many people believe certain facts about Jesus, such as He is the Son of God. The Bible tells us even demons believe this and yet we know that demons do not have eternal life with Christ. The second aspect of faith, complete trust, is also necessary for salvation. When a sinner (quickened by the Spirit) believes and personally places her trust in the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ alone to pay the penalty for her sins, she is given eternal life with Christ.

## Why Do We Need to be Saved?

A Quick Review of the Previous Section on Sin

1. God created man in His own \_\_\_\_\_ (Genesis 1:27).
2. God placed Adam in a beautiful garden with only one restriction: he was not to eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. The penalty for breaking this commandment was \_\_\_\_\_ (Genesis 2:17).
3. God then created Eve, a helper fit for Adam. Together they broke God's commandment and ate of the forbidden fruit (Genesis 3:1-7). Before they sinned, Adam and Eve walked in perfect fellowship with God in the Garden. After they sinned how did they respond when they heard God calling them (Genesis 3:9-10)?



## Salvation-Week 1

4. With Adam's sin, fellowship with God was broken and death entered the world but from the very beginning He promised a Redeemer.

*Genesis 3:15—I [The LORD God] will put enmity between you [the serpent] and the woman, and between your [the serpent's] offspring and her [the woman's] offspring; he [the woman's offspring] shall bruise your [the serpent's] head, and you [the serpent] shall bruise his [the woman's offspring's] heel.*

This verse sets up the conflict between the kingdom of Satan and the kingdom of God and looks ahead to the time when Satan will strike at Jesus, the offspring of the woman. On the cross Jesus fatally bruised Satan's head. Hallelujah!

From Adam on every person born has been born into sin—except Jesus Christ.

Look up the following verses to complete the chart contrasting the condemning news of Adam and sin with the redeeming news of Christ and salvation.

VERSE	CONDEMNING NEWS	REDEEMING NEWS
Romans 3:23-25	----- have sinned	Justified by: Through:
Romans 6:23	The wages of sin is:	The free gift of God is:
1 Corinthians 15:22	In Adam all:	In Christ all:
Ephesians 2:1-5	We were ----- in our trespasses and sins. We were by nature children of -----	But God...

**Chart 1—Condemning and Redeeming News**

God created man in His own image. Man was meant to have dominion over God's good creation and live in perfect fellowship with Him. However, with Adam's disobedience sin entered the world, and with sin, death. Fellowship with God was broken. Everyone is now born under the curse of sin, deserving the eternal wrath of God. There is no way for sinful man to placate a holy God. However, in His love and mercy God made a way for mankind to be rescued.

## HOW Are We Saved?

Salvation is a work of all three persons of the Trinity carrying out their unique roles.

We will examine:

- The Father's plan in eternity past.
- The Son's accomplishment of the Father's plan.
- The Spirit's application of redemption.

A concise overview of the work of the Trinity in salvation is found in Ephesians 1. Let's do some observations on this chapter and then we will dive more deeply into the role of each member of the Trinity.

*Ephesians 1:1-14*

*<sup>1</sup>Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, to the saints who are in Ephesus, and are faithful in Christ Jesus:*

*<sup>2</sup>Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.*

*<sup>3</sup>Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in Christ with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places, <sup>4</sup>even as he chose us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and*

*blameless before him. In love <sup>5</sup>he predestined us for adoption to himself as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the purpose of his will, <sup>6</sup>to the praise of his glorious grace, with which he has blessed us in the Beloved. <sup>7</sup>In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his grace, <sup>8</sup>which he lavished upon us, in all wisdom and insight <sup>9</sup>making known to us the mystery of his will, according to his purpose, which he set forth in Christ <sup>10</sup>as a plan for the fullness of time, to unite all things in him, things in heaven and things on earth.*

*<sup>11</sup>In him we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to the purpose of him who works all things according to the counsel of his will, <sup>12</sup>so that we who were the first to hope in Christ might be to the praise of his glory. <sup>13</sup>In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, <sup>14</sup>who is the guarantee of our inheritance until we acquire possession of it, to the praise of his glory.*

General instructions for marking:

- It is helpful to use a different color for each group of markings. (Colors given are only suggestions.)
- Always include synonyms and pronouns in your marking.
- In this passage the pronouns can be confusing. Watch them carefully. You may want to mark them in pencil if you are not sure to which member of the Trinity they refer. They will become clearer as you read it over and over.

## Salvation-Week 1

5. Read through the passage several more times and mark it according to the following suggestions:
- Mark God and all the synonyms and pronouns which refer to God with a purple triangle.
  - Double underline in red the phrases in Christ, through Jesus Christ, in the Beloved, and in him (when "him" refers to Christ).
  - Put a blue box around "Holy Spirit" (verse 13).

The following questions over this passage (Ephesians 1:1-14) will help you identify the activity of each member of the trinity in salvation. (These lists are not all inclusive.)

### GOD THE FATHER

6. What has the Father done for those who are in Christ?

Vs. 3: He has blessed us \_\_\_\_\_ with every \_\_\_\_\_.

Vs. 4: He \_\_\_\_\_ us.

Vs. 5: He \_\_\_\_\_ us for \_\_\_\_\_ to himself as sons.

7. When did the Father choose those who are in Christ?

Vs. 4: \_\_\_\_\_

8. Why did God choose whom He did?

Vs. 4: That we should be \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ before him.

Vs. 4-5: In \_\_\_\_\_ he predestined us for adoption . . .

Vs. 5: According to the purpose of his \_\_\_\_\_.

Vs. 6: To the \_\_\_\_\_ of his \_\_\_\_\_ grace.

Vs. 11: Those in Christ have been predestined according to the \_\_\_\_\_ of him who works all things according to the counsel of his \_\_\_\_\_.

### GOD THE SON

*Note that the blessings listed above are from the Father to those who are in Christ.*

9. According to verse 7, what do we have through Christ?

10. According to verse 11, what have we also obtained in Christ?

### GOD THE HOLY SPIRIT

11. According to verse 13, when we believe in Christ we are \_\_\_\_\_ with the promised Holy Spirit.

12. According to verse 14, the Holy Spirit is the guarantee of our \_\_\_\_\_.

THERE IS MUCH MORE! We will now look at each member of the Trinity in more depth.

## God the Father

### The Father's Plan in Eternity Past

It was God the Father's plan from before time began to reconcile His people to Himself through Jesus Christ for His own glory. Although it is man who *needs* a Savior, salvation is ultimately not man centered, it is God centered. Salvation is *by the will of God for the glory of God*.

### BY THE WILL OF GOD

God could not simply look past sin and be reconciled to man. In order to maintain His perfect justness, the penalty for sin had to be paid. In God's astounding mercy, He made a way to maintain His justness and at the same time allow men and women to be spared from eternal death. It was God's will to accept the death of Jesus Christ as payment - or atonement - for the sins of those who come to Jesus by faith.

Let's look at a few verses to examine this further.

13. The Old Testament prophet Isaiah gives a prophecy from God about Christ's death in Isaiah 53. Carefully read Isaiah 53:5-6 and 10-11. In your own words, describe what the LORD did to Christ according to these verses.

In verses 10-11 of Isaiah 53, why did the LORD crush Christ?

14. As you read the following verses, underline counsel, purpose, and will (when it is a noun.)

*Galatians 1:4—[the Lord Jesus Christ] gave himself for our sins to deliver us from the present evil age, according to the will of our God and Father.*

*Ephesians 1:5, 11—In love he predestined us for adoption to himself as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the purpose of his will... In him we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to the purpose of him who works all things according to the counsel of his will,*

*2 Timothy 1:9—[God] saved us and called us to a holy calling, not because of our works but because of his own purpose and grace, which he gave us in Christ Jesus before the ages began,*

What guides or compels Jesus' actions and God's actions in these verses?

## Salvation-Week 1

Jesus Christ was crucified according to the will of God for the reconciliation of God's people to Himself. Likewise men and women are *called* to saving faith in Jesus Christ *by the will of God*.

15. For each of the following verse(s), write down in your own words a description of God's action in calling individuals to saving faith in Jesus Christ:

Matthew 16:16-17—

John 6:44—

Acts 13:48—

Ephesians 2:8-9—

1 Peter 1:3—

God calls elect men and women to salvation through Jesus Christ according to His own purposes and will. It is never because of anything a person has done or will do; it is only because of God's sovereign choice. Ephesians 1 and Romans 9 make it clear that God's election was made in eternity past before anyone was born, before anyone did anything right or wrong, before anyone could earn anything.

In Romans 9:14-16, Paul is asking and answering a rhetorical question in response to explaining that God chooses some people for salvation and passes over others. Paul knows this will sound unjust to us, so he asks the question for us, "What shall we say then? Is there injustice on God's part?"

16. What is Paul's response to this question (Romans 9:14-16)?

Continuing this line of reasoning in verses 19-24, Paul again asks and answers a question: "Why does [God] still find fault? For who can resist his will?"

17. Rewrite Paul's response to this 2nd question in your own words. (Verses 20-24)

## Salvation-Week 1

We must never try to hold God accountable to our standards and our ideas. We must instead submit to how God has declared Himself to be. To drive this point home, consider the following verses:

*Isaiah 46:9-10—...I am God, and there is none like me, declaring the end from the beginning and from ancient times things not yet done, saying, ‘My counsel shall stand, and I will accomplish all my purpose.’*

*Isaiah 55:9—As the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways and my thoughts than your thoughts.*

### FOR THE GLORY OF GOD

Scripture tells us that the elect in Christ are chosen by God the Father before the foundation of the world (Ephesians 1). He predestined them to be adopted as His children and lavished His grace upon them just because He willed to do so. Why? *...to the praise of his glorious grace* (Ephesians. 1:6).

Likewise, throughout Scripture we see God acting for the honor and glory of His holy name.

**“...the driving purpose for which God saves his people is in accordance with his ultimate purpose for all things—namely, to bring glory and honor to himself.”<sup>4</sup>**

*Isaiah 42:8—I am the LORD; that is my name; my glory I give to no other, nor my praise to carved idols.*

*Isaiah 43:25—I, I am he who blots out your transgressions for my own sake, and I will not remember your sins.*

*1 John 2:12—I am writing to you, little children, because your sins are forgiven for his name’s sake.*

Review the verses in the “Condemning News, Redeeming News” chart you filled out. They clearly point out that all have sinned. All deserve God’s wrath. All deserve eternal punishment. That God would choose to save anyone is an act of undeserved mercy and grace.

God’s election does not remove from us His command to go into all the world and seek to make disciples (Matthew 28:19-20). Only God knows who has been chosen. We do not. We are called to share the Gospel with all.

18. Look up John 6:37 and answer the following: If someone understands the gospel and truly wants to be saved, would God say, “No”?

Based on what we have studied in this section, what does a person's desire to be saved tell you?

If you feel God’s Spirit calling, but have not yet repented and trusted Jesus for salvation, remember that the Bible says:

*Acts 16:31—...Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved...*

*Romans 10:9, 13—<sup>9</sup>...if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved...<sup>13</sup>For “everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved.”*

*2 Corinthians 6:2—...Behold, now is the favorable time; behold, now is the day of salvation.*

**GOD IS GLORIFIED AS HE SAVES UNDESERVING SINNERS BY HIS MERCY AND GRACE!**

## God the Son

### Accomplishes the Father's Plan

Mankind desperately needs to be rescued from sin and death and restored to a right relationship with God. It was God the Father's loving, sovereign, and gracious plan from eternity past to choose to reconcile men and women to Himself. The plan was to be accomplished through the work of God the Son who came to earth to do the Father's will. At just the right time, Jesus was sent forth by God to be born, live as a man and give Himself for sinners; the world has never been the same! Let's take a closer look at this good news—the gospel—in all its splendor and majesty.

### THE GOSPEL

The apostle Paul gives us a simple explanation of the gospel in 1 Corinthians 15:3-6.

*1 Corinthians 15:3-6—<sup>3</sup>For I delivered to you as of first importance what I also received: that Christ died for our sins in accordance with the Scriptures, <sup>4</sup>that he was buried, that he was raised on the third day in accordance with the Scriptures, <sup>5</sup>and that he appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve. <sup>6</sup>Then he appeared to more than five hundred brothers at one time, most of whom are still alive, though some have fallen asleep.*

### DID YOU KNOW

The word *gospel* means "good news." The Greek word is *euaggelion*, from which we get our English word *evangelist*. The gospel is the good news of salvation through Jesus Christ.

19. What did Christ do in verse 3 and why?

20. What happened to Christ in verse 4?

21. What proof of His resurrection is given in verses 5 and 6?

22. What phrase found in verse 3 and repeated in verse 4, speaks to the whole Bible containing the theme of salvation through Jesus Christ? See also Luke 24:27.

These then are the basic elements of the gospel: Jesus died for our sins and rose again. Sounds so simple, right? And yet, what was accomplished through the death and resurrection of the Son of God is truly good news for us!

## JESUS' DEATH

*Why did Jesus have to die?*

To begin to answer this question, let's look at 3 events in the Old Testament.

### EVENT 1: THE GARDEN OF EDEN AFTER THE FALL

Soon after being created, man and woman rebelled against their Creator God.

*Genesis 3:8-11—<sup>8</sup>And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden. <sup>9</sup>But the LORD God called to the man and said to him, "Where are you?" <sup>10</sup>And he said, "I heard the sound of you in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked, and I hid myself." He said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten of the tree of which I commanded you not to eat?"*

23. Circle the word "naked" in the above passage.

24. What emotion(s) accompanied Adam's nakedness according to verse 10?

Now read Genesis 3:21 below.

*Genesis 3:21—And the LORD God made for Adam and for his wife garments of skins and clothed them.*

25. Underline the phrases "garments of skin" and "clothed them."

26. What had to die, (whose blood was shed), for garments to be made to cover Adam and Eve's nakedness?

27. Who made these garments?

This is the first time in Scripture that blood was shed (an animal died) to cover the nakedness and shame of mankind.

28. To *Whom* does this act point, that our guilt and shame might be covered?



## Salvation-Week 1

### EVENT 2: THE PASSOVER

Now fast forward to the time of the Israelite bondage in Egypt. They have been enslaved for 400 years and God has called Moses to lead them out of captivity. Nine plagues have ruined the land of Egypt, but Pharaoh still refuses to let His people go. The tenth and final plague is about to take place. God gives Moses and Aaron specific instructions about a memorial festival that He is initiating at this time called the Passover. Let's draw out some significant details about this event.

29. Read Exodus 12:1-7

Describe the lamb that was to be eaten at the Passover meal according to verse 5.

What was done with its blood after the lamb was slaughtered?

30. Read Exodus 12:12-14 (the Lord speaking to Moses)

Who would die that night in the land of Egypt?

Who would strike them?

What was the sign that would save the firstborn of the Israelites from death?

Once again, what died so these sons could live?

There was a death for every household in Egypt and Israel on that night. Either the death of a firstborn son or the death of a lamb. After that terrible night, Pharaoh finally relented, and the Israelites were told to leave.

31. Read Exodus 20:1-2

The people were brought out of the house of \_\_\_\_\_.

Who did this?

To *Whom* does this sacrificed, Passover lamb point, that we might no longer be slaves to sin?

List all the similarities you see between Christ and this first Passover event.

## Salvation-Week 1

### EVENT 3: THE DAY OF ATONEMENT

The Israelites are no longer slaves in Egypt but have begun their wilderness wanderings. The tabernacle of the LORD has been constructed and a law code and sacrificial system are being put into place. Moses' brother Aaron has been ordained to serve as high priest. The LORD institutes a special day called the Day of Atonement. On this day, once per year, Aaron is allowed to enter the Holy of Holies in the tabernacle to offer sacrifices. Let's draw out the significance of this event.

32. Read Leviticus 16:11 and fill in the blanks.

<sup>11</sup>And Aaron shall present the bull as a \_\_\_\_\_ offering for \_\_\_\_\_ and shall make \_\_\_\_\_ for himself and for his \_\_\_\_\_.

33. Read Leviticus 16:14-15

Where was the blood sprinkled according to verse 14?

#### DID YOU KNOW

The Hebrew word for "atonement" is *kāpar*. It means to cover, to cancel, to forgive, to reconcile. The Hebrew word, *kappōret*, is translated "Mercy Seat," which literally means the atoning cover.

34. Why was this significant? Read Exodus

25:21-22 to find out. (Notice the context: God is speaking to Moses.)

The mercy seat was a covering for the ark of the covenant located in the Holy of Holies in the tabernacle. Inside the ark was a copy of the Law. From above the mercy seat God met with Moses and gave him orders concerning the people of Israel.

35. Back to Leviticus 16. What *type* of offering was the goat, who was it for, and where was its blood sprinkled, according to Leviticus 16:15?

36. What similarities do you see between the sin offerings and Jesus Christ?

## Salvation-Week 1

### CONCLUSION FROM OLD TESTAMENT EVENTS

We have looked at three events in the Old Testament: the Garden of Eden after the Fall, the Passover, and the Day of Atonement. These events foreshadow the crucifixion of Christ; in each of them blood was shed for the forgiveness of sins.

37. Write out Hebrews 9:22

38. Could the blood of animal sacrifices offered up year after year permanently take away sins?  
(See Hebrews 10:4 to check your answer.)

39. List at least one attribute of God that prohibits Him from overlooking sin.

40. Now answer the question, "Why did Jesus have to die?"

Keep these Old Testament events in mind for next week's lesson when we turn our attention to the New Testament and look further into what Jesus' death accomplished.

# Salvation-Week 2

## JESUS' DEATH (CONTINUED)

*Why did Jesus have to die?*

Last week we began to answer the question, "Why did Jesus have to die?" by looking at three events in the Old Testament that foreshadow Jesus' crucifixion. This week we continue to study the necessity of Jesus' death by looking at five spiritual blessings that Jesus' death on the cross accomplished for those who are united to Him by faith. Though there are certainly more than five, we will cover these spiritual blessings: redemption, justification, propitiation, reconciliation and adoption.

### REDEMPTION

Redemption means a ransoming, the act of freeing or delivering from the penalty of sin. The words *redemption*, *redeem*, and *ransom* are all related and include the concepts of: a) setting free from captivity or slavery by making a payment, and b) buying back something lost or sold.

*Hebrews 9:11-12*—"But when Christ appeared as a high priest of the good things that have come, then through the greater and more perfect tent (not made with hands, that is not of this creation) <sup>12</sup>he entered once for all into the holy places, not by means of the blood of goats and calves but by means of his own blood, thus securing an eternal redemption.

1. Complete the chart below contrasting the earthly high priest from Leviticus 16 with our heavenly high priest in Hebrews 9:11-12.

	Earthly High Priest	Heavenly High Priest
Name	Aaron	
Entered the	Earthly Holy of Holies	
Means	Blood of bulls and goats	
Frequency	Year after year	
Result	Temporary forgiveness / atonement	

Jesus' death accomplished never-ending redemption for those who believe in Him by faith. He was the perfect sacrifice that paid the penalty for our sins, releasing us from sin's punishment. He purchased our freedom so that we are no longer slaves of sin; now we are slaves of righteousness.

**HALLELUJAH!**

## Salvation-Week 2

### JUSTIFICATION

To justify means to declare righteous. Justification occurs when God pronounces a sinner righteous because of the person's (by grace, through faith) relationship with Christ. The person who is *in Christ* now has a right standing before a holy God.

Read Romans 3:21-24 below and answer the following questions.

*Romans 3:21-24—<sup>21</sup>But now the righteousness of God has been manifested apart from the law, although the Law and the Prophets bear witness to it – <sup>22</sup>the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe. For there is no distinction: <sup>23</sup>for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, <sup>24</sup>and are justified by his grace as a gift, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus,*

2. Can the righteousness of God be obtained by following the law or anything else we might *do* (see also Romans 3:20)?

Why not, according to verse 23? (Remember God's standard for a person to enter heaven!)

3. How is justification possible?

4. Why is justification called a *gift* in verse 24?

Let's look at justification from a different angle.

*2 Corinthians 5:21—For our sake he made him to be sin who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.*

5. Who was "made to be sin who knew no sin"?

6. What is the result for believers?

When it says Jesus was made "to be sin who knew no sin," this does not mean that God made Jesus a sinner. MacArthur and Mayhue give this enlightening explanation:

"He did not actually make Jesus a sinner; it would be blasphemous to suggest that the God-man was actually made a sinner, for God cannot sin. Instead, since justification is a legal declaration...the

## Salvation-Week 2

Father judicially reckoned Christ to have committed the sins of those for whom he was giving himself as a substitute."<sup>5</sup>

This then is the wonderful exchange that takes place at salvation, Jesus takes our sin and gives us His righteousness! In other words, God imputes (or ascribes) our sin to Christ and Christ imputes (or ascribes) His righteousness to us. Therefore, God views believers as righteous because we have the *imputed righteousness* of Christ.

Now read Romans 5:1 and Romans 5:9.

*Romans 5:1, 9—<sup>1</sup>Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.... <sup>9</sup>Since, therefore, we have now been justified by his blood, much more shall we be saved by him from the wrath of God.*

7. How does a believer's relationship with God change because of Christ in these verses?

All believers are now justified (or seen as "not guilty") in the eyes of God because they are in Christ. We now have peace with God instead of being His enemy and we are no longer under His wrath.

### HALLELUJAH!

#### PROPITIATION

Propitiation means satisfaction, to satisfy, to appease, to atone, to make amends for guilt or wrongdoing. In ancient pagan religions and some current religions today, the idea of appeasing a god by offering gifts or sacrifices is common.

Let's go back to Romans 3:23-26 to understand the uniqueness of true Christianity, (ie. of having a personal relationship with Jesus Christ).

*Romans 3:23-26—<sup>23</sup>for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, <sup>24</sup>and are justified by his grace as a gift, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus, <sup>25</sup>whom God put forward as a propitiation by his blood, to be received by faith...<sup>26</sup>It was to show his righteousness at the present time, so that he might be just and justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.*

8. Circle the word "propitiation." and read the verses again, substituting the phrase "satisfaction for sin" in place of the word "propitiation."
9. Who "put forward" the propitiation and who is the propitiation?

#### DID YOU KNOW

The Greek word for "propitiation" is *hilastērion*. It is the same word used for the mercy seat that covered the ark of the covenant in the Holy of Holies. When blood from an animal offered as a sacrifice for the sins of the people was sprinkled on the mercy seat, God's wrath was satisfied and their sins atoned for, reconciling sinful people to a holy God.

## Salvation-Week 2

10. How is this propitiation by the blood of Christ appropriated by a sinner?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
11. God cannot justify man by simply overlooking his sin because it would violate His holiness. In light of this truth, use Romans 3:23-26 to explain how God can be "just and justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus".

Isn't it amazing? When Christ bore the wrath of God on the cross (that we deserved because of our sins), He satisfied the holiness and justice of God such that God is now free to forgive our sins.

### RECONCILIATION

Reconciliation means to restore relationship with, to return to favor with, to receive one into favor.

*Romans 5:10-11—<sup>10</sup>For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, now that we are reconciled, shall we be saved by his life. <sup>11</sup>More than that, we also rejoice in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we have now received reconciliation.*

12. Circle all forms of reconciliation in the above passage.
13. How is an unsaved person's relationship with God described in verse 10?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
14. Who *initiated* reconciliation in the broken relationship between God and sinful people?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
15. How was reconciliation accomplished?
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
16. Let us rejoice in God through our Lord Jesus Christ! Based on what you have been learning in this study, list some spiritual blessings you are thankful for because you have been reconciled to God.

## Salvation-Week 2

### ADOPTION

Adoption was common in the Roman world when the New Testament was written, and the practice continues in our culture today. It is a familiar concept to all of us. We may have been adopted ourselves or know someone who has adopted a child (or children). These children become part of a new family and are loved, cared for, and receive the rights and privileges due them as family members.

The apostle Paul frequently uses the analogy of adoption in his letters to the churches to describe God's fatherly love for His children. Here is one example from Galatians:

*Galatians 4:4-5—<sup>4</sup>But when the fullness of time had come, God sent forth his Son, born of a woman, born under the law, <sup>5</sup>to redeem those who were under the law, so that we might receive adoption as sons.*

17. In contrast to having God as our Father, who is the father of all *unbelievers*? Read the verses below to answer this question.

John 8:42-44

1 John 3: 10

18. Look up the following verses and write down the privileges we have because God is our Father.

Romans 8:16-17

Galatians 4:6-7

19. What have we received and how is it described according to 1 Peter 1:3-4?

Redemption, justification, propitiation, reconciliation, and adoption. Review your homework on these five spiritual blessing that Jesus' death accomplished for you as a believer.

20. Did you contribute anything to them?

Did you earn them?

Did you deserve them?

***SPEND SOME TIME IN PRAYER, PRAISING AND THANKING GOD FOR THE WONDERFUL BLESSINGS THAT WE RECEIVE BECAUSE WE ARE IN UNION WITH CHRIST!***



## JESUS' RESURRECTION

Most people understand the importance of Jesus' death on the cross but fail to realize the importance of the resurrection of Jesus.

Let's look at four reasons why Jesus had to be raised from the dead.

REASON 1: TO DEMONSTRATE A HOLY & JUST GOD IS SATISFIED

*1 Corinthians 15:16-17—<sup>16</sup>For if the dead are not raised, not even Christ has been raised. <sup>17</sup>And if Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile and you are still in your sins.*

21. Paul states that if Christ has not been raised from the dead then our faith is pointless, and we are still WHAT?

If Christ was not raised, we do not have redemption, justification, propitiation, reconciliation, adoption and all the other spiritual blessings that are ours in Christ.

But thanks be to God that He did raise Jesus from the dead! The resurrection demonstrates that God was satisfied with the sacrifice of His perfect Son. Sin's penalty has been paid; the debt cancelled *forever*. A believer is no longer under the wrath of God. When God looks on a believer, He sees the righteousness of Christ. The relationship that was once fractured by sin has now been spiritually restored.

REASON 2: TO PROVE DEATH IS CONQUERED & ETERNAL LIFE GUARANTEED

*1 Corinthians 15:20-22, 26, 55, 57—<sup>20</sup>But in fact Christ has been raised from the dead...<sup>21</sup>For as by a man came death, by a man has come also the resurrection of the dead. <sup>22</sup>For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ shall all be made alive.*

*<sup>26</sup>The last enemy to be destroyed is death.*

*<sup>55</sup>O death, where is your victory? O death, where is your sting?*

*<sup>57</sup>But thanks be to God, who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.*

22. What truth is stated in verse 20?

23. Contrast the differences between Adam and Christ as given in verse 21.

24. What is death called in verse 26?

25. How was victory over death obtained?

## Salvation-Week 2

Jesus Himself said in John 5:24:

*John 5:24—Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes Him who sent me has eternal life. He does not come into judgment, but has passed from death to life.*

26. How do these verses encourage a believer in Christ to not fear death?
27. How do these verses encourage a believer to share the gospel with someone who is facing death?

Christ died and rose again, defeating death once and for all. Believers no longer have to fear death because to "be away from the body" means to "be at home with the Lord" forever and ever (2 Corinthians 5:8).

### REASON 3: TO RECEIVE A GLORIFIED, HUMAN BODY & BE THE FIRSTFRUITS

It may surprise you to consider this: Jesus still has His *human* body while in heaven. He *bodily* ascended into heaven.

28. Read the following verses and note what you learn about Jesus' resurrected, physical body.

Luke 24:36-43

John 20:19-20

29. What does Jesus' resurrected body tell you about the type of body believers will have for eternity?

Let's look again at 1 Corinthians 15:20-23.

*1 Corinthians 15:20-23—<sup>20</sup>But in fact Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. <sup>21</sup>For as by a man came death, by a man has come also the resurrection of the dead. <sup>22</sup>For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ shall all be made alive. <sup>23</sup>But each in his own order: Christ the firstfruits, then at his coming those who belong to Christ.*

30. What is Christ called in verses 20 and 23?

## Salvation-Week 2

The use of this word is an agricultural metaphor that would have been understood by the Jewish people. As part of a yearly festival, the people would bring a portion of the fruits that ripened first as an offering to God, trusting His provision of more fruit in the coming harvest.

31. Of whom is Christ the firstfruits, according to verse 20?

32. Does this include *everyone* who has died? What criteria is given in verse 22 and 23?

Figuratively speaking, Jesus is the firstfruits of all who die in faith. His resurrection makes possible (and guarantees) the resurrection of all believers. One day, we will have glorified bodies free from disease, decay, and the very presence of sin!

### REASON 4: TO RULE & INTERCEDE FOR HIS PEOPLE

33. According to these verses, where is Jesus now?

Ephesians 1:19-23

Hebrews 12:2

1 Peter 3:22

34. What is the significance of this position?

35. According to the following verses, what is Jesus doing on our behalf?

Romans 8:34

Hebrews 7:25

36. How does this comfort you and give you hope in difficult times?

The resurrection of Jesus is just as amazing as his death on the cross! Therefore, the gospel message is incomplete without sharing the fact that Jesus was raised from the dead and is alive today, ruling, reigning, and interceding for His people.

Let's not forget another wonderful truth, He is coming again! Are you ready?

## God the Holy Spirit

### Applies Redemption

We have studied God the Father's plan to demonstrate His glory by saving His people from the penalty, power and (one day) the very presence of sin. We have studied the perfect God-man, Jesus Christ, who came to earth and accomplished His Father's will by dying and rising again; the One who is seated at the right hand of the Father interceding for believers.

Now we turn our attention to God the Holy Spirit who *applies* the benefits and blessings God the Son purchased for the elect.

As we have already learned, man is "dead in his trespasses and sins" (Ephesians 2:1). Trying harder and doing more good works will never be enough to give life to a spiritual corpse. That is why Jesus told Nicodemus, "You must be born again" (John 3:7). This phrase, "born again," and synonyms such as "rebirth" and "regeneration" refer to *a cleansing from sin and creation of new spiritual life*.

Let's look again at Titus 3:4-5 which we read previously in the section on God the Father.

*Titus 3:4-5—<sup>4</sup>But when the goodness and loving kindness of God our Savior appeared, <sup>5</sup>he saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to his own mercy, by washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit, whom he poured out on us richly through Jesus Christ our Savior,*

37. Circle the word "regeneration."

The Greek term for regeneration is *palingenesia*. It refers to new birth, renewal, a purifying renovation. It is often used to denote the restoration of a thing to its pristine state.

38. Put a box around the word "renewal."

The Greek term is *anakainosis*. It refers to a complete change for the better, a renovation.

39. According to verse 5, who is responsible for this "washing of regeneration and renewal"?

Included in the Holy Spirit's work of regeneration is conviction of sin resulting in repentance. True repentance is much more than being sorry for sin. It is agreeing with God that one is a sinner followed by a turning *away* from sin and a turning *toward* God. The Holy Spirit also gives the faith needed to trust Christ for salvation and enter a personal relationship with Him. Basically, the Spirit does *everything* at salvation; the only thing we contribute is our sin!

Just as sin permeates the mind, will and emotions of every human being, regeneration has the same pervasive effect. The change from spiritual death to spiritual life, is so absolute that the believer is now called a new creation:

*2 Corinthians 5:17—Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away; behold the new has come.*

To summarize: "At regeneration, the sinner is made alive, granted repentance and faith, united to Christ, declared righteous on the basis of the imputed righteousness of Christ, and adopted into the family of God."<sup>6</sup>

***PRAISE GOD FOR THIS WONDERFUL WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT.***

## SANCTIFICATION: POSITIONAL & PROGRESSIVE

The act of regeneration by the Holy Spirit is the beginning of the sanctification process in which a believer is conformed more and more to the image of Christ. This present-tense aspect of sanctification is commonly called progressive sanctification. However, the Bible also speaks of a past-tense aspect of sanctification, often called positional sanctification. Let's look at positional sanctification first.

### POSITIONAL SANCTIFICATION

40. Read the following verses and write down a believer's position *prior to* salvation and then *after* salvation.

Romans 5:9-10  
Before -

After -

Colossians 1:13  
Before -

After -

The church in Corinth was dealing with all kinds of issues including divisiveness, immorality, lawsuits, and idolatry, yet note how Paul describes this body of believers in the following verses.

41. Fill in the blanks below.

*1 Corinthians 1:2—To the church of God that is in Corinth, to those \_\_\_\_\_ in Christ Jesus, called to be \_\_\_\_\_ together with all those who in every place call upon the name of our Lord Jesus Christ...*

*1 Corinthians 6:11—And such \_\_\_\_\_ some of you. But you were \_\_\_\_\_, you were \_\_\_\_\_, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the \_\_\_\_\_ of our God.*

42. What does Paul say these believers are "called to be" in 1 Corinthians 1:2?

43. Paul uses this word frequently when greeting believers in his letters to various churches. (See Ephesians 1:1, Philippians 1:1 and Colossians 1:2) How is this word appropriate since Paul also said that they were sexually immoral, thieves, drunkards and greedy in 1 Corinthians 6:9-10? (See 1 Corinthians 6:11 above)

So often we refer to ourselves as sinners (which we are), BUT all believers are *saints* because we have been set apart by a holy God and united to the Lord Jesus Christ by the regenerating work of the Spirit. This is precisely what is meant by POSITIONAL SANCTIFICATION!

## Salvation-Week 2

Amazingly, it gets even better!

Another significant truth about positional sanctification is that through union with Christ, the believer is set free from the power of sin. Did you catch that?! The *power of sin* is broken!

44. Read the following verses and fill in the blanks.

Romans 6:2 — We died to \_\_\_\_\_.

Romans 6:6 — We are *no longer enslaved* to \_\_\_\_\_.

Romans 6:14 — For \_\_\_\_\_ will *no longer have dominion* over you.

Romans 6:18 — We have been *set free* from \_\_\_\_\_.

Yes, our sin nature remains, and we must continue to battle it daily, however, we fight from a position of victory. Our new spiritual life in Christ empowers us to resist temptation, say no to sin and pursue ever-increasing holiness.

45. Think of a sin you are currently struggling with. How might believing the truth that this sin no longer has control over you, give you victory in this area?

### PROGRESSIVE SANCTIFICATION

Positional sanctification that began with regeneration is a past-tense, once and done, event. The believer is set free from both the penalty of sin and the power of sin. Progressive sanctification (that also begins with regeneration) continues throughout the life of a believer. It is a supernatural work, done in the inner nature of the believer, to conform the person to the image of Christ.

*2 Corinthians 3:18—And we all, with unveiled face, beholding the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into the same image from one degree of glory to another. For this comes from the Lord who is the Spirit.*

46. Underline the phrases "beholding the glory of the Lord" and "are being transformed into the same image."

47. Observe the tense of these verbs. How does this encourage you as a believer?

48. Finally, also observe which member of the Godhead this verse identifies as the divine agent of sanctification. How does this encourage you as a believer?

## salvation-Week 2

### The Means of Progressive Sanctification

Sanctification is not just *deciding* to do more good deeds and be a nicer person, instead, there is “such a change in the state of the soul, that sinful acts become more infrequent, and holy acts more and more habitual and controlling.”<sup>7</sup>

Often, progressive sanctification is thought of as God doing His part and the believer doing his part so that together the desired result of being more like Christ is accomplished. This is not the case!

*Romans 12:2—Do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewal of your mind, that by testing you may discern what is the will of God, what is good and acceptable and perfect.*

49. Circle the command “be transformed.”

Guess what? This phrase is in the *passive voice*, meaning, believers are not commanded to transform themselves, but they are *acted upon* to be transformed. The same passive voice is used in 2 Corinthians 3:18 (previous page.) Don't miss the significance of this! Sanctification is the work of the Holy Spirit in the inner person. But you may ask, “Aren't we supposed to *do something* when it comes to our sanctification?”

### TAKE ROOT

Go back to the chapter on GOD THE HOLY SPIRIT and review the section entitled FILLED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT.

Yes! Just as the gardener must cultivate the soil, plant the seeds, then water them for flowers and vegetables to grow, believers are to “put themselves in the way of those channels of sanctifying grace that the Spirit employs to conform Christ's people into his image.”<sup>8</sup>

50. Fill in the chart below to find out the “channels of sanctifying grace” the Holy Spirit uses to transform believers.

SCRIPTURE	CHANNEL of GRACE
Psalm 119:105; 2 Timothy 3:16-17; Hebrews 4:12	
Ephesians 6:18; 1 Thess. 5:17	
Hebrews 10:24-25	
Romans 5:3-4; James 1:2-4	
Hebrews 12:6	
John 15:5	

51. How does this change your thinking about “your part” in sanctification?

## Salvation-Week 2

52. How has the Holy Spirit used one or more of these channels of grace to conform you to Christ's image in the past year?
53. How might you think differently about suffering and trials now after learning they are channels of grace?
54. Is there a channel of grace you can "put yourself in the way of" more frequently? If so, which one and how do you plan on doing this?

The Bible speaks to another aspect of sanctification that is a bit more abstract. It is stated as "beholding His glory" in 2 Corinthians 3:18. As we behold the worth and value of God through reading, studying, and meditating on His word, through prayer, through fellowship with other believers, through trials and suffering, through divine discipline and through abiding and resting in Him, *we fall in love with Him!* Our soul finds satisfaction in Him alone, and we no longer seek satisfaction from the fleeting pleasures of sin. We hate what He hates, we desire what He desires; the result is increasing holiness in the life of the believer. MacArthur and Mayhue put it this way: "By fighting to behold the glory of Jesus by all the means of grace, the follower of Christ will be gradually transformed into his image from the inside out."<sup>9</sup>

***HALLELUJAH!***

### EVIDENCE OF SALVATION

When the Holy Spirit regenerates the inner person and begins His work of sanctification, outward evidence of this inner change should manifest itself in the believer's life.

55. Read the following verses and write down the evidence of salvation.

John 14:15

Galatians 5:22-23

Ephesians 2:10

Ephesians 4:24

Ephesians 4:25



## salvation-Week 2

Titus 2:7-8

James 3:17

1 John 3:14 and 3:23

Review the fruit of a changed life in Christ. Do you understand that we cannot produce this fruit on our own? It is the work of the Spirit living within us as we yield ourselves to Him.

***PRAISE GOD FOR THE HOLY SPIRIT'S WORK IN SALVATION AND SANCTIFICATION!***

### GLORIFICATION

Glorification is the final act of sanctification. It is the "radical transformation of both the body and the soul of believers, perfecting them in holiness, and thereby fitting them for eternal life on the new earth in perfect communion with the triune God."<sup>10</sup>

At last, believers will be free not only from the penalty and power of sin but from the very *presence* of sin also. We will be perfectly conformed to the image of Christ with glorified bodies just like His. We have so much to look forward to, dear sisters in Christ!

We will study glorification in more detail when we get to the chapter on *The End Times*.

### Conclusion

Now take a few minutes to review this entire chapter on salvation.

56. Considering all that you have learned about the roles of the Godhead in salvation, is it possible for anyone who is truly saved to *lose* their salvation? Explain why or why not.

57. We've learned that we need the gospel for salvation. Why also do we need it every day to live out our Christian life?

## Salvation-Week 2

58. In what areas of your life do you need to be reminding yourself of the gospel and in what specific ways can you preach it to yourself?

To conclude this chapter, set a timer for 5 minutes and meditate upon the truths you have learned about salvation. Then, give God the glory He so richly deserves by praying out loud the following prayer:

*I love You, Father, because You first loved me and sent Your Son to atone for my sins. And I stand amazed that Jesus, who by nature had always been God, did not cling to His rights as Your equal...that He laid aside all His privileges, to be born as a human being...that He totally humbled himself, submitting to the death of a common criminal, enduring infinite humiliation and pain...that on the cross You laid on Him the compressed weight of all my sin and guilt and shame, of all my griefs and sorrows, and He became sin for me, dying the death I deserved.*

*And how much I praise You that it was impossible for death to hold Him in its power...that You raised Him from the dead to be my Savior, to make me righteous in Your sight...that You highly exalted Him, giving Him a position infinitely superior to any conceivable command, authority, power, or control, both natural and supernatural. Thank you that He is the Great High Priest...that He is able to save me completely, for He lives forever and prays for me, and for all of us who have come to You through Him. I glorify You, my Father, with gratefulness and joy.*

*And I bow at the feet of Him who was dead and is now alive forever and ever. I exalt Him, I yield myself to Him, for He is worthy of the total response of my entire being: "Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power and riches and wisdom and might and honor and glory and blessing."<sup>11</sup>*

# Hymns for Meditation

## **“Amazing Grace”**

John Newton (1725-1807)

Stanza 5, John P. Rees (1828-1900)

Amazing grace! How sweet the sound  
That saved a wretch like me!  
I once was lost but now am found;  
Was blind, but now I see.

'Twas grace that taught my heart to fear,  
And grace my fears relieved.  
How precious did that grace appear  
The hour I first believed.

The Lord has promised good to me;  
His Word my hope secures.  
He will be shield and portion be  
As long as life endures.

Thro' many dangers, toils and snares  
I have already come.  
'Tis grace hath brought me safe thus far,  
And grace will lead me home.

When we've been there ten thousand years,  
Bright shining as the sun,  
We've no less days to sing God's praise  
Than when we'd first begun.

# Hymns for Meditation

## “In Christ Alone”

Keith Getty and Stuart Townend

In Christ alone my hope is found;  
He is my light, my strength, my song;  
This cornerstone, this solid ground,  
Firm through the fiercest drought and storm.  
What heights of love, what depths of peace,  
When fears are stilled, when strivings cease!

My comforter, my all in all—  
Here in the love of Christ I stand.

In Christ alone, Who took on flesh,  
Fullness of God in helpless babe!  
This gift of love and righteousness,  
Scorned by the ones He came to save.

Till on that cross as Jesus died,  
The wrath of God was satisfied;  
For ev'ry sin on Him was laid—  
Here in the death of Christ I live.

There in the ground His body lay,  
Light of the world by darkness slain;  
Then bursting forth in glorious day,  
Up from the grave He rose again!  
And as He stands in victory,  
Sin's curse has lost its grip on me;  
For I am His and He is mine—  
Bought with the precious blood of Christ.

No guilt in life, no fear in death—  
This is the pow'r of Christ in me;  
From life's first cry to final breath,  
Jesus commands my destiny.  
No pow'r of hell, no scheme of man,  
Can ever pluck me from His hand;  
Till He returns or calls me home—  
Here in the pow'r of Christ I'll stand.

# Appendix

## **Romans Road to Salvation**

### **Endnotes**

### **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 1

CLASS NOTES—WEEK 2

REFLECTIONS

# Romans Road to Salvation

A Way to Share the Gospel Using Verses from the Book of Romans

## THE WAY OF SALVATION

Romans 3:23

*For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.*

Romans 6:23

*For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.*

Romans 5:8

*But God shows his love for us in that while we were still sinners, Christ died for us.*

Romans 10:9-10

*Because if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.*

## ASSURANCE AFTER A PERSON PUTS THEIR FAITH IN CHRIST:

Romans 10:13

*For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved.*

Romans 5:1

*Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.*

Romans 8:1

*There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus.*

Romans 8:38-39

*<sup>38</sup>For I am sure that neither death nor life, nor angels nor rulers, nor things present nor things to come, nor powers, <sup>39</sup>nor height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord.*

# Endnotes

1. Melissa Petruzello, "John Newton English Clergyman and Writer," December 17, 2021, <https://www.britannica.com/biography/John-Newton>.
2. John Newton, "Amazing Grace," 1779, *The Celebration Hymnal*, (USA: Word/Integrity, 1997), 343.
3. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 485.
4. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 486.
5. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 615.
6. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 632.
7. Charles Hodge, *Systematic Theology*, (1871-1873; repr., Grand Rapids, Michigan: Eerdmans, 1968): 3:226, quoted in John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 639.
8. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 641.
9. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 643.
10. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 654.
11. Ruth Myers with Warren Myers, *31 Days of Praise* (New York: Multnomah Books, 1994), 46-47.

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*

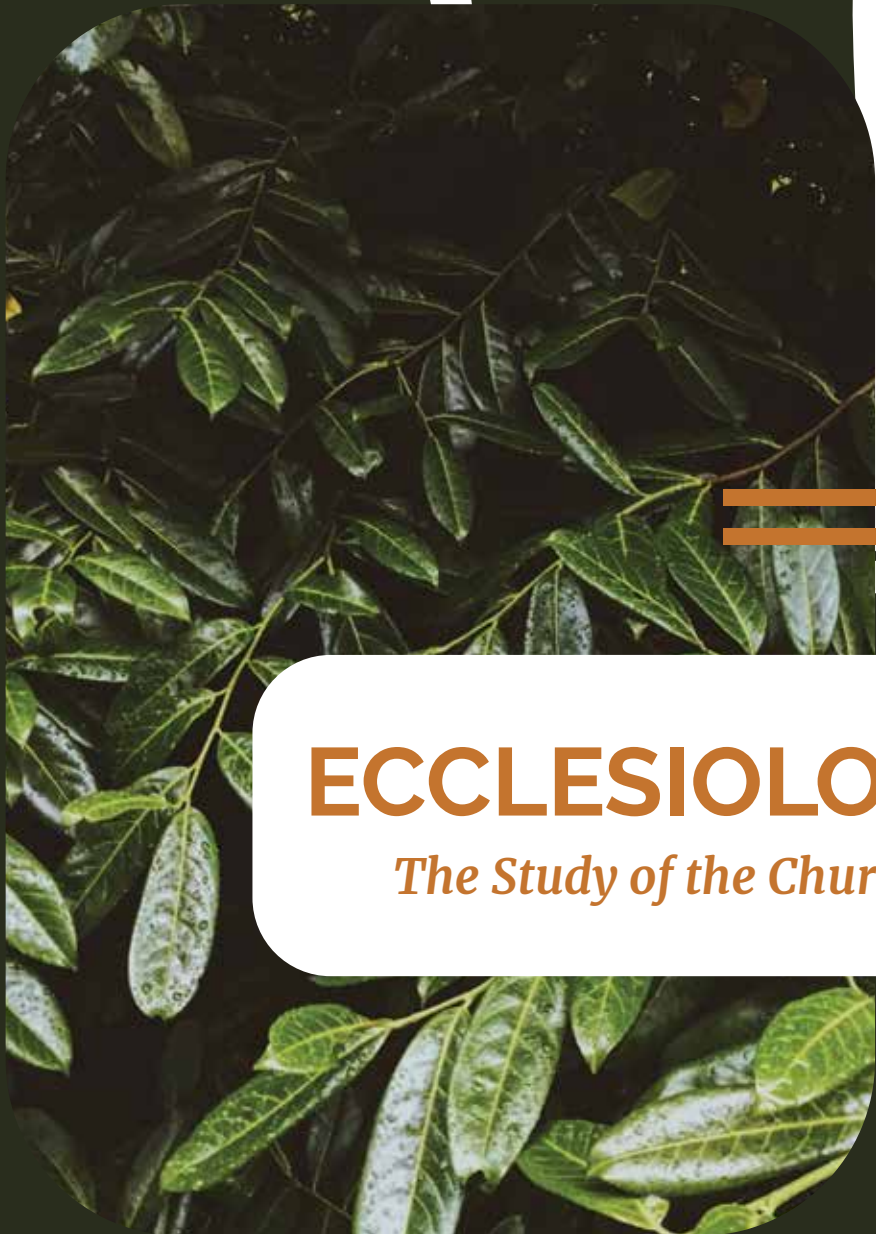


salvation

CLASS NOTES  
*week two*

salvation

reflections



# **ECCLESIOLOGY**

*The Study of the Church*



# The Church - Week One

## Introduction

Even before he was born on May 21<sup>st</sup>, 1832, James Hudson Taylor's godly parents prayed that he would one day be a missionary to China. When Hudson was 17 years old and home alone, he took a booklet from his father's bookshelf and began to read. The phrase, "The finished work of Christ" captured his attention. With startling clarity, he realized he could do nothing to earn his salvation and that day Hudson Taylor accepted Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior of his life.

Soon afterward, Hudson believed God was calling him to China. He prepared for missions work by learning basic medical skills, living frugally, exercising to increase his physical stamina, and learning the Chinese language. Intense Bible study and prayer were also a part of his preparations.

Four years later, at the age of 21, Hudson Taylor arrived in China. His initial attempts at sharing the gospel were frustrating. The Chinese people thought his European clothing peculiar and they were distracted from his message by his appearance. Also, Christianity was perceived to be a western religion. After much prayer and searching of the Scriptures, Hudson Taylor decided to do something radical for the time--wear Chinese clothing. He also shaved his forehead and grew a queue (Chinese braid). These changes resulted in Hudson Taylor receiving invitations into the homes of those interested in hearing more about Jesus. Like the apostle Paul, Hudson was willing to become "all things to all people" without compromising God's standards so that he could share the gospel message (1 Corinthians 9:22).

From humble beginnings as a young pioneering missionary until his death on June 3<sup>rd</sup>, 1905, Hudson Taylor participated in the building of God's church in China for over 50 years.

His life was a testimony to the words he stated, "The Great Commission is not an option to be considered; it is a commandment to be obeyed."<sup>1</sup>

How about us? Are we participating in the building of God's church? Are we prayerfully asking the Lord for opportunities to share the gospel with unbelievers? Are we imitating Christ while living in an ungodly culture? As members of God's family, are we discipling, edifying, serving, and equipping believers in the local church to which we belong? Are all these things being done for the glory of God?

***MAY THIS CHAPTER ON THE CHURCH ENCOURAGE AND MOTIVATE US TO BE ALL THAT GOD HAS CALLED US TO BE IN THE BUILDING OF HIS KINGDOM!***



*<sup>4</sup>As you come to him, a living stone rejected by men but in the sight of God chosen and precious, <sup>5</sup>you yourselves like living stones are being built up as a spiritual house, to be a holy priesthood, to offer spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.*

*1 Peter 2:4-5*

# What is “The Church”?

In the New Testament, the Greek word *ekklēsia* is translated church, which means “those who are called out.”

The church can be defined or described in the following way:

The church began on the day of Pentecost over 2,000 years ago. It is a world-wide body of people, called out by God the Father, united by faith in Jesus Christ His Son (its Head), and individually indwelt by the Holy Spirit. The church meets locally and regularly together to glorify God through worship, fellowship, the teaching of God's Word, discipleship, accountability and observance of communion and baptism in obedience to the Scriptures. Believers use their spiritual gifts to serve, edify and equip one another to become more like Christ and to evangelize the lost. The church will continue until the Lord Jesus takes her home at the Rapture. From then on, the church will be in the presence of her Savior forever.

Let us consider this more closely by looking at Jesus as the foundation of the Church and then several biblical metaphors for the church.

## Jesus, the Foundation of the Church

Jesus is the first person to use the word “church” in the New Testament. His use of the word is recorded for us in the book of Matthew as Jesus spoke with His disciples.

Read Matthew 16:13-18 below.

*Matthew 16:13-18—<sup>13</sup>Now when Jesus came into the district of Caesarea*

*Philippi, he asked his disciples, “Who do people say that the Son of Man is?”*

*<sup>14</sup>And they said, “some say John the Baptist, others say Elijah, and others*

*Jeremiah or one of the prophets.” <sup>15</sup>He said to them, “But who do you say*

*that I am?” <sup>16</sup>Simon Peter replied, “You are the Christ, the Son of the living*

*God.” <sup>17</sup>And Jesus answered him, “Blessed are you, Simon Bar-Jonah! For*

*flesh and blood has not revealed this to you, but my Father who is in*

*heaven. <sup>18</sup>And I tell you, you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church,*

*and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.*

1. How do the disciples answer Jesus' first question, “who do people say that the Son of Man is?”

### DID YOU KNOW

*Son of Man* was Jesus' favorite title for Himself. It is used 28 times in the book of Matthew. Its original source is Daniel 7:13-14. In these verses Daniel sees a vision where “one like a son of man” comes from heaven and is given authority to reign over an eternal kingdom made up of people from every nation and language. What a beautiful prophecy about Jesus, the God-man, who will one day rule as King of kings and Lord of lords!

## The Church-Week 1

- Continuing with Matthew 16:13-18, Jesus asked His disciples a second question, "Who do you say that I am?"

Write Simon Peter's profound response (verse 16) in the space below.

Who revealed this to him, according to verse 17?

Read verse 18 again. There is a play on words. The Greek word *petros* is translated "Peter" and means a piece of rock or a stone. The Greek word *petra* is translated "rock" and means a large stone, bedrock, or foundation.

- Go back to verse 18 and above the word *Peter* write "stone." Above the word *rock* write "bedrock."

What does Jesus mean when He says, "...and on *this rock* I will build my church..."? Does He mean Peter? Let's look at Scripture to answer these questions.

- Look up 1 Corinthians 3:11, 1 Corinthians 10:4 and 1 Peter 2:5-6. Now answer the question, "Who is the rock upon which the church is built?"

When Jesus said, "...and on *this rock* I will build my church..." He is referring to Peter's statement, "You are the Christ, the Son of the living God." This truth about Jesus is the bedrock foundation of the church.

- According to Matthew 16:18, whose church is it and who is ultimately responsible for building it?

Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, is the solid foundation of the church. He will build His church, one person at a time, and as we have seen throughout history, Christ's church will prevail until He returns to take her home. May the wonder of these truths motivate us to share the good news with others!

## Biblical Metaphors for the Church

"A picture is worth a thousand words". Well, there are not any photographs of the church in Scripture, but there are several word pictures or metaphors for the Church that are very helpful in defining what the church is.

6. Write down the imagery or word pictures used for the church for each verse below:

- 1 Corinthians 12:12-27
- Ephesians 2:20-22
- Ephesians 5:22-32 and Revelation 19:7

Take time to meditate on these beautiful word pictures of Christ and His beloved church.

7. How do these word pictures help you better understand the relationship between Christ and His church?

8. How do these word pictures help you better understand the relationship between believers in the church?

## The Early Church

We have learned that the church is founded on Jesus Christ, its cornerstone. It consists of individual members as members of a larger body, referred to as the 'body of Christ' Now we look at how the first church came together.

### The First Church

The account of the first church starts after Jesus resurrected from the dead and appeared to His disciples (and others) over a period of forty days, speaking to them about the kingdom of God. Acts 1:4-5 picks up the story:

*Acts 1:4-5—<sup>4</sup>And while staying with them he (Jesus) ordered them not to depart from Jerusalem but to wait for the promise of the Father, which, he said, "you heard from me; <sup>5</sup>for John baptized with water, but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit not many days from now."*

After this, Jesus ascended into heaven and ten days later the Holy Spirit was poured out upon Jesus' followers while they waited and prayed together in Jerusalem. It was Pentecost (fifty days after Passover) and thousands of Jewish people from various parts of the world were there to





## **The Growth of the Church**

The church began with Jewish people in Jerusalem, but soon spread to other people groups and areas of the known world. The book of Acts details the miraculous growth of the church. This fulfilled what Jesus said just before He ascended into heaven.

*Acts 1:8—But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria and to the end of the earth.*

### **SAMARIA**

15. Read Acts 8:1-8 and answer the following questions:

What surprising thing did God use to grow the church outward from Jerusalem?

Where did Philip go and what did he do?

What was the result, according to verses 7-8?

### **ASIA MINOR AND EUROPE**

16. Read Acts 9:1-31 and answer the following questions:

Focus on verse 15. to whom would Paul proclaim the name of Christ?

Paul went on to write 13 letters included in the New Testament. He established churches over the course of 3 missionary journeys, suffering much but always faithful to proclaim the name of his beloved Savior. May we, like Paul, be unashamed of the gospel, faithful to proclaim it and willing to suffer for it.

### **CAESAREA: THE FIRST GENTILE CHURCH**

In Acts 10, God gives Peter a vision to help him understand that salvation is not for the Jewish people only, but for anyone who puts their trust in Jesus Christ for forgiveness of sins. Peter travels to the home of a Roman centurion named Cornelius who has gathered his relatives and close friends to hear what Peter has to say. Peter shares the good news of Jesus Christ with those gathered in Cornelius' home.

The story continues in Acts 10:44-48:

*Acts 10:44-48—<sup>44</sup>While Peter was still saying these things, the Holy Spirit fell on all who heard the word. <sup>45</sup>And the believers from among the circumcised who had come with Peter were amazed, because the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out even on the Gentiles. <sup>46</sup>For they were hearing them speaking in tongues and extolling God. Then Peter declared, <sup>47</sup>“Can anyone withhold water for baptizing these people, who have received the Holy Spirit just as we have?” <sup>48</sup>And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to remain for some days.*

## The Church—Week 1

17. How did Peter know Cornelius and the people in his home were saved?
18. Why was it important for the salvation experience of these Gentiles to be exactly like the experience of the Jewish people at Pentecost (Acts 2:1-13)? What did this affirm?

These are just a few examples from Scripture documenting the growth of the church; a growth that continues today, over 2,000 years later. Just as Jesus said, He will build His church. Persecution only strengthens it!

# Purposes of the Church

God created the church for three primary purposes:

- 1) To glorify God
- 2) To encourage believers
- 3) To evangelize the lost

## To Glorify God

*Isaiah 42:8—I am the Lord; that is my name; my glory I give to no other, nor my praise to carved idols.*

The church glorifies God as its members individually bring glory to God and as it collectively exalts God.

19. Read the following passages and record how the church glorifies God through the **individual** members:

Matthew 5:16

John 15:5 and 15:8

Romans 12:1

### DID YOU KNOW

The Greek word translated “to glorify” is *endoxazomai* which means to be viewed in high esteem; having great intrinsic value.

## The Church—Week 1

20. Read the following passages and record how the church glorifies God **collectively** as the body of Christ:

Ephesians 3:7-10

Colossians 3:15-16

Hebrews 12:28

1 Peter 2:9

1 Peter 4:7-11

The church exists to glorify God and make much of Him. A God-glorifying church will exalt God and not man. It will focus foremost on God and glorifying Him.

### To Encourage Believers

Another primary purpose of the church is for edifying and encouraging believers as they glorify God.

*1 Corinthians 14:26—What then, brothers? When you come together, each one has a hymn, a lesson, a revelation, a tongue, or an interpretation. Let all things be done for building up.*

21. Read through 1 Corinthians 14:26 again. What do we know from this verse about who the letter of 1 Corinthians was written to?

#### DID YOU KNOW

The Greek word translated “to edify” is *oikodomia* which means the building up of character.

22. In his first letter to the Corinthians, Paul is correcting the attitudes and practices of the church at Corinth. They were divisive over many things and their worship services were chaotic. People were making much of themselves by their actions rather than making much of God. What overriding purpose does Paul give in 1 Corinthians 14:26 for all things that are to be done in the church worship service?

## The Church—Week 1

In Ephesians 4 verses 11 through 16, Paul makes it clear that the building up of the body of Christ is the job of all believers as they themselves are equipped by the leaders and teachers of the church.

*Ephesians 4:11-13—<sup>11</sup> And [Christ] gave the apostles, the prophets, the evangelists, the shepherds and teachers,<sup>12</sup> to equip the saints for the work of ministry, for building up the body of Christ,<sup>13</sup> until we all attain to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to mature manhood, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ,*

23. Read carefully back through the passage and mark it according to the following:

Verse 12:

- Circle "to" and write above it "why". (The "to" here indicates that Paul is telling us *why* Christ gave these people to the church.)
- Underline "equip the saints".
- Underline both "for"s.
- Draw an arrow from "equip the saints" to each "for".

In verse 13:

- Put a simple clock (just a circle with two hands) above "until" indicating that it is a word giving us the timing of things.
- Circle each "to".

24. Reading carefully through the passage again, for what purpose are the saints to be equipped by the apostles, the prophets, the shepherds and teachers?

25. For how long are the saints to continue this work?

26. This passage continues with a beautiful statement about the importance of Christians maturing. Read the rest of it below and then answer the questions that follow.

*Ephesians 4:14-16—<sup>14</sup> so that we may no longer be children, tossed to and fro by the waves and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by human cunning, by craftiness in deceitful schemes.<sup>15</sup> Rather, speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in every way into him who is the head, into Christ,<sup>16</sup> from whom the whole body, joined and held together by every joint with which it is equipped, when each part is working properly, makes the body grow so that it builds itself up in love.*

How important is it that all of the saints carry out the work of edifying one another until we all reach maturity?

## To Evangelize the Lost

In addition to glorifying God and edifying believers, the church is to follow the example of Jesus Christ by sharing the gospel with people throughout our daily lives and activities.

*Matthew 4:18-20—<sup>18</sup>While walking by the Sea of Galilee, he saw two brothers, Simon (who is called Peter) and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea, for they were fishermen. <sup>19</sup>And he said to them, “Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.” <sup>20</sup>Immediately they left their nets and followed him.*

### DID YOU KNOW

The Greek word translated “to evangelize is *euaggelizo* which means to announce good news by preaching the gospel.

27. What were the two men doing in this passage and what did Jesus say they would do next?

What was their immediate response?

What do you think it means to be a fisher of men? Do you see yourself as a fisher of men?

28. Read the following passage and record how church members can evangelize the lost:

Matthew 28:18-20

The gospel call to the unsaved should be a part of every Christ-centered and Bible-teaching church. Luke 15:7 tells us that one sinner who repents results in an eruption of contagious joy spreading throughout heaven with rejoicing.

Let's now circle back to the three purposes we identified in this portion of the study: to glorify God, to edify believers and to evangelize the lost.

29. How might understanding these purposes of the church inform how you evaluate the health of a church?

30. List some examples of how you can help fulfill the purposes of the church.

## The Church—Week 1

31. Based on the purposes of the church, would you expect the church to be composed of believers or unbelievers, why?

While unbelievers are invited to and accepted into our church services with open arms as we pray for their salvation and teach them the truth, they cannot be a member of the church without being in Christ. MacArthur and Mayhue say it well when they comment that “too many modern churches are dominated by unbelievers. Some even focus more attention on appealing to unbelievers than on caring for the redeemed. But that does not fit the biblical model. Churches that are courageously devoted to the Lord Jesus will be characterized by purity in both life and doctrine often causing the world to resist or avoid them.”<sup>2</sup>

# The Structure and Authority of the Local Church

Our God is a God of order. He has built order into the universe. He has ordained an order for the family and for the church. Speaking of the church, 1 Corinthians 14:40 says that *all things should be done decently and in order*.

## The Supreme Spiritual Authority Over the Church: Christ

*Colossians 1:18—And he [Christ] is the head of the body, the church. He is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, that in everything he might be preeminent.*

*Matthew 28:18—And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.”*

## Spiritual Leaders Within the Church: Pastors and Elders

Under the ultimate rule of Jesus Christ, God has gifted men to lead His church. We usually refer to these spiritual leaders as Pastors and Elders. Three Greek words are used interchangeably to describe these roles.

*Poimēn* can be translated as either “pastor” or “shepherd.”

*Episkopos* means “overseer” or “guardian.” Sometimes translated “bishop.”

*Presbyteros* is usually translated “elder.”

“Though all three terms are synonymous, each has a unique emphasis within the biblical context: ‘elder’ emphasizes a man’s maturity and personal character; ‘bishop’ speaks to his leadership role as protector of the flock; and ‘pastor’ emphasizes his sincere care for the people whom he serves.”<sup>3</sup>

## RESPONSIBILITIES

In the New Testament the roles of pastor and elder blend together. Pastors and elders are each to shepherd, oversee, and teach the flock of God. They are each to be examples of a holy life and servant leadership.

32. Look up the following verses and fill in the blanks.

*Acts 20:28—Pay careful attention to yourselves and to all the \_\_\_\_\_, in which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to \_\_\_\_\_ for the church of God, which he obtained with his own blood.*

*1 Peter 5:1-4—So I [Peter] exhort the elders among you...<sup>2</sup>shepherd the \_\_\_\_\_ of God that is among you, exercising \_\_\_\_\_, not under compulsion, but willingly, as God would have you; not for shameful gain, but eagerly; <sup>3</sup>not \_\_\_\_\_ over those in your charge, but being \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_. <sup>4</sup>And when the chief Shepherd appears, you will receive the unfading \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.*

### PASTOR-TEACHERS

*Ephesians 4:11-12—<sup>1</sup>And he gave the apostles, the prophets, the evangelists, the shepherds and teachers, <sup>2</sup>to equip the saints for the work of ministry, for building up the body of Christ.*

## TAKE ROOT

With what must a shepherd feed the flock of God in order to protect, nourish and build up the church? See 2 Timothy 3:16-17.

"In Ephesians 4:11, the Greek word *poimēn* can be translated as either 'pastor' or 'shepherd.' It describes the leadership, protection, and care that pastors exhibit toward the members of their flock... Although teaching can be identified as its own ministry, it is best to regard 'shepherds and teachers' in Ephesians 4:11 as describing two facets of a single office of pastoral leadership."<sup>4</sup>

MacArthur and Mayhue go on to summarize the role of the pastor this way: "Though structure and administration have their place, true power in the church comes through prayer and the ministry of the Word. Consequently, the pastor-teacher is to prioritize prayer and preaching rather than becoming overly encumbered with the management of other administrative issues."<sup>5</sup>

## QUALIFICATIONS

One of the first things Paul did when he established a new church was to appoint elders for them. On Paul's first missionary journey in Acts 14, we have the account of Paul and Barnabas preaching the gospel in Iconium, Lystra, Derbe, and Antioch. Before traveling on, Acts 14:23 says,

*Acts 14:23—And when they had appointed elders for them in every church, with prayer and fasting they committed them to the Lord in whom they had believed.*

Paul told Titus that he was left in Crete to put *what remained into order and appoint elders in every town as I directed you-* (Titus 1:5). Paul then goes on to spell out the qualifications for elders.

33. Read Titus 1: 6-9 and fill in the following chart. Then read 1 Timothy 3:1-7 and add any new insights from 1 Timothy at the bottom of the chart.



## The Church—Week 1

Qualification for an Elder, Titus 1:6-9		
	Must Be	Must Not Be
<b>Titus 1:6</b> As a husband he:		
<b>Titus 1:6</b> As a father his children:		
<b>Titus 1:7, 8</b> As God's steward he:		
<b>Titus 1:9</b> As entrusted with God's Word he:		
<b>Additional insights from 1 Timothy 3:1-7</b>		

**Table 1—Qualifications for an Elder, Titus 1:6-9**

God has given spiritual authority to these leaders of our church and therefore holds them to a very high standard. Scripture also clearly teaches that as fellow members of the body we are to live in submission to the leaders God has placed over us.

*1 Timothy 5:17—Let the elders who rule well be considered worthy of double honor, especially those who labor in preaching and teaching.*

*Hebrews 13:17—Obey your leaders and submit to them, for they are keeping watch over your souls, as those who will have to give an account. Let them do this with joy and not with groaning, for that would be of no advantage to you.*

34. Read Numbers 14:2, 26-30. When the people grumbled against Moses and Aaron who were they actually grumbling against? What was God's reaction to their grumbling?

35. How are you doing in this area? Do you grumble and gossip when you disagree with your spiritual leaders?

36. How can you be an encouragement to the leaders of your church?

## The Church-Week 1

### Deacons

The local church also selects men to serve as deacons. The word deacon comes from the Greek word *diákonos*, which is the ordinary word for servant.

### RESPONSIBILITIES

37. Acts 6:1-7 describes the need for the deacons as they were first appointed in the early church . From Acts 6:1-7, briefly describe why there was a need for these men to serve alongside the church leaders.

### QUALIFICATIONS

Deacons did not have ruling authority in the church, nevertheless they were held to a very high standard.

38. Read 1 Timothy 3:8-13 and fill in the chart below.

Qualification for a Deacon, 1 Timothy 3:8-13		
	Must Be	Must Not Be
<b>1 Timothy 3:8</b> As a man he:		
<b>1 Timothy 3:9</b> As a believer he:		
<b>1 Timothy 3:10</b> As to maturity he:		
<b>1 Timothy 3:11</b> Their wives:		
<b>1 Timothy 3:12</b> As a husband and father he:		

Table 2—Qualifications for a Deacon, 1 Timothy 3:8-13

***ELDERS AND DEACONS WHO FAITHFULLY SERVE GOD AS THEY SERVE THE CHURCH ARE A BLESSING FROM THE LORD TO YOU AND TO THE CHURCH. TAKE A MOMENT TO PRAY FOR AND THANK THE LORD FOR THESE MEN IN YOUR CHURCH!***

# The Church - Week Two

## Male Headship in the Church

One more note on the qualifications of the pastor/elder must be made as we pursue understanding God's design for the church. The church belongs to Christ who loves her and gave Himself up for her "that he might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word, so that he might present the church to himself in splendor, without spot or wrinkle or any such thing, that she might be holy and without blemish." (Ephesians 5:25-27) With this in mind we should be zealous to submit to God's design for the church.

1. Look back at the qualification for elder that you wrote down from Titus 1:6-9 in last week's homework. What do you see in these qualifications that makes it clear that elders must be men?

There are two key passages for understanding the male headship in the church further. These passages are 1 Corinthians 11:2-13 and 1 Timothy 2:11-14.

### 1 CORINTHIANS 11:2-13

We learn much about God's design for male headship in the church from 1 Corinthians. In this letter, Paul, under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, is instructing the Corinthian Christians to honor God's design for the authority structure of mankind in the church.

*1 Corinthians 11:3—But I want you to understand that the head of every man is Christ, the head of a wife is her husband, and the head of Christ is God.*

'Head' is used here figuratively as an indication of the one who has authority.

2. According to 1 Corinthians 11:3, what is the order of leadership that we see in these verses?
  1. God the Father
  2. -----
  3. -----
  4. -----

## TAKE ROOT

God has always chosen certain groups of people for specific types of service. For example, God specified particular roles and responsibilities for particular tribes, for the priests and for the elders of Israel.

Read Numbers 2-4 and 16-18 to see God's laws for Israel and the rebellion against them.

Rebellion against God's requirement of pastors to be men is nothing new!

## The Church—Week 2

3. Remember the example we have in Jesus Christ of willingly submitting Himself to God the Father though they are fully equal. Does God's design for women to submit to men indicate in any way that God considers women inferior to men?

Continuing in 1 Corinthians, chapter 11, Paul talks about head coverings of women in the church. This was an outward, cultural indication of authority and submitting to authority. In their culture, those with their heads uncovered were the ones with authority while those with their heads covered were showing submission to authority.

Keep this in your mind as you read verses 4 to 5:

*1 Corinthians 11:4-5—<sup>4</sup>Every man who prays or prophesies with his head covered dishonors his head, <sup>5</sup>but every wife who prays or prophesies with her head uncovered dishonors her head, since it is the same as if her head were shaven.*

Again, this is very culturally specific in the outward working of their attitudes. Paul is not endorsing or condemning head coverings—but he is endorsing the honoring of God's design for the authority structure of mankind and specifically within the church. He is equally condemning them for acting in ways contrary to God's design.

4. Given the above information, in the Corinthian culture, why would it be dishonoring to her husband for a woman to attend church with her head uncovered?

What kind of internal attitude would this display?

5. Which do you think God cares most about—the head covering or the heart attitude?

Lest we be tempted to think that the authority structure described here is cultural rather than God's design, verses 7 through 9 make it clear that it is rooted in God's creation order itself.

*1 Corinthians 11:7-9—<sup>7</sup>For a man ought not to cover his head, since he is the image and glory of God, but woman is the glory of man. <sup>8</sup>For man was not made from woman, but woman from man. <sup>9</sup>Neither was man created for woman, but woman for man.*

6. How is the authority structure of mankind reflected in the creation of man and woman?

## The Church—Week 2

Finally, verses 11 and 12 prevent abuses or overreach in this area by reminding men and women that they are interdependent on one another.

*1 Corinthians 11:11-12—<sup>11</sup>Nevertheless, in the Lord woman is not independent of man nor man of woman; <sup>12</sup>for as woman was made from man, so man is now born of woman. And all things are from God.*

### 1 TIMOTHY 2:11-14

Another key text on the male headship of the church is 1 Timothy 2:11-14.

*1 Timothy 2:11-14—<sup>11</sup>Let a woman learn quietly with all submissiveness. <sup>12</sup>I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man; rather, she is to remain quiet. <sup>13</sup>For Adam was formed first, then Eve; <sup>14</sup>and Adam was not deceived, but the woman was deceived and became a transgressor.*

7. CONTEXT is vital. We need to look at the verses which immediately follow these verses. What is the subject of 1 Timothy 3:1-7?

Now let's examine the verses from chapter 2 more closely.

*<sup>11</sup>Let a woman learn...*

In the original Greek this is an imperative. In sharp contrast to the culture of the day the early church was actually commanded to allow women to be taught. However, they were not to take this privilege as an excuse to rule over men in an unbiblical manner.

*<sup>11</sup>Let a woman learn quietly with all submissiveness.*

John MacArthur explains, "Silence (quiet) and submission (to line up under) were to characterize the role of a woman as a learner in the context of the church assembly. Paul explains his meaning in verse 12: Women are to be silent by not teaching, and they are to demonstrate submission by not usurping the authority of the pastors or elders."<sup>6</sup>

*<sup>12</sup>I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man...*

Concerning 1 Timothy 2:12 Wayne Grudem states, "Here Paul is speaking about the church when it is assembled (see vv. 8-9). In such a setting, Paul says, 'I permit no woman to *teach* or to *have authority over men*' (v.12). These are functions that are carried out by the elders of the church, and especially by what we know as a pastor in contemporary church situations. It is specifically these functions unique to elders that Paul prohibits for women in the church."<sup>7</sup>

8. What reason do we see Paul give in verse 13 for why a woman should not have spiritual authority over a man?

## The Church—Week 2

9. Is this based on the culture of Paul's time or on something else?

If this is true, then will this teaching change over time?

### CONCLUSION

While the Bible clearly teaches that women should not have any role which places them in spiritual leadership over a man, it also clearly upholds the truth that all people, male and female, are given spiritual gifts which are to be used for the edifying of the body of believers.

*1 Peter 4:10—As each has received a gift, use it to serve one another, as good stewards of God's varied grace.*

Although women are not to be in a position of *spiritual* authority in the church, in all other roles they are free to exercise their spiritual gifts for the building up of the body.

10. In your own words, based on what we have studied here, how would you answer someone who asks why women cannot be pastors or elders?

## Church Discipline

There is one more topic that needs to be covered under the heading of "The Structure and Authority of the Church," and that is church discipline. We will consider the purpose of church discipline and the process of church discipline.

### THE PURPOSE OF CHURCH DISCIPLINE

We can feel like church discipline is an unloving thing to do. Certainly by the world's wisdom it would be more loving to look the other way and hope that the sinning member will stay in the church and eventually be convicted to turn from their sin. However, God's wisdom is far above our wisdom and His ways above our ways.

There are three main purposes for church discipline:<sup>8</sup>

1. Restoration and reconciliation of the believer who is going astray.
2. To keep sin from spreading to others.
3. To protect the purity of the church and the honor of Christ.

## The Church-Week 2

### RESTORATION AND RECONCILIATION OF THE BELIEVER WHO IS GOING ASTRAY

The primary goal of church discipline is for the sinning brother to repent and be reconciled to God and to his fellow believers. This is actually an act of love and mercy!

11. Read Hebrews 12:5-11. Whom does the Lord discipline and why?
12. Look up the following verses and note what they say about what attitude people should have as they come alongside someone to confront them with sin.

Galatians 6:1

Ephesians 4:15

How does this demonstrate the purpose of restoration and reconciliation?

13. According to Matthew 18:15, if you confront a brother with his sin and he listens, what is the outcome?

14. According to James 5:19-20, what is the goal of confronting someone in their sin?

Is church discipline easy? No! It is hard to confront someone you love with their sin, but it is more loving than to allow them to continue in it.

### TO KEEP SIN FROM SPREADING TO OTHERS

Just as a small bit of leaven spreads through the whole loaf of bread so sin can spread through a body of believers with alarming speed.

An example of this warning to a church is found in 1 Corinthians 5:1-6.

*1 Corinthians 5:1-6—<sup>1</sup>It is actually reported that there is sexual immorality among you, and of a kind that is not tolerated even among pagans, for a man has his father's wife. <sup>2</sup>And you are arrogant! Ought you not rather to mourn? Let him who has done this be removed from among you. <sup>3</sup>For though absent in body, I am present in spirit; and as if present, I have already pronounced judgment on the one who did such a thing. <sup>4</sup>When you are assembled in the name of the Lord Jesus and my spirit is present, with the power of our Lord Jesus, <sup>5</sup>you are to deliver this man to*

## The Church-Week 2

*Satan for the destruction of the flesh, so that his spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord. <sup>6</sup>Your boasting is not good. Do you not know that a little leaven leavens the whole lump?*

15. According to these verses what discipline should be meted out to this man living in open sexual immorality?

What two reasons are given for this in these verses?

16. What does verse 6 mean in the context of sin and the church?

17. According to Hebrews 12:15 what happens when we allow a root of bitterness to spring up in our heart?

18. Keep in mind that all sin in the church is not of gross moral failure. What "smaller," more common sins have you seen spread through a church body?

In a later section we will examine ways we are and are *not* to treat others in the body. These are not just suggestions, they are commands. No one is able to perfectly love others as Christ loved us, yet failure to do so is sin and must be confessed, be dealt with, and not be allowed to spread.

### TO PROTECT THE PURITY OF THE CHURCH AND THE HONOR OF CHRIST

Over and over in the New Testament believers are exhorted to maintain personal and doctrinal purity. When they fail to do so it brings dishonor to the name of Jesus.

19. Consider what Paul said to the Jewish leaders in Romans 2:24. He was berating them for claiming to be teachers of the law when they did not keep it themselves.

*For as it is written, "The name of God is \_\_\_\_\_ among the Gentiles because of you."*

20. Look back at 1 Corinthians 5:1-6 printed above.

This man's sin was such as was not \_\_\_\_\_ even among \_\_\_\_\_.

What should have been the church's attitude toward his sin? Why?

21. Read 2 Peter 3:13-14. How does Jesus want to find His bride when He returns?



## The Church-Week 2

### THE PROCESS OF CHURCH DISCIPLINE

The main passage of Scripture which deals with church discipline is Matthew 18:15-17.

*Matthew 18:15-17—<sup>15</sup>If your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. <sup>16</sup>But if he does not listen, take one or two others along with you, that every charge may be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses. <sup>17</sup>If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector.*

22. According to this passage what are the four steps in church discipline?

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.

#### STEP ONE

The first step when someone has sinned against you or you become aware of a pattern of sin in someone's life is to go directly to them to talk about it. This is done in a spirit of gentleness and mourning with them over their sin. Never with an attitude of condemnation or self-righteousness. From our study on the total depravity of man we know that it is only by God's grace that we ourselves are not enslaved to or entangled in sin. (If we are entangled in a pattern of sin ourselves, we need to deal with that first! Matthew 7:3-5)

23. Read 1 Timothy 5:13 and then consider the first step to take when someone sins against you. What do you avoid by going directly to the person who has sinned against you?

24. What are you to do if your brother does repent when you go to him? Just a few verses later in Matthew 18:21-22 Jesus gives the answer.

25. While Matthew 18 is specifically dealing with *brothers*, that is, fellow believers within the church, what advantage would there be in following a modified form of these steps when you have a dispute with your neighbors or co-workers, for example?

## The Church-Week 2

### STEP TWO

26. Back to Matthew 18:15-17, if you go to your brother and tell him his fault, and your brother does not acknowledge his sin and repent, what are you to do next?
27. There was precedence for this in the Old Testament law. Read Deuteronomy 19:15-19. What does this requirement prevent?

### STEP THREE

We have seen that church discipline is to start at the most private level and slowly proceed with the goal that your brother will repent, and the matter need go no further. However, if he still refuses to listen, then the charges against him are to be taken before the whole church. There everyone will hear the charges at one time. Another opportunity for repentance and restoration will be given and judgment will be made.

### STEP FOUR

If this person's heart has become so hardened that he still refuses to repent, then he is to be treated *as a Gentile and a tax collector*. We need some cultural context to understand and apply this.

"Ancient synagogues were not only assembly halls for prayer and study but community centers where discipline would be inflicted on an erring member of the community. This discipline could take a variety of forms, including public beating, but the most severe were several levels of dismissal from the community. After the most severe level of discipline the offending member would be treated as a pagan [Gentile] instead of as a Jew. Pagans and tax gatherers alike—tax gatherers were seen as agents of a pagan government—were excluded from the religious life of the Jewish community. Giving a person a final warning before a court would take action was an act of mercy."<sup>9</sup>

As with the ancient Jewish synagogue, the early church was a very tight-knit community and to be put out was a serious step. The unrepentant brother would be ostracized from the fellowship and therefore, his friends.

28. Read 1 Corinthians 5:11-13. Is there a difference in how we treat those inside the church (who profess to be Christians) and those outside the church?
29. Again, looking at 1 Corinthians 5:11-13, is church discipline to be limited to only sexual immorality?

Church discipline should always begin at the lowest level and only escalate when the sinner remains unrepentant. The goal is two-fold: to restore the sinner to fellowship with God and man, and to maintain the unity and purity of the church.

# Observances of the Church

We will now look at the two ordinances which Jesus instructed believers to observe: Baptism (Matthew 28:19) and The Lord's Supper (Luke 22:19-20).

## Baptism

Before we begin our discussion of baptism it is important to remember what we have already studied about salvation. In Ephesians 1:4 we saw that those who are saved were chosen in Christ before the foundation of the world. We also saw that there is nothing we can add to our salvation. It is all accomplished by a work of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Salvation and baptism are closely linked, but as with works, salvation always comes first. Works and baptism follow salvation as an act of love and obedience for what Jesus has done for us.

Baptism was commanded by Jesus as part of His command to go and make disciples of all nations. This is recorded for us in Matthew 28.

*Matthew 28:19—Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit.*

We see Peter do this very thing as the church is born. Acts 2 recounts Peter's sermon to the amazed crowd as they gathered because of the coming of the Holy Spirit upon the disciples at Pentecost

*Acts 2:38-41—<sup>38</sup>And Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. <sup>39</sup>For the promise is for you and for your children and for all who are far off, everyone whom the Lord our God calls to himself." <sup>40</sup>And with many other words he bore witness and continued to exhort them, saying, "Save yourselves from this crooked generation." <sup>41</sup>So those who received his word were baptized, and there were added that day about three thousand souls.*

30. This passage clearly ties repentance (salvation) and baptism together. According to verse 38 which comes first?

31. How does verse 41 clarify how salvation and baptism are related?

### DID YOU KNOW

The Greek word translated "baptize" is *baptizō* which means to dip, to immerse, to wash, or bathe.

## The Church—Week 2

The New Testament speaks of two kinds of baptism: *spiritual* baptism which occurs at the moment of salvation, and *symbolic water* baptism as an outward symbol publicly declaring that you have repented and put your faith in Christ for salvation.

### SPIRITUAL BAPTISM

We know from our study of the Holy Spirit and salvation that the Holy Spirit indwells and seals a believer at the moment they repent of their sin and place their faith in Jesus Christ alone for salvation. At this moment they become part of the church, part of the body of Christ. This is accomplished through the work of the Spirit within them. Paul describes this reality in 1 Corinthians 12:13.

*1 Corinthians 12:13—For in one Spirit we are all baptized into one body—Jews or Greeks, slaves or free—and all were made to drink of one Spirit.*

Spiritual baptism or the indwelling of the Holy Spirit is not a separate blessing to be sought by believers. It is the normal experience of all believers as promised by God in His Word.

*Ephesians 1:13-14—<sup>13</sup>In [Christ] you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, <sup>14</sup> who is the guarantee of our inheritance until we acquire possession of it, to the praise of his glory.*

At the moment of salvation we have all of the Spirit that we will have in this life. However, as we walk in greater and greater submission to the leading of the Holy Spirit, the Spirit's presence becomes more and more evident in our lives!

### WATER BAPTISM AS AN OUTWARD SYMBOL

In the New Testament water baptism immediately followed faith in Christ for salvation. As it still is today, water baptism is the public testimony of one's faith in Christ, or as it is often put, "Baptism is the outward symbol of an inward reality." The verses above clearly show that water baptism does not save. These people were already in Christ before they were baptized.

#### Philip and the Ethiopian Eunuch

In Acts 8:26-40 we have the account of Philip being visited by the angel of the Lord and told to go to a desert place on a road south of Jerusalem. He obeyed and encountered an Ethiopian eunuch seated in his chariot reading the prophet Isaiah. Philip engages him in conversation and, beginning where the eunuch was reading, told him the good news about Jesus.

32. Read Acts 8:36-39

What is the eunuch's response to this good news?

## The Church-Week 2

### Peter and Cornelius

Acts 10 recounts God's sending Peter to Cornelius, a Gentile. (If you are not familiar with this event it would be helpful to read the entire chapter for context.) As a good Jew Peter was reluctant to go to the home of a Gentile, but God made it clear to Peter that he was to do so. Upon arriving Peter preached the good news of peace through Jesus Christ.

33. Read Acts 10: 43-48

According to verse 44 what did the Gentiles who believed and received forgiveness of their sins through Jesus receive?

34. What was the command Peter gave to those who had believed and received this gift (verse 48)?

### The Symbol of Baptism by Immersion

The Cornerstone Bible Church Statement of Faith states, "We believe that Christian baptism is the single immersion of a believer in water. This immersion is a solemn and beautiful emblem showing identification with the crucified, buried, and risen Savior through whom we died to sin and rose to a new life. It is a sign of fellowship and identification with the visible body of Christ (Acts 2:41; Romans 6:1-7)."<sup>10</sup>

35. Baptism by immersion is often referred to as believer's baptism. The New Testament example is that people repented of their sins and immediately were baptized. This public testimony often came at great cost in a culture which was hostile to Christianity. Reread Matthew 28:19 at the beginning of the section on baptism. Whom are we instructed to baptize?

36. Read Romans 6:3-4 and note the beautiful symbolism of baptism by immersion.

What does being immersed in the water depict?

What does coming up out of the water picture?

Baptism does not save. Before we are quickened by the Holy Spirit, we are dead in our sins. We can add nothing to the work Christ has done on our behalf. However, after we are saved, as an act of obedience and love for Jesus we are to publicly identify with Him in baptism.

## The Lord's Supper

Unlike baptism which is intended to be celebrated once soon after conversion, The Lord's Supper, or Communion as it is often called, is to be celebrated regularly. We will begin by looking at Passover, the origin of the Lord's Supper.

### PASSOVER

The Israelites were slaves in Egypt. God heard their groaning and promised to deliver them. He sent Moses and Aaron to tell Pharaoh that he must let the people go. Nine times God sent plagues upon Egypt and Pharaoh promised to let the people leave. However, each time when God removed the plague, Pharaoh changed his mind. Finally, God said there was one last plague and then the people would be free: the death of the firstborn. "Thus says the LORD: 'About midnight I will go out in the midst of Egypt, and every firstborn in the land of Egypt shall die...' (Exodus 11:4-5)."

### TAKE ROOT

If you are not familiar with the events of the first Passover, it would be helpful to read all of Exodus 12.

But, for the people of Israel God provided a way for their firstborn to be saved from death. On the 10<sup>th</sup> day of the month, they were to take a lamb, a perfect lamb without blemish, a male a year old and keep it until the 14<sup>th</sup> day. At twilight they were to kill their lamb, roast it and eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs. They were also to take some of the blood of the lamb and put it on the two doorposts and lintel of their house.

*Exodus 12:12-14—<sup>12</sup>For I will pass through the land of Egypt that night, and I will strike all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both man and beast; and on all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgments: I am the LORD. <sup>13</sup>The blood shall be a sign for you, on the houses where you are. And when I see the blood, I will pass over you, and no plague will befall you to destroy you, when I strike the land of Egypt. <sup>14</sup>This day shall be for you a memorial day, and you shall keep it as a feast to the LORD; throughout your generations, as a statute forever; you shall keep it as a feast.*

37. What sign would save one from death?

38. According to verse 14, how long were they to keep the feast of Passover?

During that first Passover night the LORD indeed delivered all those with the blood over their door from death. He parted the Red Sea for them, and they passed from slavery to freedom.

## JESUS INSTITUTES THE LORD'S SUPPER

The night before His crucifixion Jesus was eating the Passover meal with His disciples. MacArthur and Mayhue lay out the traditional way the Passover meal was observed at the time of Jesus.<sup>11</sup>

*1 Corinthians 11:23-26—<sup>23</sup>For I received from the Lord what I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night when he was betrayed took bread, <sup>24</sup>and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, "This is my body which is for you. Do this in remembrance of me." <sup>25</sup>In the same way also he took the cup, after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me." <sup>26</sup>For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.*

- \*The first cup of wine was followed by bitter herbs dipped in a fruit sauce and eaten while the message of Passover was explained.
- \*The first part of the Hallel (Psalm 113-118) was sung. (Hallel is Hebrew for "praise.")
- \*After the second cup was passed, unleavened bread would be broken and passed. It would have been at this point that Jesus "took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it and gave it to them, saying, 'This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me;'" (Luke 22:19).
- \*The roasted lamb was eaten.
- \*After prayer the third cup was passed and the rest of the Hallel was sung. It was the third cup that Jesus transformed into the cup of Communion. Luke writes, "And likewise [Jesus took] the cup after they had eaten, saying, 'This cup that is poured out for you is the new covenant in my blood.'" (Luke 22:20). [This cup was called the "Cup of Redemption"!]
- \*The fourth and final cup of Passover, which looked forward to the coming kingdom, was passed just before leaving.

39. What parallels can you draw between the first Passover and the Passover the night before the crucifixion of Jesus?

40. Celebrating Passover is a way for Jewish parents to tell their children the story of God's great deliverance of His people from bondage in Egypt. What are believers to remember when they celebrate The Lord's Supper?

41. Communion doesn't just look back on Jesus' death; what hope does He give us in 1 Corinthians 11:26?

## The Church-Week 2

### INSTRUCTIONS AND WARNINGS

The Lord's Supper is a time to remember Jesus' life given to all who will believe. It is a time to rejoice in our salvation and look forward to His return. It is a sacred, holy time—one never to be taken lightly. The Bible gives a serious warning to those who partake of The Lord's Supper in an unworthy manner.

42. Read 1 Corinthians 11:17-34. (Context - Church "love feasts," or fellowship suppers, usually ended by eating the Lord's Supper together.)

Note the problems Paul reprimands the Corinthian church for in relation to the Lord's Supper and fill in the blanks below.

Verse 18: When you come together as a church, I hear that there are \_\_\_\_\_ among you.

Verse 21: For in eating, each one goes ahead with his \_\_\_\_\_. One goes \_\_\_\_\_, another gets \_\_\_\_\_.

After summarizing the meaning of the Lord's Supper (verses 23-26) Paul gives a stern warning to the church (verses 27-32).

*1 Corinthians 11:27-32—<sup>27</sup>Whoever, therefore, eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty concerning the body and blood of the Lord. <sup>28</sup>Let a person examine himself, then, and so eat of the bread and drink of the cup. <sup>29</sup>For anyone who eats and drinks without discerning the body eats and drinks judgment on himself. <sup>30</sup>That is why many of you are weak and ill, and some have died. <sup>31</sup>But if we judged ourselves truly, we would not be judged. <sup>32</sup>But when we are judged by the Lord, we are disciplined so that we may not be condemned along with the world.*

43. What are we to do before taking Communion?

44. What is the penalty for eating and drinking without discerning the body?

45. Whom are we to judge?

46. Is everyone who is weak or ill or who dies guilty of taking Communion in an unworthy manner? (See John 9:2-3.)



## The Church—Week 2

47. Why does the Lord judge believers? What is the ultimate purpose of His judgment?

The church in Corinth came together for a "love feast," but they were anything but loving. There were divisions among them. Apparently, the wealthy had plenty to eat and drink, but didn't share it with those who had little.

### SUMMARY

The Cornerstone Bible Church Statement of Faith:

"We believe that the Lord's Supper is a commemoration of His death until He comes and should be preceded always by solemn self-examination (1 Corinthians 11:23-28; Matthew 8:18, 20; Acts 2:41-42). The elements used in Communion are only representative of the flesh and blood of Christ, but participation in the Lord's Supper is nevertheless actual communion with the risen Christ (1 Corinthians 10:16)."<sup>12</sup>

## Living as Members of the Church

As believers we are the body of Christ, and each represent Him in different ways. One way we show the world that we are believers is how we behave toward one another. We are called to treat each other differently than the way the world does. We should stand out for our love and service as we fulfill God's greatest commandment to love Him and love each other. As we live our lives, we should be aware that there is a world watching and if we can love them and each other the way Christ did, they will certainly take notice.

*Philippians 2:3-11—<sup>3</sup>Do nothing from selfish ambition or conceit, but in humility count others more significant than yourselves. <sup>4</sup>Let each of you look not only to his own interests, but also to the interests of others. <sup>5</sup>Have this mind among yourselves, which is yours in Christ Jesus, <sup>6</sup>who, though he was in the form of God, did not count equality with God a thing to be grasped, <sup>7</sup>but emptied himself, by taking the form of a servant, being born in the likeness of men. <sup>8</sup>And being found in human form, he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross. <sup>9</sup>Therefore God has highly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that is above every name, <sup>10</sup>so that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, in heaven and on earth and under the earth, <sup>11</sup>and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.*

48. Define the word selfish in your own terms.

49. According to verse 3 above, should selfish ambition or conceit ever be a motive for our actions?

## *The Church-Week 2*

50. In the world we often hear phrases such as; "look out for number one", "be your best self" and "you do you." How does this passage stand in opposition to these phrases?
51. According to verse 4 we see that it is ok to look out for our own interests. We can and should take care of ourselves, but who else should be considered?
52. Let's now focus on our ultimate example, Jesus Christ. According to this passage, what form did Jesus take?
53. Fill in the blanks below from verse 8  
He \_\_\_\_\_ himself by becoming \_\_\_\_\_ to the point of \_\_\_\_\_ , even death on a cross.
54. How well are you following Jesus's example with humility and obedience?
55. We have looked at a broad overview of how we should act in the church and now we will focus on more specific characteristics we should and should not portray. Read the passages below and record ways we are NOT to treat one another:
- Romans 14:13
- Romans 16:17
- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- 2 Thessalonians 3:11-12
- 2 Timothy 2:23
- Why do you think we are commanded to not treat each other in the ways mentioned above?
56. Which of these examples is most convicting to you and why? How can you take steps today to change these patterns in your life?

## The Church—Week 2

57. Now read these passages and record ways we ARE to treat one another:

Romans 12:10

Romans 15:7

Romans 15:14

Galatians 5:13

Ephesians 4:32

Hebrews 10:24-25

James 5:16

58. After reading these passages, list some things you can do in your current church body to lift up and encourage other believers?

In preparation for His crucifixion, Jesus ministers to his disciples by showing them how to love one another. He kneels down and washes every one of their feet, including Judas who would betray Him, and shows them what love truly is and how to love correctly. Love is not only a feeling; love is an action. Jesus demonstrates love in action before going on to give a "new commandment" in John 13.

*John 13:34-35—<sup>34</sup>A new commandment I give to you, that you love one another: just as I have loved you, you also are to love one another. <sup>35</sup>By this all people will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another.*

59. Are there people in your life that are difficult to love? Why do you think that is the case?

60. How about people that are easy to love, why do you think those loving feeling come naturally with these people?

## *The Church-Appendix*

61. In general, how well are you doing with the charge to love one another, whether easy or difficult?

62. List practical steps you can take to improve this area of your life.

You can see that as members of the church we are a family. Brothers and sisters in Christ and united as children under one Father and sharing the same Spirit. We will be together for all of eternity so let's make sure to love each other well.

## **Conclusion**

The church is described as the bride of Christ in the New Testament. During biblical times the bridegroom and the bride were separated during the betrothal period. They are reunited when they come together in marriage. We are now in this period of betrothal where we experience a foretaste of heaven. Once we get to heaven the true marriage will begin and we will see how the church was made to be in its perfect form. We will taste the fullness of God's glory as we cry out with every other saint in worship saying,

***"HOLY, HOLY, HOLY, IS THE LORD GOD ALMIGHTY WHO WAS AND IS AND IS TO COME!"  
(REVELATION 4:8).***

# Hymn for Meditation

## **“The Church’s One Foundation”**

S. J. Stone (1866)

The Church's one foundation  
Is Jesus Christ her Lord;  
She is His new creation  
By water and the Word:  
From heav'n He came and sought her  
To be His holy Bride;  
With His own blood He bought her,  
And for her life He died.

Elect from every nation,  
Yet one o'er all the earth,  
Her charter of salvation,  
One Lord, one faith, one birth;  
One holy Name she blesses,  
Partakes one holy food,  
And to one hope she presses,  
With every grace endued.

'Mid toil and tribulation,  
And tumult of her war,  
She waits the consummation  
Of peace for evermore;  
Till, with the vision glorious,  
Her longing eyes are blest,  
And the great Church victorious  
Shall be the Church at rest.

Yet she on earth hath union  
With God the Three in One,  
And mystic sweet communion  
With those whose rest is won:  
O happy ones and holy!  
Lord, give us grace that we,  
Like them, the meek and lowly,  
In love may dwell with Thee.

# Appendix

**Endnotes**

**Additional Resources**

**Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES

REFLECTIONS

## Endnotes

1. "James Hudson Taylor Quotes," Goodreads, accessed April 19, 2022, [https://www.goodreads.com/author/quotes/4693730.James\\_Hudson\\_Taylor](https://www.goodreads.com/author/quotes/4693730.James_Hudson_Taylor).
2. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 776.
3. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 759.
4. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 757.
5. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 758.
6. John MacArthur, "MacArthur Bible Commentary," 1 Timothy 2:11.
7. Wayne Grudem, *Systematic Theology* (Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan), 938.
8. Grudem, "Systematic Theology," 894-896.
9. Craig S. Keener, *The IVP Bible Background Commentary: New Testament* (IVP Press: Downers Grove, Illinois), Matthew 18:17, e-Sword edition.
10. "What We Believe: The Church," Cornerstone Bible Church, accessed April 16, 2022, <https://www.discovercbc.org/what-we-believe/>.
11. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 787.
12. "What We Believe: The Church," Cornerstone Bible Church, accessed April 16, 2022, <https://www.discovercbc.org/what-we-believe/>.

## Additional Resources

Taylor, Dr. and Mrs. Howard. *Hudson Taylor's Spiritual Secret*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2009.

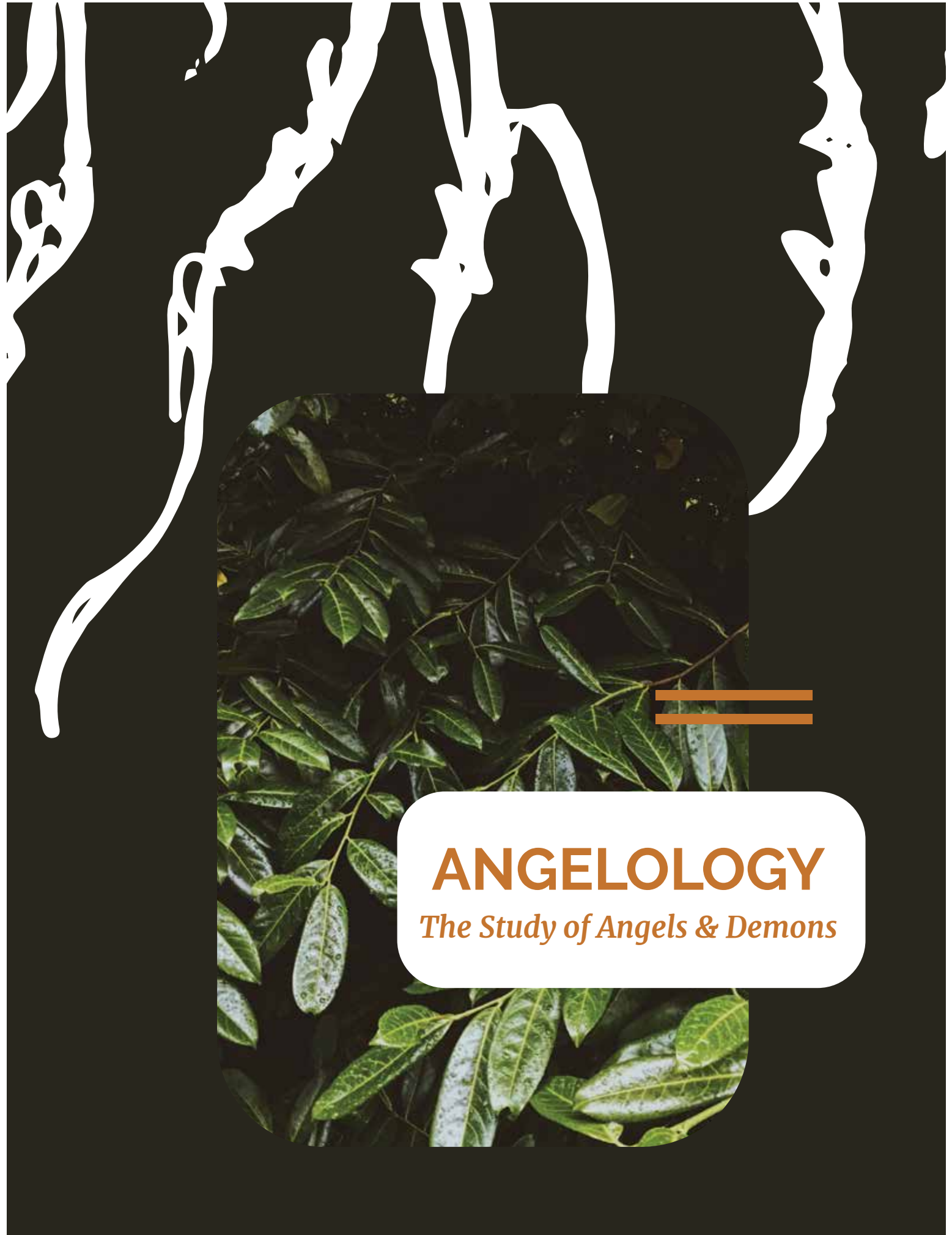
CLASS NOTES  
*week one*



CLASS NOTES  
*week two*



*reflections*



# ANGELOLOGY

*The Study of Angels & Demons*



# Angels and Demons - Week One

## Introduction

John Gibson Paton came into the world on May 24<sup>th</sup> 1824, in a thatched-roofed cottage in the south of Scotland. He was the first of eleven children born into the godly home of James and Janet Paton. Before his twelfth birthday, John G. Paton surrendered his life to Christ. When he was 23 years old, Paton became a missionary with the Glasgow City Mission and was assigned to one of the poorest districts in the city. After a year and a half of house-to-house visitations, praying with the people, helping them in whatever way possible and inviting them to Sunday evening Evangelistic Services, one of his greatest joys was having seventy to one hundred young men and women consistently attend his Bible study class. Thus began an urban ministry that continued to grow as Paton saw lives transformed by the gospel. However, at age 32, John G. Paton would leave this fruitful ministry in obedience to God's call to overseas missions. He went to the New Hebrides Islands, a string of islands in the South Pacific known today as Vanuatu. He desired to share the gospel with the people there, many who practiced cannibalism.

Following is an account of a harrowing and supernatural experience that occurred while he and his wife were on the mission field:

"The Reverend John G. Paton, pioneer missionary in the New Hebrides Islands, told a thrilling story involving the protective care of angels. Hostile natives surrounded his mission headquarters one night, intent on burning the Patons out and killing them. John Paton and his wife prayed all during that terror-filled night that God would deliver them. When daylight came they were amazed to see that, unaccountably, the attackers had left. They thanked God for delivering them.

"A year later, the chief of the tribe was converted to Jesus Christ, and Mr. Paton, remembering what had happened, asked the chief what had kept him and his men from burning down the house and killing them. The chief replied in surprise, "Who were all those men you had with you there?" The missionary answered, "There were no men there; just my wife and I." The chief argued that they had seen many men standing guard-hundreds of big men in shining garments with drawn swords in their hands. They seemed to circle the mission station so that the natives were afraid to attack. Only then did Mr. Paton realize that God had sent His angels to protect them. The chief agreed that there was no other explanation. Could it be that God had sent a legion of angels to protect His servants, whose lives were being endangered?"<sup>1</sup>

Some people don't believe in anything supernatural, including the existence of angels. Others give angels undue attention and spread misinformation. The Bible tells us there is an unseen spiritual realm that is as real as the physical world we see, touch and experience here on planet earth. Who are these powerful creatures? What is their purpose? As always, we must study the Scriptures to learn the truth; the truth about holy angels who remained obedient to God and about Satan and his demons who rebelled against Him. Only then can we think correctly about holy angels and give them their proper place. Only then can we wage spiritual warfare against fallen angels and be victorious.



*<sup>20</sup>Bless the LORD, O you his angels, you mighty ones who do his word, obeying the voice of his word! <sup>21</sup>Bless the LORD, all his hosts, his ministers, who do his will!*

*Psalm 103:20-21*

## Angels and Demons-Week 1

In this unit on angelology, we will cover each of the following topics:

1. ANGELS
2. SATAN AND DEMONS (FALLEN ANGELS)
3. PRECAUTIONARY NOTES ON SPIRITUAL WARFARE
4. SATAN'S OFFENSE
5. THE CHRISTIAN'S DEFENSE

# Angels

As we consider the unseen spiritual realm of angels and demons, we first turn our attention to angels. We will define the word then look at their creation and their characteristics and purpose.

## The Definition of the Word 'Angel'

Looking at the word used in the original language can help us know more precisely what is being referred to when we see the word 'angel' in our English translations.

- In the Old Testament Scriptures, the Hebrew word translated angel is *mal'akh*. It means a messenger, one sent, specifically of God.
- In the New Testament, the Greek word translated angel is *angelos*. It, too, means a messenger, one who is sent, a messenger from God.

In these uses, the messenger can be

- 1) a human being
- 2) a supernatural, created being called an angel
- 3) the angel of the LORD

Regarding the third option, the angel of the LORD, think back to the chapter on GOD THE SON. Many Bible scholars believe that usually when someone in the Old Testament was visited by "the angel of the LORD," this was in fact a visit with the pre-incarnate Christ, also known as a Christophany.

1. Look up the following verses and write down whether the messenger is human, an angel or the pre-incarnate Christ. Context is key! Read the verses before and after to help determine your answer.

Numbers 22:31-32

Daniel 6:22

Luke 7:24

Revelation 22:8-9

2. What did the angel tell John not to do in Rev. 22:9?

## Angels and Demons—Week 1

3. Go back to Numbers 22:31. What was Balaam's response when the LORD opened his eyes to see the angel of the LORD?

Did this angel refuse Balaam's worship?

4. As we read our Bibles, what is one way we can distinguish between an angel that is a supernatural, created being sent by God and a Christophany?

Moving forward, we will use this simple definition of angels:

**Angels are spiritual beings created by God to worship Him, serve Him, and be sent by Him to carry out His will. Some angels have remained obedient to God (holy angels) while others have rebelled (fallen angels) and continue to actively oppose God and attempt to denigrate His holy name. The fallen angels are Satan and his demons.**

## The Creation of Angels

Angels have not existed from eternity past like God. Like humans, angels are created beings.

*Colossians 1:15-16—<sup>15</sup>He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. <sup>16</sup>For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities – all things were created through him and for him.”*

5. Mark the text according to the following:
  - Circle the word “all” in the above verses.
  - Underline the word “invisible.”

6. Who created the angels?

7. Read Job 38:1-7

In verse 7, the phrases “morning stars” and “sons of God” are referring to the angels. What clue do these verses give you about *when* angels were created?

Since the angels sang during the creation they were most likely created prior to (or at the start of) the creation of the earth.

## The Nature, Characteristics and Purposes of Angels

Angels were created morally pure. Holy angels remain sinless and therefore do not need redemption from a fallen state. Although man was created a little lower than the angels (Hebrews 2:7), in eternity, redeemed man will judge angels (1 Corinthians 6:3).

Angels possess the three identifiable traits of personhood: intellect, emotions and will.<sup>2</sup>

- Intellect – angels are intelligent beings who can converse (Matthew 28:5), sing (Job 38:7) and worship (Hebrews 1:6).
- Emotions – angels express emotion. For example, they are joyful over the repentance of sinners (Luke 15:10) and they praise God (Luke 2:13-14).
- Will – angels possess a will with which they choose to worship God. They also long to understand things related to salvation. (1 Peter 1:10-12).

8. To learn more about angels, look up the following Scriptures then match them with the appropriate description.

\_\_\_\_\_ Genesis 3:24

\_\_\_\_\_ Genesis 19:1-3

\_\_\_\_\_ Isaiah 6:1-3

\_\_\_\_\_ 2 Kings 6:15-17

\_\_\_\_\_ Daniel 9:20-21

\_\_\_\_\_ Daniel 10:10-14

\_\_\_\_\_ Matthew 4:11

\_\_\_\_\_ Matthew 13:41-43

\_\_\_\_\_ Matthew 24:36

\_\_\_\_\_ Mark 12:24-25 &  
\_\_\_\_\_ Luke 20:34-36

\_\_\_\_\_ Luke 1:26-33 &  
\_\_\_\_\_ Luke 2:8-14

\_\_\_\_\_ Hebrews 1:14

\_\_\_\_\_ Hebrews 12:22

\_\_\_\_\_ Revelation 7:11-12

A Angels are not omniscient (all-knowing).

B Certain angels, called seraphim, declare God's holiness before His throne.

C Angels can reveal themselves in the form of human beings.

D Angels are eternal beings that do not marry and do not die.

E Angels are swift in flight and more mobile than humans, however they are not omnipresent.

F Certain angels, called cherubim, guard the way to the tree of life, east of Eden.

G All the holy angels worship God in heaven.

H Angels care for and minister to humans, even Jesus while here on earth.

I Due to phrases such as "prince of the kingdom of Persia" and "one of the chief princes" there appears to be an angelic hierarchy or ranking, including authority over kingdoms/countries.

J Angels are described as "spirits," suggesting that they do not normally have material bodies like humans.

K Angels will carry out God's judgment.

L The number of angels God created is so many they are not able to be counted.

M Angels have announced some very important and amazing events!

N Warrior angels are able and willing to fight to protect God's people.



## Angels and Demons—Week 1

As we think about the reality of the spiritual realm in general and angels in particular, it is helpful to remember that they are present though we are not able to perceive them. Wayne Grudem gives us this reminder about their presence:

"We should be aware that angels are watching our obedience or disobedience to God through the day. Even if we think our sins are done in secret and bring grief to no one else, we should be sobered by the thought that perhaps even hundreds of angels witness our disobedience and are grieved. On the other hand, when we are discouraged and think that our faithful obedience to God is witnessed by no one and is an encouragement to no one, we can be comforted by the realization that perhaps hundreds of angels witness our lonely struggle daily 'longing to look' at the way Christ's great salvation finds expression in our lives."<sup>3</sup>

### Quick Review

Review what you have studied so far about angels.

9. What have you learned about angels that you did not know before?

10. Answer the following questions as True or False.

\_\_\_\_\_ When a person dies, he or she becomes an angel in heaven.

\_\_\_\_\_ Angels are cute, chubby little cherubs with wings who fly around.

\_\_\_\_\_ Every time a bell rings, an angel gets its wings. (Great movie; bad theology!)

These last three misconceptions are a far cry from the fact that angels are powerful, spiritual beings created to worship and serve God and carry out His will. But what went wrong? Why are there fallen angels? Once again, we turn to God's Word to discover the answer.

# Satan and Demons (Fallen Angels)

One key passage of Scripture in the Old Testament that describes the fall of the angel Lucifer who became Satan is Ezekiel 28:11-19. Verses 11-17 of this passage are printed below. To understand the context, it is helpful to know that the first ten verses of Ezekiel 28 are dealing with a human leader. Then, in verse 11, the focus turns to the “king of Tyre” who is described in ways that could not be true of a human king. Read the passage slowly and carefully.

## TAKE ROOT

Before Satan fell, he was called Lucifer, which means “light-bearer.” Some translations use the name “Day Star” or “Morning Star” instead of Lucifer. See Isaiah 14:12.

*Ezekiel 28:11-17—“Moreover, the word of the LORD came to me: <sup>12</sup>“Son of man, raise a lamentation over the king of Tyre, and say to him, Thus says the Lord GOD: “You were the signet of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. <sup>13</sup>You were in Eden, the garden of God; every precious stone was your covering, sardius, topaz, and diamond, beryl, onyx, and jasper, sapphire, emerald, and carbuncle; and crafted in gold were your settings and your engravings. On the day that you were created they were prepared. <sup>14</sup>You were an anointed guardian cherub. I placed you; you were on the holy mountain of God; in the midst of the stones of fire you walked. <sup>15</sup>You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, till unrighteousness was found in you. <sup>16</sup>In the abundance of your trade you were filled with violence in your midst, and you sinned; so I cast you as a profane thing from the mountain of God, and I destroyed you, O guardian cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. <sup>17</sup>Your heart was proud because of your beauty; you corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor. I cast you to the ground; I exposed you before kings, to feast their eyes on you.”*

11. Read through the passage again and mark the following:

- Double underline in green - Eden, the garden of God, the holy mountain of God.
- Circle in black - created.

In verse 12, the prophet Ezekiel is told by God to “raise a lamentation over the king of Tyre.” A lamentation is a passionate expression of grief or sorrow. How grieved God was at the fall of this angel!

12. How is the king described in verse 12 and at the beginning of verse 15?

13. How did he come into existence according to the end of verse 13 and the middle of verse 15?

14. What type of angel was this king according to verse 14?

## Angels and Demons-Week 1

An "anointed guardian cherub" may indicate that he held the highest position of authority over all the other cherubim.

15. Cross reference Exodus 25:17-22 and Exodus 26:31. Write down what you learn about the significance of cherubim.

16. Back to Ezekiel 28, *where* was this cherub? What two locations are mentioned in the passage?

17. Ezekiel 28 tells us that this king (Lucifer) was created a perfect cherub, beautiful and full of wisdom. What happened?! Fill in the blanks to find out what caused his fall.

Verse 15: *You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created,*

till \_\_\_\_\_ was found in you.

Verse 16: *In the abundance of your trade you were filled with violence in your midst,*

and you \_\_\_\_\_

Verse 17: *Your heart was \_\_\_\_\_ because of your beauty..*

"Lucifer apparently became so impressed with his own beauty, intelligence, power, and position that he began to desire for himself the honor and glory that belonged to God alone. The sin that corrupted Lucifer was his self-generated pride.

"Apparently, this represents the actual beginning of sin in the universe – preceding the fall of the human Adam by an indeterminate time. Sin originated in the free will of Lucifer in which – with a full understanding of the issues involved – he chose to rebel against the Creator."<sup>4</sup>

Lucifer, the light bearer, became Satan, the adversary. God's perfect world that He called "very good" in Genesis 1:31 was now corrupt and tainted with evil.

18. How did God rightfully judge this mighty angelic being, according to Ezekiel 28:17?

19. Cross-reference Luke 10:17-18. What had Jesus seen?

Ezekiel 28:17 seems to indicate that Satan was stripped of his angelic authority and completely cast out of God's heavenly government.<sup>5</sup>

However, this does not mean that Satan no longer has access to heaven. For now, he is still able to appear before God. Read Job 1:6-12. This will not always be the case as we will see when we study the End Times.

## Angels and Demons—Week 1

20. From Revelation 12:3-4, we can deduce that the dragon (Satan) took one third of the stars of heaven (now called demons) with him when he rebelled against God. If so, what fraction of the angels that God created continue to be holy angels?

Do you find this encouraging? Why or why not?

In summary, Lucifer, a beautiful, anointed cherub became proud and chose to rebel against his Creator. He became Satan, the adversary, and took one third of the demons with him. Due to his hatred of the Lord, it is no surprise that he would turn his attention to the pinnacle of God's creation, Adam and Eve, and initiate their fall. Satan and his demons continue this evil work today. We must learn his schemes and how to defend against them, but praise be to God that believers are "more than conquerors" through Christ who loves us (Romans 8:37)!

### Making it Personal

Have you ever noticed how easy it is to identify pride in someone else but miss it in yourself? C.S. Lewis stated, "...it was through pride that the devil became the devil: Pride leads to every other vice; it is the complete anti-God state of mind."<sup>6</sup>

21. Ask God to show you any area of your life where pride is rearing its ugly head. You can do this by praying Psalm 139:23-24 to God.

*Psalm 139: 23-24—<sup>23</sup>Search me, O God, and know my heart! Try me and know my thoughts! <sup>24</sup>And see if there be any grievous way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting."*

As God reveals pride in your life, confess it and repent of it. Thank Him for His Son Jesus who was not proud but "humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross" (Philippians 2:8). We can be forgiven of the sin of pride because of the gospel. Hallelujah!

22. Memorize the following verses so the Holy Spirit can bring them to mind:

*Isaiah 66:2b—But this is the one to whom I will look: he who is humble and contrite in spirit and trembles at my word.*

*1 Peter 5:5—...Clothe yourselves, all of you, with humility toward one another, for God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.*

# Precautionary Notes on Spiritual Warfare

A few precautionary notes are in order before we dive further into studying Satan's offense against God and Christians and the Christian's defense against him. We will cover Satan's offense, his strategies, the battlefield and his schemes and strategies this week. The entire study for next week will cover the Christian's defense against the attacks of Satan.

Here are the precautionary notes—notes which are important to keep in mind as you consider spiritual warfare:

1. As we daily live our lives, we encounter the weakness of our flesh, the pressures of the world, and opposition from Satanic forces. Most of us readily agree that our flesh and the world tempt us to sin but we may not like the thought of temptation from a demonic spiritual realm. The reality is that fallen angels are present in our world today and they want to cause us to sin.
2. Believers In the Bible never sought out or prayed to angels or looked for demons; neither should we. Angels and demons are real and actively working in our world, but we should not seek them out or overly obsess about their presence.
3. As believers we have the Holy Spirit living within us, therefore it is impossible for Satan or any demonic force to possess us. They can influence, harass, or oppress us, but they cannot possess us.

## Satan's Offense

### Satan's Strategies

Military forces have many tactics and techniques they employ to achieve victory over their enemy. From the men that are chosen to the weapons that are used, everything is strategically planned in the hopes of conquering their opponent. However, even before choosing these things they must first *know* their enemy. They must understand the enemy's strengths, weaknesses, strategies, victories and failures. In the same way, before we can begin to make a plan against Satan and demons, we must know exactly who we are fighting against.

As we learned in the previous section, Satan is the leader of the demons. We also know that the order and hierarchy in the spiritual realm continues among the fallen angels. Since Satan can only be in one place at one time, he is certainly somewhere right now deceiving powerful and influential people and causing chaos, but probably not in our mundane lives. Most likely it is his demons that attempt to influence us and cause us to sin. Whether Satan or his minions, their goal is the same: strategically act against God and attempt to thwart His plans.

As we uncover the difficult and somewhat scary side of the spiritual realm take heart, Jesus is with you and Satan is a defeated foe.

*1 John 4:4—Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.*

## The Battlefield

First and foremost, Satan and his demons wage war in a person's **mind**.

"Satan plays mind games with Christians. Human minds are Satan's chief target. The Christian's thought life becomes the battlefield for spiritual conquest."<sup>7</sup>

23. Read Revelation 12:9-11. What is Satan called in verse 10? Fill in the blank below.

...the \_\_\_\_\_ of our brothers...

24. Let's look at a fictitious example of this:

Lucy and Emma are two women having a nice conversation when the discussion spirals downward and turns into gossip about a mutual friend named Victoria.

Satan's attack on Lucy's mind:

*Satan: Wow, you call yourself a Christian? That was some nasty gossip! God is so disappointed in you!*

Lucy wallows in guilt and shame and feels like a failure as a Christian.

Of what does Lucy need to remind herself, according to Romans 8:1, 33-34, 38-39?

How could Lucy determine if it is Satan accusing her or the Holy Spirit convicting her of sin?

In our fictitious example of Lucy, Emma and Victoria, Satan accuses, condemns, and wants Lucy to think she is a failure in God's eyes.

In contrast, the Holy Spirit might "say:"

The words you spoke about Victoria were not edifying. Gossip is sin. Confess your sin and repent of it. God has forgiven you because Christ paid the penalty for your gossip when He shed His blood on the cross. Depend upon Me, the Holy Spirit, when conversing with others and I will cause your words to be gracious and edifying.

A verse pops into Lucy's mind, "There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus" (Romans 8:1). After confessing and repenting of her sin, Lucy, knowing she has been forgiven, rejoices in the truth of this verse. She marvels at God's grace and love for her demonstrated in the gospel.

Take a moment to consider the differences between Satan's and the Holy Spirit's influence on Lucy's mind.

Satan condemns and accuses but the Holy Spirit convicts of sin with the goal of confession, repentance, restoration of fellowship with God and the power to choose not to sin the next time.

***HALLELUJAH!***

## Satan's Power, Character and Schemes

In Hebrew the word for Satan means "one who opposes" or "adversary." Satan is included in 8 Old Testament books and 19 New Testament books with every author of the New Testament mentioning him. Even most people who don't believe in God can recognize that there is evil in the world and they long for a world without wickedness, pain and suffering.

Let's look at Scripture to see how Satan is described and the schemes he (and his demons) uses to wage war.

### EXTENT OF SATAN'S POWER

While Satan is not omnipresent like God, it is important to understand how far Satan's influence and power extend.

25. According to the following verse, how far does Satan's power extend?

*1 John 5:19—We know that we are from God, and the whole world lies in the power of the evil one.*

26. Read Hebrews 2:14-15 below then, in your own words, explain why Christians are no longer under Satan's power.

*Hebrews 2:14-15—<sup>14</sup>Since therefore the children share in flesh and blood, [Jesus] himself likewise partook of the same things, that through death he might destroy the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil, <sup>15</sup>and deliver all those who through fear of death were subject to lifelong slavery.*

While Christians are no longer under Satan's power, we are not immune to his activity. In fact, no one in the world is immune to his activity.

27. Read 1 Peter 5:8-9 below, mark it as instructed and then answer the questions.

*1 Peter 5:8-9—<sup>8</sup>Be sober-minded; be watchful. Your adversary the devil prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour. <sup>9</sup>Resist him, firm in your faith, knowing that the same kinds of suffering are being experienced by your brotherhood throughout the world.*

Underline the terms used to describe Satan in these verses.

Double-underline the activity of Satan in these verses.

Carefully considering verse 9, who is Satan attacking—believers or unbelievers and where are they located?

Before we leave these verses, note how Christians are to prepare for and then respond to Satan's attacks?

## SATAN'S CHARACTER

Now that we have established that the whole world is under the influence of Satan and that all people are impacted by Satan, let's work to understand his character from Scripture.

28. For each verse below, underline the terms used to describe Satan or his character, then on the right, record what you learn about Satan's *character* from the verse.

Verse	Character of Satan
<p><i>John 8:44—You are of your father the devil, and your will is to do your father's desires. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks out of his own character, for he is a liar and the father of lies.</i></p>	
<p><i>1 Thessalonians 3:5—For this reason, when I could bear it no longer, I sent to learn about your faith, for fear that somehow the tempter had tempted you and our labor would be in vain.</i></p>	
<p><i>Genesis 3:1—Now the serpent was more crafty than any other beast of the field that the LORD God had made.</i></p>	
<p><i>Revelation 12:9, 10—And the great dragon was thrown down, that ancient serpent, who is called the devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole world—he was thrown down to the earth...<sup>10</sup>...for the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God.</i></p>	

29. Looking back over the descriptions of Satan's character from these verses, how would you summarize it?



## SATAN'S SCHEMES

Now that we understand more about Satan's character, we can identify his attacks against us because his schemes against mankind flow directly from his character. It is no surprise then that at the most basic level, his schemes involve lying, deceiving, tempting and murdering. The following are a few examples from Scripture.

### LYING AND DECEIVING

30. Underline the activity of Satan in the verse below, then describe his scheme in your own words.

*2 Corinthians 4:4—In their case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, to keep them from seeing the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.*

Specifically here, Satan's scheme is:

31. Read Matthew 13:24-30 and 36-39 and answer the following questions:

How is Satan described in verse 25, 28 and 39?

Who are the weeds in this parable?

How did Satan use deceit in this parable?

Describe danger of this for both the believer and the unbeliever in the church today.

### LYING AND TEMPTING

32. Read through Genesis 3:1-9 and briefly review our inductive study on Genesis 3:1-9 from the unit on sin (Sin-Week 1, pages 201-203).

How did Satan use lying and tempting against Eve?

Was it effective or not?

## Angels and Demons—Week 1

33. Read Matthew 4:1-11.

How did Satan use lying and tempting against Jesus?

Was it effective or not?

What weapon did Jesus use to combat this fiery dart of Satan?

34. Have there ever been times in your life when you felt an attack similar to the attack on Eve and Jesus?

### TEMPTING AND MURDERING

Since the garden of Eden, Satan has been enticing people to sin through deceit and temptation. He tempts them by appealing to their natural desires and convincing people that his ways will bring pleasure, happiness and something better than what God offers.

Recall again Genesis 3:1-9. Along with twisting God's Word, Satan tempted Eve by appealing to her natural desires. Her desire was not sinful in itself but became sinful when she acted to meet that desire in a way that God had forbidden. She was deceived by Satan's lies and temptation and she sinned. Not only did she sin, but her sin spread to her husband. Their sin led to death for all of mankind.

*Genesis 3:6—So when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was to be desired to make one wise, she took of its fruit and ate, and she also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate.*

Satan still tempts today by lying and appealing to the desires of men and women. Even desire that is not sinful on its own becomes sinful when it is met in a way that is contrary to God's ways.

*James 1:14-15—<sup>14</sup>But each person is tempted when he is lured and enticed by his own desire. <sup>15</sup>Then desire when it has conceived gives birth to sin, and sin when it is fully grown brings forth death.*

35. Fill in the blanks below to describe the progression of desire to death from James 1:5:

----- --> SIN --> -----

This verse states that sin brings forth death. As a result of Adam's sin everyone will experience death eventually; however, one's own sin may directly end their life immediately. (See Acts 5:1-11 and 1 Corinthians 11:27-30.) Death for an unbeliever means *eternal separation from God*. For the believer, temptation may give birth to sin, but sin, paid for by the blood of Christ, will never lead to eternal separation from God.

## Angels and Demons-Week 1

36. Look back at James 1:15 again.

Underline 'when it has conceived' and 'when it is fully grown'.

These two phrases indicate that the desire and then the sin are being entertained for some period of time before leading to sin (from desire) and death (from sin).

Are there sinful desires or sins in your life now that you need to stop entertaining before they lead to the next stage?

What do you think God would want you to do about these desires or sins?

### SUMMARY

Satan uses many schemes to accomplish his goals and his demon army carries out an attack on believers that is specific to each person. Along with the ones we've studied, he can also use discouragement, distraction, resentment, fear, and disobedience, to name a few. In next week's lesson, the "Christian's Defense", we will learn how to stand against all of Satan's schemes.

## The Submission and Limitations of Satan & Demons

37. Read Job 1:6-12 and Job 2:1-6.

According to Job 1:12, what limitation did God put on Satan?

According to Job 2:6, what limitation did God put on Satan?

What does this tell you about Satan's power? About God's power?

38. Read Luke 4:31-37 and fill in the blanks using verse 34.

Ha! What have you to do with us, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to \_\_\_\_\_  
us? I know who you are- the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.

What is Jesus' response in verse 35?

What does the fact that the demons obeyed Jesus tell you about Christ's authority over demons?

## Angels and Demons—Week 1

39. How does knowing the submission of Satan and his demons to God's authority and their limited power in comparison to God's power, encourage you?

We must remember that even Satan is God's Satan. A popular analogy of this relationship is that Satan has a collar around his neck and God holds the leash. Make no mistake about it, Satan and his demons are powerful creatures but God is the Creator of all things, more powerful than anyone or anything and the One in absolute control!

### Satan's Demise

Satan has power on earth right now, but it is only the power he has been given by God. Satan lost at Calvary. Jesus's death and resurrection was the decisive defeat of Satan. Victory is ours in Christ. Although we battle against the dark side of the spiritual realm, we fight from the winning side.

*Hebrews 2:14-15—<sup>14</sup>Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might break the power of him who holds the power of death that is, the devil—<sup>15</sup>and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death.*

40. According to Hebrews 2:14-15, what did the death and resurrection of Christ accomplish?

*Colossians 2:13-15—<sup>13</sup>And you, who were dead in your trespasses and the uncircumcision of your flesh, God made alive together with him, having forgiven us all our trespasses, <sup>14</sup>by canceling the record of debt that stood against us with its legal demands. This he set aside, nailing it to the cross. <sup>15</sup>He disarmed the rulers and authorities and put them to open shame, by triumphing over them in him.*

41. According to Colossians 2:15, what did the death and resurrection of Christ accomplish in the spiritual realm?

42. How do the above passages encourage you and give you hope?

**SATAN WAS DEFEATED WHEN JESUS DIED ON THE CROSS AND ROSE FROM THE DEAD. ONE DAY SATAN WILL BE COMPLETELY REMOVED FROM THIS EARTH AND CAST INTO ETERNAL TORMENT.**

*Revelation 20:10—And the devil who had deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur where the beast and the false prophet were, and they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.*

# Angels and Demons - Week Two

## The Christian's Defense

We have looked at the unseen spiritual forces at work in our world. We have seen that Satan and his demons are strong and are actively involved in infecting the world with evil and attempting to draw people away from God and His truth. However, we have also been reminded that those who belong to Christ Jesus are indwelt by the Holy Spirit and that "he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world (1 John 4:4)." But how do we access that power? Ephesians 6:10-20 answers that question.

As we study this passage from Ephesians in detail, pray earnestly that God will show you how to stand against the schemes of the devil. These truths must go from your head to your heart if you are to walk in victory in this present darkness.

The context of Ephesians 6:10-20 is important. In Paul's letter to the Ephesians, he spends the first 3 chapters telling the Christians at Ephesus how they have been called by God into a relationship with Himself by grace through faith in Jesus Christ. Starting with chapter 4, Paul continues with an admonition to believers to walk worthy of their calling. Paul then goes on for 2 ½ chapters explaining what that looks like personally, within the body of believers, in the family, and in society. This is a tall order! In fact, it is impossible to live up to this high calling in our own strength; but praise God, we don't have to do this on our own!

The remainder of this week's lesson is an inductive Bible study of Ephesians 6:10-20. A double-spaced copy of that passage is provided on the back of this page for you use as you study. In the remainder of this section on Ephesians 6, *do all of the requested markings on the provided page so that all of your markings are together on a single page.*

### Stand Strong

***10Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of his might.***

1. Read Ephesians 6:10-20 printed on the following page and mark it as instructed below:
  - Double underline the word "stand (withstand)" in red.
  - Read verse 10 again. This time Double underline the command "be strong" in red.

**Strength** (Greek: *krátous*)  
Inherent power. Power that overcomes resistance.

2. According to verse 10 in whose strength are we to stand?

How much strength is available to us? See Ephesians 1:19-21 for the answer.

3. Do we have all we need to overcome the schemes of the devil?

Christ's resurrection has already proven that Satan is no match for that much strength!

## PASSAGE FOR MARKING

**DO ALL REQUESTED MARKING OF EPHESIANS 6 ON THIS PAGE  
FOR THE REMAINDER OF THIS SECTION OF THE STUDY GUIDE**

*(This is important for seeing the repeated words and thoughts in the passage  
as well as the overall flow of thought.)*

*Ephesians 6:10–20—*

*<sup>10</sup>Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of his might. <sup>11</sup>Put on the whole armor of God,  
that you may be able to stand against the schemes of the devil. <sup>12</sup>For we do not wrestle against  
flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers over this  
present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places. <sup>13</sup>Therefore take up the  
whole armor of God, that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to  
stand firm. <sup>14</sup>Stand therefore, having fastened on the belt of truth, and having put on the  
breastplate of righteousness, <sup>15</sup>and, as shoes for your feet, having put on the readiness given by the  
gospel of peace. <sup>16</sup>In all circumstances take up the shield of faith, with which you can extinguish all  
the flaming darts of the evil one; <sup>17</sup>and take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit,  
which is the word of God, <sup>18</sup>praying at all times in the Spirit, with all prayer and supplication. To  
that end, keep alert with all perseverance, making supplication for all the saints, <sup>19</sup>and also for me,  
that words may be given to me in opening my mouth boldly to proclaim the mystery of the gospel,  
<sup>20</sup>for which I am an ambassador in chains, that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak.*

## Put on the Whole Armor of God

***“Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the schemes of the devil.”***

4. Mark the passage with the following:

Verse 11, 14, and 15—Double underline the command “Put on” in red.  
Verses 11 and 13—Put a blue box around “whole armor”.

5. How much of the armor of God are we to put on?

Why do you think this is important? Do you think Satan knows our weak points?

6. Are we commanded to attack the devil?

7. Remember this is armor, protection. What is the only offensive weapon in this list?

8. We are told to put on the whole armor of God that we may be able to \_\_\_\_\_ against the schemes of the devil.

### **Stand** (Greek: *histēmi*)

To stand fast against an enemy, as opposed to running away. To endure. To make firm. To keep one's place. Establish.

9. From what you have learned about Satan and his demons, what are some of his schemes?

## Recognize The Enemy

***“For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers over this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places.”***

10. Are other people our enemy?

Who is our opponent?

### **Wrestling** (Greek: *palē*)

“A contest between two in which each endeavor to throw the other, and which is decided when the victor is able to hold his opponent down with his hand upon his neck.”<sup>8</sup>

11. Read Ephesians 2:1-2 and fill in the blanks below.

<sup>1</sup>And you were dead in the trespasses and sins in which you once walked, <sup>2</sup>following the course of this world, following the \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the air, the spirit that is now at work in the sons of disobedience.

## Angels and Demons-Week 2

12. Read 2 Corinthians 10:3-5 and fill in the blanks below.

4For the weapons of our warfare are \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ but have \_\_\_\_\_ power to \_\_\_\_\_ 5...and take every thought \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ Christ.

**Stronghold** (Greek: *ochūrōma*)  
A fortification, fortress.  
Any argument or reasoning on which one relies.

***BEFORE WE REPENTED OF OUR SINS AND PUT OUR FAITH IN CHRIST, WE WERE HELPLESS TO FIGHT AGAINST SATAN. BUT NOW THROUGH THE SPIRIT OF GOD WE HAVE DIVINE WEAPONS WITH WHICH TO STAND AGAINST HIM. PRAISE GOD!***

13. Read through Ephesians 6:10-20 one more time. In verses 14-17, underline each piece of armor in blue.
14. Label each piece of the Christian's armor on the following diagram. Be sure and include Paul's description of each piece (i.e. Belt of Truth).

### THE ARMOR OF GOD





## BELT OF TRUTH

***14Stand therefore, having fastened on the belt of truth...***

In Paul's day a Roman soldier first fastened on a belt. The belt held together his loose-fitting clothing and provided something on which to hang his armor. In that culture a man would pull up his long flowing robe between his legs and tuck it through his belt in order to have freedom of movement when he needed to go somewhere quickly. Therefore, as the first piece of armor the belt signifies readiness. Once the soldier has fastened on his belt, he is ready to pick up the rest of his armor and move out to battle. (We will look more at readiness when we get to the shoes.)

**Truth** (Greek: *alētheias*)  
"The state of the heart answering to God's truth; inward, practical acknowledgment of the truth as it is in Him; the agreement of our convictions with God's revelation... All the virtues are exercised within the sphere of truth."<sup>10</sup>

What must everything else hang on? Truth!

In verse 14 we are commanded to stand wrapped in truth.

How counter-cultural this is today where many claim there is no such thing as absolute truth; but the Bible tells us that is where we must start if we are to stand against the schemes of the devil.

15. Go back to page 326 and mark the passage with the following:  
Verse 14—Double underline "Fasted on" in red.

Now look up the following verses and note what you learn about truth:

John 17:17

Ephesians 1:13

Ephesians 4:21

2 Timothy 2:15

1 John 3:18

## MAKING IT PERSONAL

Our first line of defense against the schemes of the devil is truth. Since truth is found in God's Word, we must know God's Word in order to stand firm.

16. What temptation, doubt, or fear do you struggle with?

Search the Scriptures and on the page at the end of this lesson titled "Making it Personal, Verses of God's Truth", write out verses which speak God's truth to your particular struggle. Keep those verses handy and read through them often. Add to them as God's Spirit brings more to your mind. Work on memorizing them.

## BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS

<sup>14</sup>...put on the breastplate of righteousness...

The breastplate of a Roman soldier was often made of leather overlaid with metal or covered with hooves of animals. It was large enough to protect the heart and other vital organs lower down which Jewish people called the bowels.

In his sermon on "The Breastplate of Righteousness," John MacArthur gives us this helpful insight into Jewish thinking:

"A breastplate covered two vital areas: the heart and the bowel area.

"Now, to the Jew this had a great significance. Symbolically, the heart represented the mind; the Bible says, 'As a man thinketh in his...heart, so is he.' Out of the heart proceed evil thoughts. The heart is the thinking aspect of life. The heart in Hebrew terms or symbols means the mind. 'The heart of man is deceitful above all things and desperately wicked.' Thinking is associated with the heart.

"The bowels are associated with feelings and emotions. It talks about the bowels of compassion, or shutting up the bowels of love and not loving someone properly. And this is because emotions give us feelings in our stomach, don't they? Emotions hit us in the stomach. We ache in our stomach when certain emotions are felt. And so, to the Hebrew, this is a good way to demonstrate it. The heart then means the thinking process, and the bowels refers to the emotions.

"...Satan wants to attack a believer in two areas, primarily. One, in his thinking; two, in his emotions...He feeds your thinking processes with false information. He feeds your emotions with false information. He wants to cloud your mind with false doctrine, lies, religious untruth, anything he can, and he wants to appeal to the wrong parts of your emotions. He wants to illicit evil emotional responses. He wants to twist and pervert your affections."<sup>11</sup>

What is it then that will protect our mind and our emotions from the attacks of the evil one? Righteousness!

Righteousness first of all has to do with being in a right relationship with God which in turn enables us to be in a right relationship with others. Righteousness is closely related to justice. It involves living a life which displays the justice and holiness of God.

**Righteousness** (Greek: *dikaíosunē*)  
Justice; morally correct behavior.

We may try and please God by living a "good" life, but what does God think about the good deeds we do in our own strength? See Isaiah 64:6.

17. According to Matthew 5:20 were the righteous deeds of the scribes and Pharisees enough for them to enter the kingdom of heaven?
18. According to Romans 3:10-12 how many people are truly righteous before God?
19. According to 2 Corinthians 5:20-21 who enabled us to be reconciled to God?
20. How did He do this? "For our sake he made him to \_\_\_\_\_ who knew no sin, so that in him we might become the \_\_\_\_\_ of God."
21. According to Romans 4:3, how does one become righteous?

## Angels and Demons-Week 2

22. How does one put on righteousness? Look up the following verse and record what you find.

Romans 6:13

Do not present your members to \_\_\_\_\_ as instruments for \_\_\_\_\_.

But present...Your members to \_\_\_\_\_ as instruments for \_\_\_\_\_.

23. Continuing to answer the question, how does one put on righteousness? Look up the following verse and record what you find.

Ephesians 4:22-24

Put off your \_\_\_\_\_

Be renewed in the \_\_\_\_\_ of your \_\_\_\_\_

Put on the \_\_\_\_\_, created after the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ in true

\_\_\_\_\_ and holiness.

24. According to 1 John 3:7-10, how can we know that we have put on the breastplate of righteousness?

Once we are clothed with Christ's righteousness, our lives should display the justice, honesty, and the goodness of God. Daniel gives us a wonderful picture of what this looks like. Even though he was a captive in a foreign land he was faithful to his God and lived an exemplary life.

Daniel 6:4 says, "Then the high officials and the satraps sought to find a ground for complaint against Daniel with regard to the kingdom, but they could find no ground for complaint or any fault, because he was faithful and no error or fault was found in him."

It is important to note that throughout the book of Daniel he is always clear to give the glory to God for the wisdom and favor he has. He knew that living up to God's standard of perfection was not possible in his own strength, and if we are honest, we know that also. We need the breastplate of righteousness!

25. Think about the purpose of the Roman soldier's breastplate. How does the breastplate of righteousness enable you to stand against the devil?

### MAKING IT PERSONAL

26. Is there an area of your life where you are tempted to act unfairly or dishonestly?

If so, ask God for forgiveness and then seek to make restitution.

## **SHOES FOR YOUR FEET...**

### **THE READINESS THAT COMES FROM THE GOSPEL OF PEACE**

*<sup>15</sup>and, as shoes for your feet, having put on the readiness given by the gospel of peace.*

"Readiness" is often translated as "preparation." Let's look at how the gospel of peace makes one ready to stand against the schemes of the devil. Think back to your school days. When you had a test for which you were prepared you were able to approach it with confidence instead of anxiety.

Remember this verse in the context of Ephesians 6. This is not about sharing the gospel but about standing your ground against the schemes of the devil.

27. Review the essentials of the gospel in 1 Corinthians 15:1-4. Note verse one:

"Now I would remind you, brothers of the gospel I preached to you, which you received, in which you -----."

28. How does the gospel give us peace as we seek to stand against a spiritual attack? Read the following verses and record your insights.

Romans 5:1

Romans 8:31; 37-39

John MacArthur explains it this way. "Roman soldiers wore boots with nails in them to grip the ground in combat. The gospel of peace pertains to the good news that, through Christ, believers are at peace with God and He is on their side. It is that confidence of divine support which allows the believer to stand firm, knowing that he is at peace with God and God is his strength."<sup>12</sup>

## **MAKING IT PERSONAL**

Have you repented of your sin and believed the gospel? It is only through faith in Jesus Christ that we have any defense against the attacks of the devil. If you have believed, walk in the confidence that Jesus is for you and will give you victory.

Successful football coach Bear Bryant is quoted as saying, "It's not the will to win that matters—everybody has that. It's the will to prepare to win that matters."<sup>13</sup>

***ARE YOU WILLING TO SURRENDER YOUR WILL TO THE LORD AND TAKE UP THE WHOLE ARMOR OF GOD SO THAT YOU ARE PREPARED TO STAND IN THE EVIL DAY?***

## SHIELD OF FAITH

***<sup>16</sup>In all circumstances take up the shield of faith, with which you can extinguish all the flaming darts of the evil one;***

Take up the shield of faith . . . Is faith something we have to grit our teeth and muster up? No! This verse implies that it is being handed to us. What must we do? Take it.

29. Read through Ephesians 6:10–20 once again and mark it according to the following:

Double underline in red the command “take” in verses 13, 16, and 17.

In a color of your choice circle the word “all” in verses 16–18.

30. Look up Ephesians 2:8 and fill in the blanks:

For by \_\_\_\_\_ you have been saved through \_\_\_\_\_. And this is not your own doing; it is the \_\_\_\_\_ of God.

The Roman soldier carried a large 2 ½ ft. x 4 ½ ft. shield that protected his whole body and his other pieces of armor. It was made of wood and overlaid with linen and leather. Before going into battle the soldier would wet his shield to quench any flaming darts which might be launched against him. The Greek word for shield (*thureós*) is the word for a door. A soldier standing behind this door was fully protected.

31. Look up these encouraging verses from the Psalms and fill in the blanks.

Psalm 3:3 “But you, O LORD, are a \_\_\_\_\_ about me, my glory, and the \_\_\_\_\_ of my head.”

Psalm 5:12 “For you bless the \_\_\_\_\_, O LORD; you cover him with \_\_\_\_\_ as with a \_\_\_\_\_.”

Psalm 18:30 “This God—his way is perfect; the word of the LORD proves true; he is a \_\_\_\_\_ for all those who take refuge in him.”

32. What does Ephesians 6:16 say is the shield which protects us from the flaming darts of the evil one?

## Angels and Demons—Week 2

Faith in God is not just assent to a set of beliefs or a creed. It includes a conviction that is deep enough to change the way we live.

33. What does the Scripture say about demons in this regard? See James 2:19.

**Faith** (Greek: *pístis*)  
Firm persuasion, conviction. "The main elements in 'faith' in its relation to the invisible God... are (1) a firm conviction, producing a full acknowledgement of God's revelation or truth... (2) a personal surrender to Him... (3) a conduct inspired by such surrender."<sup>14</sup>

34. Look up the following verses. Answer the questions and fill in the blanks.

1 Corinthians 2:5—"so that your faith might not rest in the wisdom of men but in the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_."

Hebrews 11:1—"Now faith is the \_\_\_\_\_ of things hoped for, the \_\_\_\_\_ of things not seen."

35. Hebrews 11 goes on to speak of the faith of many people of God. Did they always see their faith fulfilled in this life? Read Hebrews 11:13 for the answer.

36. Who is the founder and perfecter of our faith? See Hebrews 12:1-2.

37. 1 John 5:4—"For everyone who has been born of God \_\_\_\_\_ the world. And this is the \_\_\_\_\_ that has \_\_\_\_\_ the world—our \_\_\_\_\_."

### MAKING IT PERSONAL

Faith is closely related to trust; in fact, it is often translated as trust. True faith trusts God even when we cannot understand what He is doing or when trials continue over a long period of time and God seems silent. *Make this personal by doing the Take Root activity given below.*

On the page at the end of this lesson titled, "Making it Personal, Verses of Faith", write out some verses which encourage you to trust God in any circumstance. (You may want to ask other believers which verses are helpful to them.)

Also, make a list of times God has been faithful to you in the past on the "Making it Personal, History of God's Faithfulness to Me"

## **THE HELMET OF SALVATION**

***17**and take the helmet of salvation*

The last piece of protective armor the soldier put on was his helmet. The helmet was made of bronze and was equipped with side pieces to protect his cheeks. It was hot and uncomfortable and was only put on when there was immediate danger.

Take the helmet of salvation . . . Once again we see that this is given to us. Ours is to receive it.

Since this passage is addressed to Christians, what does it mean to take up the helmet of salvation? Again, according to John MacArthur "Paul is speaking to those who are already saved, and is therefore not speaking here about attaining salvation. Rather, Satan seeks to destroy a believer's assurance of salvation with his weapons of doubt and discouragement."<sup>15</sup>

As mentioned earlier one of Satan's favorite strategies is to attack the Christian's thought-life.

38. According to Romans 8:6 what are we to set our mind on?

What is the end result?

39. Read Romans 12:2. Instead of being conformed to this world, what are we to do?

How does this happen?

40. Colossians 3:2 tells us that we are to set our minds on things that are \_\_\_\_\_, not on things that are on \_\_\_\_\_.

As we saw earlier, 2 Corinthians 10:4-5 says, "4For the weapons of our warfare are not of the flesh but have divine power to destroy strongholds. 5We destroy arguments and every lofty opinion raised against the knowledge of God, and take every thought captive to obey Christ."

But how do we do this? How can one take every thought captive to obey Christ? You might start by practicing Philippians 4:8. It is written in a form on the following page to make it easy to memorize. Memorization is a powerful tool for setting our minds in the right place.

## Angels and Demons—Week 2

Philippians 4:8—

Finally, brothers,  
whatever is true,  
whatever is honorable,  
whatever is just,  
whatever is pure,  
whatever is lovely,  
whatever is commendable,  
if there is any excellence,  
if there is anything worthy of praise,  
think about these things.

41. What other practical steps can you take to aide you in taking every thought captive?

### FUTURE HOPE

Not only does the helmet of salvation protect our head from the present attacks of the enemy, it also gives us hope of a future, eternal deliverance.

Perhaps Paul had Isaiah's imagery in mind when he wrote this verse.

42. Read Isaiah 59:15-17. The context of these verses is of a still future deliverance of Israel from her enemies. In these verses, who dressed Himself for battle and put on righteousness as a breastplate and a helmet of salvation before going into battle?

According to John MacArthur, "Figuratively speaking, the Lord armed Himself for the deliverance of His people and for taking vengeance on enemies who would seek His destruction. Paul drew on this terminology in describing a believer's spiritual preparation for warding off the attacks of Satan."<sup>16</sup>

43. Look up 1 Thessalonians 5:8-10 and fill in the following:

1 Thessalonians 5:8-10—<sup>8</sup>"But since we belong to the day, let us be sober, having put on the breastplate of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, and for a helmet the \_\_\_\_\_ of salvation. <sup>9</sup>For God has not destined us for wrath, but to obtain \_\_\_\_\_ through our Lord Jesus Christ, <sup>10</sup>who died for us so that whether we are awake or asleep we might \_\_\_\_\_ with him."



## MAKING IT PERSONAL

44. Do you have the hope of God's protection today and the hope of eternal salvation? Why or why not?

## THE SWORD OF THE SPIRIT

*"and take...the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God*

We are now fully clothed in our protective armor and are ready to take up our sword, which is the Word of God.

45. Are you beginning to see how all of these pieces fit together? Write out your insights.

46. The Greek word used in this verse for sword is *máchaira*. This type of sword was a short, two-edged one used for up-close combat. This same word is used in Hebrews 4:12. Look up this verse and fill in the following blanks.

This sword is the \_\_\_\_\_ of God.

This sword:

Is living and \_\_\_\_\_.

Pierces the soul and \_\_\_\_\_, the joints and marrow.

Discerns the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Timothy 2:15 says, "Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a worker who has no need to be ashamed, rightly handling the word of truth."

Both John 17:17 and 2 Timothy 2:15 tell us that God's Word is truth. The only solid ground we have to stand upon is Scripture.

47. Last week you looked at the Temptation of Jesus in Matthew 4:1-11. When Satan tempted Jesus,

He replied with "It is \_\_\_\_\_ (verses 4, 7, 10)."

48. Look carefully at Matthew 4:6. What tactic did Satan use against Jesus in this case?

## *Angels and Demons-Week 2*

49. Considering the example of Satan's strategy against Jesus and Jesus' response, why is it vital for you to know Scripture and know how to interpret it correctly in context?

50. According to our passage in Ephesians 6:17, whose sword is this?

. What will He do for us? See John 14:26.

. Is it possible to remember what you have never learned?

### **Tying it All Together**

Ephesians 6:10-17 commands us to be strong and to stand against the devil and his demons. How can we do that? We can't; but praise God, when we are in Christ He has given us all we need! What must we do? Be strong in the Lord. Take all the armor God is holding out to us and put it on! Then, when we are attacked we take up our weapon, God's Word, which He has also graciously given us. Clothed in God's armor and indwelt by His Spirit we can be more than conquerors.

51. Read through Ephesians 6:10-20 once again, thinking about each piece of armor as you read. There is a lot of overlap in these pieces of armor. List at least three of your most important take-aways from this section of the Armor of God.

1.

2.

3.

## Praying at All Times in the Spirit

<sup>18</sup>praying at all times in the Spirit, with all prayer and supplication. To that end, keep alert with all perseverance, making supplication for all the saints, <sup>19</sup>and also for me, that words may be given to me in opening my mouth boldly to proclaim the mystery of the gospel, <sup>20</sup>for which I am an ambassador in chains, that I may declare it boldly, as I ought to speak.

God provides believers with all this armor, but He doesn't stop there! He graciously gives us another very powerful weapon. Prayer! Through Jesus Christ, God has opened the way for us to enter the very throne room of God Almighty and receive mercy and grace to help in our time of need (Hebrews 4:16).

52. Though not a visible piece of armor, prayer is essential to our being able to stand against the evil one. Go back to Ephesians 6:12 and list the forces which believers are wrestling against.

Are you able to stand against these forces in your own strength? Obviously not. No one is. We need the power of God and that comes largely through prayer and supplication.

53. According to Ephesians 6:18

When are we to pray? At \_\_\_\_\_ times.

How are we to pray?

In the \_\_\_\_\_, *With the power of the Holy Spirit in submission to the will of God.*

with all \_\_\_\_\_ *A general word for communicating with God.*

and \_\_\_\_\_ *Entreating God for a specific need*

54. Match the following references with their observations on prayer:

Luke 18:1	Rejoice, pray without ceasing, give thanks in all circumstances.
Romans 8:26-27	Instead of being anxious, pray with a heart of thanksgiving.
Philippians 4:6-7	Pray and don't lose heart.
1 Thessalonians 5:16-18	The prayer of a righteous person has great power.
James 5:16	The Spirit intercedes for us according to the will of God

Returning to Ephesians 6, verse 18 also tells us that we are to keep alert with all perseverance. We must keep our shoes on, ready for battle. We must always be prepared for that unexpected flaming dart of temptation or discouragement. We must pray without ceasing.

## *Angels and Demons—Week 2*

Why pray without ceasing, at all times and in all circumstances? When life is hard it is obvious. We know our need for God and beg for His intervention in our trial. When life is peaceful and going well, it is easy to let our guard down and therefore become vulnerable to a sneak attack. Satan does not usually announce ahead of time that a test is coming. He most often gives “Pop Quizzes” and attacks when we least expect it, therefore we need to stay alert at all times.

*1 Peter 5:8—*

*Be sober-minded; be watchful.*

*Your adversary the devil prowls around like a roaring lion,  
seeking someone to devour.*

But fear not, the verse just before this says of our mighty God, “[Cast] all your anxieties on him, because he cares for you” (1 Peter 5:7).

## **Making Supplication for All the Saints**

*<sup>18</sup>... making supplication for all the saints*

As we saw in our study of the church, we are all part of one body. We need each other. We are to encourage and strengthen one another. To that end we must pray for one another.

55. Look back at Ephesians 6:19, what specific supplication does Paul ask the believers to pray on his behalf?

What a great request to make for one another!

***PUT ON THE WHOLE ARMOR OF GOD.  
PRAY AT ALL TIMES IN THE SPIRIT.  
VICTORY!***

# Song for Meditation

## **“Whom Shall I Fear (God of Angel Armies)”**

Written by Ed Cash, Scott Cash, Chris Tomlin

You hear me when I call  
You are my morning song  
Though darkness fills the night  
It cannot hide the light

Whom shall I fear?

You crush the enemy  
Underneath my feet  
You are my Sword and Shield  
Though troubles linger still

Whom shall I fear?

I know Who goes before me  
I know Who stands behind  
The God of angel armies  
Is always by my side  
The One who reigns forever  
He is a Friend of mine  
The God of angel armies  
Is always by my side

My strength is in Your name  
For You alone can save  
You will deliver me  
Yours is the victory

Whom shall I fear?

Whom shall I fear?

And nothing formed against me shall stand  
You hold the whole world in your hands  
I'm holding onto Your promises  
You are faithful  
You are faithful

## *Angels and Demons*

And nothing formed against me shall stand  
You hold the whole world in your hands  
I'm holding onto Your promises

You are faithful  
You are faithful  
You are faithful

I know Who goes before me  
I know Who stands behind  
The God of angel armies  
Is always by my side  
The One who reigns forever  
He is a Friend of mine  
The God of angel armies  
Is always by my side

I know Who goes before me  
I know Who stands behind  
The God of angel armies  
Is always by my side  
The One who reigns forever  
He is a Friend of mine  
The God of angel armies  
Is always by my side

The God of angel armies is always by my side.

# Appendix

## **Making it Personal**

PERSONAL PLAN OF DEFENSE AGAINST THE ENEMY

VERSES OF GOD'S TRUTH

VERSES OF FAITH

HISTORY OF GOD'S FAITHFULNESS TO ME

## **Endnotes**

## **Additional Resources**

## **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES

REFLECTIONS

**(This page intentionally left blank)**



## **Making it Personal**

### **PERSONAL PLAN OF DEFENSE AGAINST THE ENEMY**

*Some suggestions for those times you are engaged in an intense spiritual battle.*

Physically enact putting on the of Armor of God one piece at a time as follows:

#### **THE BELT OF TRUTH**

Suggestion: Wrap your arms around your waist as if you are putting on a belt. Read or recite out loud your list of verses which speak God's truth to your struggle. Ask God to give you a heart that desires above all else to live by His truth.

What I need to do to better walk in God's truth:

#### **THE BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS**

Suggestion: Bring your arms down over your shoulders as if you are putting on the breastplate of righteousness. Ask God to protect your mind and your emotions from the enemy's attack. Ask God to give you a heart which desires to do what is right before Him and to reveal any area of your life where you are not dealing fairly with another. Ask for forgiveness from God and anyone you have wronged. Seek to make restitution.

What I need to do to better display God's righteousness to others:

#### **SHOES FOR YOUR FEET...THE READINESS THAT COMES FROM THE GOSPEL OF PEACE**

Mandatory: God's armor is only available to those who have repented and believed the gospel. You are helpless before the enemy without God's strength.

*2 Corinthians 6:2b—Behold, now is the favorable time; behold, now is the day of salvation.*

Suggestion for believers: Pretend to strap sandals on your feet. Remind yourself of the gospel and take confidence in the knowledge that God is on your side. Praise God for His provision!

What I need to do in order to be better prepared to face the enemy:

## THE SHIELD OF FAITH

Suggestion: Hold up your arm as if holding a shield in front of you. Read aloud the verses on faith which you wrote out. Read aloud the list of times God has been faithful to you in the past. Ask God to give you a heart which rests in Him and in His sovereign love for you.

What I need to do in order to trust God better when I am in a hard trial:

## THE HELMET OF SALVATION

Suggestion: Lift up your arms and enact putting a helmet on your head. Read through the list you made of practical steps for taking every thought captive (page 336, question 41 of the study guide.) Choose one to put into practice and then ask God to help you follow through.

Praise God that He is with you to fight for you and to ultimately bring you to live in His heavenly presence for all eternity.

What I need to do to live in the hope of my salvation, both day-to-day and eternally:

## THE SWORD OF THE SPIRIT WHICH IS THE WORD OF GOD

Suggestion: Pull the sword out of your belt and hold it forward as a weapon. Again, read or recite out loud some verses which speak truth to the lie Satan is telling you. (You wrote those down when you studied the Belt of Truth.)

What I need to do to better wield the sword of the Spirit:

## PRAYING AT ALL TIMES IN THE SPIRIT

Be in prayer as you symbolically put on your armor. Ask God to give you a heart that loves Him and wants to obey. Submit yourself to God as you take up the Sword of the Spirit, speaking out the truth of His Word. Have some pertinent verses memorized or handy to read. Don't just pray when you have your "Quiet Time" with God. Cry out to God at all times, especially when you are feeling weak or vulnerable.

*Philippians 4:5b-7—<sup>5</sup>... The Lord is at hand; <sup>6</sup>do not be anxious about anything, but in everything by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made know to God. <sup>7</sup>And the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and your minds in Christ Jesus.*

*Angels and Demons-Appendix*

## **Making it Personal**

VERSES OF GOD'S TRUTH

(Belt of Truth, Making it Personal, page 329)

## **Making it Personal**

### VERSES OF FAITH

(Shield of Faith, Making it Personal, Page 334)

**Making it Personal**

HISTORY OF GOD'S FAITHFULNESS TO ME

(Shield of Faith, Making it Personal, Page 334)

# Endnotes

1. Billy Graham, *Angels*, (Dallas: Word Publishing, 1975), 7-8.
2. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 667.
3. Grudem, "Systematic Theology," 405-406.
4. Ron Rhodes, "How Did Lucifer Fall and Become Satan?" *Christianity.com*, accessed May 28, 2022, <https://www.christianity.com/theology/theological-faq/how-did-lucifer-fall-and-become-satan-11557519.html>.
5. Ron Rhodes, "How Did Lucifer Fall?"
6. C. S. Lewis, *Mere Christianity* (New York: Touchstone, 1996), Book 3, 110.
7. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 686.
8. J. H. Thayer, *Thayer's Greek Definitions* (Public Domain, 1896) G3823, e-Sword edition.
9. Lena London, "Roman Soldier Coloring Page," *Super Coloring*, Accessed June 23, 2022, <http://www.supercoloring.com/coloring-pages/roman-soldier-0>.
10. Marvin R. Vincent, *Vincent's Word Studies in the New Testament* (Public Domain, 1887) Ephesians 6:14, E-sword edition.
11. John MacArthur, *Sermons Library*, May 13, 1979 "The Breastplate of Righteousness," *Grace to You*, (Accessed June 4, 2022), <https://www.gty.org/library/sermons-library/1956>.
12. John MacArthur, *The MacArthur Bible Commentary for e-Sword* (Thomas Nelson: Nashville, Tennessee), Ephesians 6:15, e-Sword edition.
13. Paul Bryant, "Memorable Coach Paul "Bear" Bryant quotes: Thoughts on winning, life, Alabama and more," *AL.com*, Published January 26, 2016, Accessed June 23, 2022, [https://www.al.com/living/2016/01/memorable\\_coach\\_paul\\_bear\\_brya.html](https://www.al.com/living/2016/01/memorable_coach_paul_bear_brya.html).
14. W. E. Vine, Merrill F. Unger, and William White, Jr., *Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of Old and New Testament Words* (New York: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1985), 222.
15. John MacArthur, "MacArthur Bible Commentary," Ephesians 6:17.
16. John MacArthur, "MacArthur Bible Commentary," Ephesians 6:17.

## **Additional Resources**

Graham, Billy. Angels. Dallas: Word Publishing, 1975.

Lewis, C. S. The Screwtape Letters. New York: HarperCollins Publisher, 2009.

Paton, John G. James Paton, ed. John G. Paton: Missionary to the New Hebrides. East Peoria, Illinois: Versa Press, 2021.

### John MacArthur's Sermons on Ephesians 6:10-24

MacArthur, John. The Believer's Armor. Valencia, California: Grace to You, 2021.

These sermons may be read and listened to free of cost at:

<https://www.gty.org/library/topical-series-library/64/the-believers-armor>

They may also be read and listened to on the GTY (Grace to You) app under Sermons>By Series>The Believer's Armor.

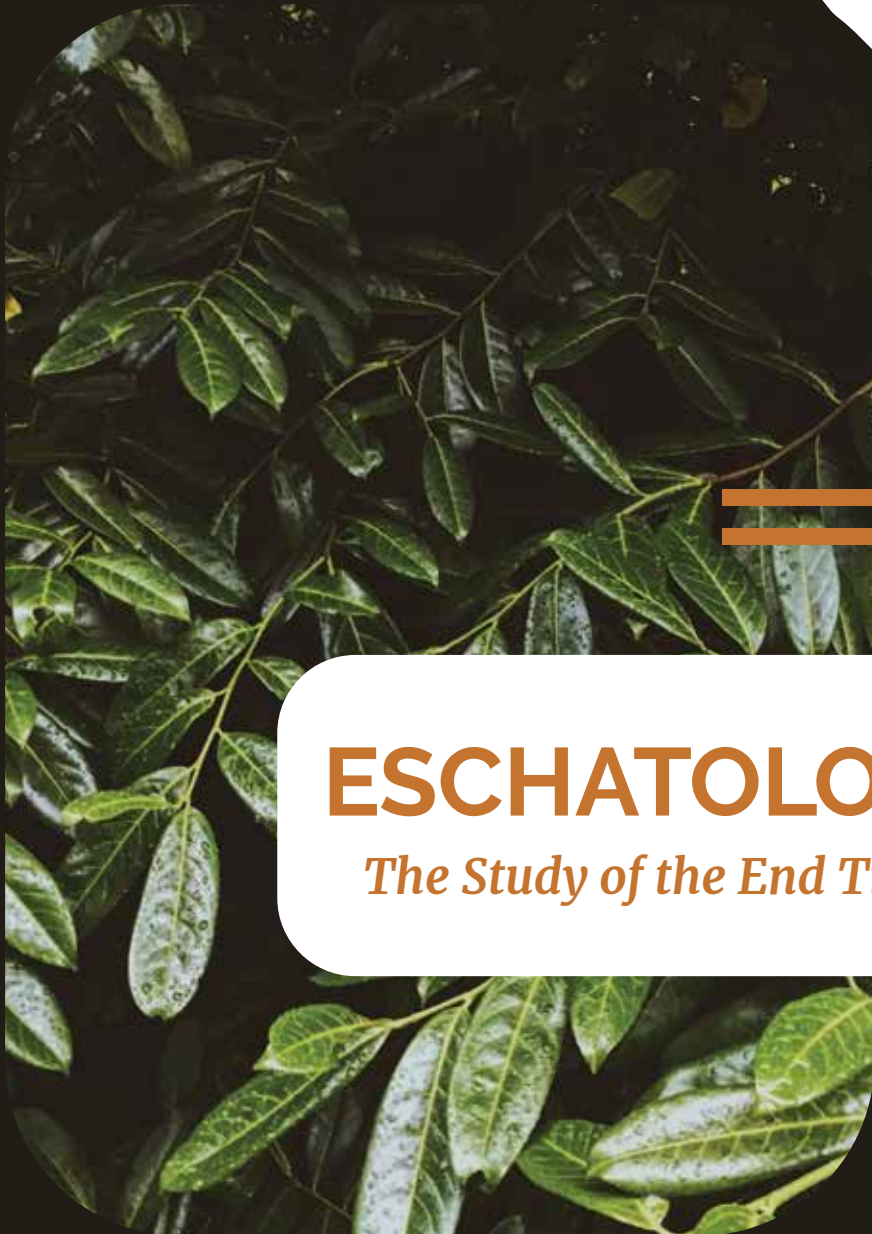
**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*



**CLASS NOTES**  
*week two*



*reflections*



# ESCHATOLOGY

*The Study of the End Times*



# End Times - Week One

## Introduction

The Greek word *eschatos* means "last," "end," or "final." Eschatology is the study of the last days, or end times, and is a fitting subject for our last lesson!

As we look around and see all that is going on in the world today—global pandemics, terrorism, strange weather patterns, gender issues, right being called wrong and wrong being called right—it is easy to become anxious and fearful and wonder—what is going on and how is all of this going to end? The LORD has already told His people the answer to these questions in His Word, the Bible; we need only turn there for strength, encouragement and hope!

In these final two weeks of the Rooted in Truth study, we cover the following key events of the end of time as described in Scripture that are yet to be fulfilled. The first week of study covers the rapture, tribulation, and the second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ. The second week of study in this unit covers the resurrections and judgments, the millennial kingdom, final judgments and the eternal kingdom.



*...I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like me, declaring the end from the beginning and from ancient times things not yet done, saying, 'My counsel shall stand, and I will accomplish all my purpose,'*

*Isaiah 46:9b-10*

### KEY EVENTS YET TO BE FULFILLED:

1. RAPTURE
2. TRIBULATION
3. SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST
4. RESURRECTIONS AND JUDGMENTS
5. MILLENNIAL KINGDOM
6. FINAL JUDGMENTS
7. ETERNAL KINGDOM

# Rapture

## The Rapture: What is it?

Simply put, the Rapture is when Jesus Christ, the Bridegroom, returns for His Bride, the Church, and takes all church-age believers back to heaven with Him. Those believers who have *previously died* return *with* Christ and are united with their physical, resurrected bodies that are now glorified and fit for eternity. Those believers who are *alive* at Christ's return will also have their physical bodies transformed and receive glorified, eternal bodies.

There are 3 main passages in the New Testament that describe the Rapture event. Let's look at them.

*John 14:1-3—[Jesus said,]<sup>1</sup>Let not your hearts be troubled. Believe in God; believe also in me.<sup>2</sup>In my Father's house are many rooms. If it were not so, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you?<sup>3</sup>And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and will take you to myself, that where I am you may be also."*

1. To understand the context of these verses, scan John chapter 13. To whom is Jesus speaking?
2. According to this passage what is Jesus is going to do?

Can you understand why, after Christ was crucified and resurrected, the apostles truly believed (and taught) that Christ's return for them would be *soon*? They could never have imagined that, over 2,000 years later, the Church would still be waiting for His return! Oh, the patience and lovingkindness of the Lord, who does not want any to perish!

The second passage that describes the Rapture is in 1 Thessalonians.

Believers in Thessalonica were concerned about their brothers and sisters in Christ *who had died before Christ's return*. What about them? Paul addresses this concern and gives wonderful details about the Rapture event. (Note: in this context, to be "asleep" is a biblical euphemism for believers who have died).

*1 Thessalonians 4:13-18—<sup>13</sup>But we do not want you to be uninformed, brothers, about those who are asleep, that you may not grieve as others do who have no hope. <sup>14</sup>For since we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so, through Jesus, God will bring with him those who have fallen asleep. <sup>15</sup>For this we declare to you by a word from the Lord, that we who are alive, who are left until the coming of the Lord, will not precede those who have fallen asleep. <sup>16</sup>For the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a cry of command, with the voice of an archangel, and with the sound of the trumpet of God. And the dead in Christ will rise first. <sup>17</sup>Then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so we will always be with the Lord. <sup>18</sup>Therefore encourage one another with these words.*

3. What clue do we have in verse 13 that this passage was written to believers?

## End Times-Week 1

Continuing with 1 Thessalonians 4 on the previous page...

The word *rapture* is not in the Bible. However, the phrase *caught up* comes from the Greek word *harpazō* which means *to suddenly remove, catch up, snatch away, carry off*. *Harpazō* is translated into Latin as *rapturo*, from which we get the term rapture.

4. Mark the phrase "*caught up*."
5. Now mark in a distinct way, each of the following:
  - With one type of marking, mark all those who are asleep/who have fallen asleep/dead.
  - With a second type of marking, mark all who are alive
  - With a third type of marking, mark Jesus/Lord/Christ and any pronouns relating to Him.
6. Who does Jesus bring with Him when He returns according to verse 14?

Note: When a **believer** dies, the person's **spirit** immediately goes to be with the Lord (see 2 Corinthians 5:8; Philippians 1:22-24) while the **physical body** remains on earth and is buried, cremated, or whatever. In other words, the body decays yet the spirit is very much alive and with Christ!

7. What other group of people is present at this event?
8. Who rises *first*? How are they described in verse 16? What does this phrase mean?
9. Who rises next?
10. *Where* do these two groups of people meet the Lord?
11. What 3 sounds are heard as the Lord Himself descends?
12. After being caught up, where will these people always be?

## End Times-Week 1

13. Take a moment to visualize this scene in your mind. Can you imagine the wonder of it all?
14. In verse 18 of 1 Thessalonians 4, Paul instructed the Thessalonian believers to "encourage one another with these words." What encouragement do you receive from this passage?

The final passage of Scripture that gives us details about the Rapture is in 1 Corinthians.

*1 Corinthians 15:50-57—<sup>50</sup>I tell you this, brothers: flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God, nor does the perishable inherit the imperishable. <sup>51</sup>Behold! I tell you a mystery. We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, <sup>52</sup>in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable, and we shall be changed. <sup>53</sup>For this perishable body must put on the imperishable, and this mortal body must put on immortality. <sup>54</sup>When the perishable puts on the imperishable, and the mortal puts on immortality, then shall come to pass the saying that is written: "Death is swallowed up in victory." <sup>55</sup>"O death, where is your victory? O death, where is your sting?" <sup>56</sup>The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law. <sup>57</sup>But thanks be to God, who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.*

Here again we have two groups of people—those who are dead in Christ and those who are alive when Jesus comes for His Church. Note what happens to their physical bodies at the Rapture.

15. Fill in the box below by looking up the definitions of the words given, then writing the definition below each word.

EARTHLY BODY		GLORIFIED BODY	
<b>Perishable</b>	—————→	<b>Imperishable</b>	
Definition:		Definition:	
<b>Mortal</b>	—————→	<b>Immortal</b>	
Definition:		Definition:	

16. According to verse 52, how long does it take for this transformation to take place? (Write down the descriptions given. )
17. What has been defeated according to verses 54-55?

**TAKE A MOMENT TO PRAISE GOD FOR WHAT HE IS GOING TO DO!!!**



## The Rapture: When will it occur?

Here at Cornerstone Bible Church, we believe that the Rapture is *imminent* and that it will occur *before* the 7-year Tribulation period.<sup>1</sup>

### IMMINENCE OF HIS RETURN

18. Look up the word *imminent* in a dictionary and write the definition below.

Writers of the New Testament did not tell the recipients of their letters to watch for particular *signs* of Christ's return at the Rapture. They spoke of eagerly anticipating, confidently waiting and being ready for His coming. This points toward an "any moment" return. Read the following examples:

*1 Corinthians 1:7 (NIV) — <sup>7</sup>Therefore you do not lack any spiritual gift as you eagerly wait for our Lord Jesus Christ to be revealed.*

*Philippians 3:20 (NIV) — <sup>20</sup>But our citizenship is in heaven. And we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ,*

*Titus 2:13 (ESV) — <sup>13</sup>waiting for our blessed hope, the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ,*

*James 5:8 (ESV) — <sup>8</sup>You also, be patient. Establish your hearts, for the coming of the Lord is at hand.*

It appears then that there are no signs or events that need to happen before the Rapture can take place! Are *you* ready and eagerly awaiting His return?

### A PRE-TRIBULATION RAPTURE

As mentioned above The Cornerstone Bible Church Statement of Faith holds to the view that the Church will be raptured *before* the Tribulation.

19. Look up the following Scriptures and note what believers are saved or delivered from and why:

Romans 5:9

1 Thessalonians 1:9-10

1 Thessalonians 5:9-10

## The Rapture: Why does it occur?

As mentioned above, we believe that Christ will come for His Bride, the Church, prior to the horrific 7-year Tribulation period on earth.

20. Revelation 3:7-13 contains Jesus' words to the church in Philadelphia. What promise does He make to them in verse 10?

Since the sins of believers have been paid for by the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, we are no longer enemies of God and under His wrath. Therefore, there would be no reason for believers to go through the Tribulation.

## The Rapture: What it is NOT

The Rapture is NOT the second coming of Christ. We will study Christ's second coming later on, however, some key distinctions between these 2 events are listed below:

- At the Rapture, believers meet Christ in the air. At His second coming, the Lord Jesus descends to the Mount of Olives (Zechariah 14:1-5) and He makes war against the nations and kings of the earth (Revelation 19:11-21).
- At the Rapture, Christ takes church-age believers back to heaven with Him. At the second coming those believers, now in glorified bodies, come back to earth with Jesus to establish His Millennial Kingdom (Revelation 20:1-6).
- At the Rapture, Christ's coming is seen as imminent; no signs or events have to happen before He appears. At the second coming there will be many signs before His appearing (Matthew 24:29-31).
- At the Rapture believers are rewarded at the Bēma Seat. At the second coming of Christ there will be judgment and eternal punishment for the unsaved (Matthew 25:31-46).

## After the Rapture

At some point after the Rapture of the Church the 7-year Tribulation begins on *earth*. During that time two important events take place in *heaven*: The Bema Seat Judgment and the Marriage of the Lamb and His Bride.

### THE BĒMA SEAT

21. For each of the following verses, look at the context, then record to whom this verse is written.

*2 Corinthians 5:10—For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may receive what is due for what he has done in the body, whether good or evil.*

Written to believers or unbelievers? \_\_\_\_\_

*Romans 14:10—Why do you pass judgment on your brother? Or you, why do you despise your brother? For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God...*

Written to believers or unbelievers? \_\_\_\_\_

## End Times—Week 1

In these two verses the Greek word *bēma* is translated judgment. In ancient times a *bēma* was a raised platform where judges sat to render their decisions. Therefore, this judgment has come to be called the *bēma seat judgment of believers*.

Every believer's sin has been paid for by the blood of Christ when that person came to Him by grace through faith alone for salvation. Therefore, this cannot be a judgment deciding whether a believer is going to heaven or hell. Instead, the bema seat judgment is when a believer's life will be evaluated and *rewarded*. Let's look at Scripture to gain more insight.

22. Read 1 Corinthians 3:11-15 and answer the following questions:

Who is the foundation?

If the work built on the foundation survives testing by fire, what does the believer receive?

If the work is burned up, what is the consequence for the believer?

23. Read the following verses and write down what criteria the Lord will use to evaluate believers.

Psalm 19:7, 8 and 11

Matthew 25:14-23 and 1 Corinthians 4:2

1 Corinthians 4:5 and Hebrews 4:12

In summary, every believer will be rewarded based on obedience to the Word of God, faithfulness, good stewardship, and good deeds all done with proper motives and intentions of the heart. No believer can do this in their own strength, but thanks be to God for the indwelling Holy Spirit who empowers us to do what is pleasing to Him!

Have you ever wondered what the rewards will be? The Bible gives us a few glimpses:

- Praise from our Master and entrance into His joy (Matthew 25:21 and 23)
- Authority to rule over whatever God gives us (Luke 19:17-19)
- A crown of life (James 1:12, 1 Peter 5:4, Revelation 2:10)

## THE MARRIAGE OF THE LAMB

After every believer is duly rewarded for their life on earth, the Church as a whole will be one of the main participants in a wedding. Read Revelation 19:6-9 printed below.

*Revelation 19:6–9—<sup>6</sup>Then I heard what seemed to be the voice of a great multitude, like the roar of many waters and like the sound of mighty peals of thunder, crying out, “Hallelujah! For the Lord our God the Almighty reigns. <sup>7</sup>Let us rejoice and exult and give him the glory, for the marriage of the Lamb has come, and his Bride has made herself ready; <sup>8</sup>it was granted her to clothe herself with fine linen, bright and pure”— for the fine linen is the righteous deeds of the saints, <sup>9</sup>And the angel said to me, “Write this: Blessed are those who are invited to the marriage supper of the Lamb.” And he said to me, “These are the true words of God.”*

24. Read Revelation 5:2-6. Who is the Lamb?

25. Read Ephesians 5:22-33. Who is the Bride?

**WHAT A WONDERFUL CELEBRATION THIS WILL BE!**  
**TAKE A MOMENT TO PRAISE AND WORSHIP AND THANK THE LORD!**

## Application

Take time to examine your own heart and know for sure that you will be part of the Rapture. Not sure? Reach out to someone!

26. Have you ever attended a wedding where the Bride walked down the aisle with curlers in her hair wearing a bath robe? Of course not! Typically, she spends hours getting ready, making herself beautiful for her bridegroom. Read and meditate on Titus 2:11-14. What *practical* steps can you take to get ready for the return of your Bridegroom? For example, is there someone you need to forgive? Are you being a good steward of your time? Pray and ask the Lord what changes He would have you make. Write them below and, empowered by the Spirit, get to work!

## Review the Following Timeline

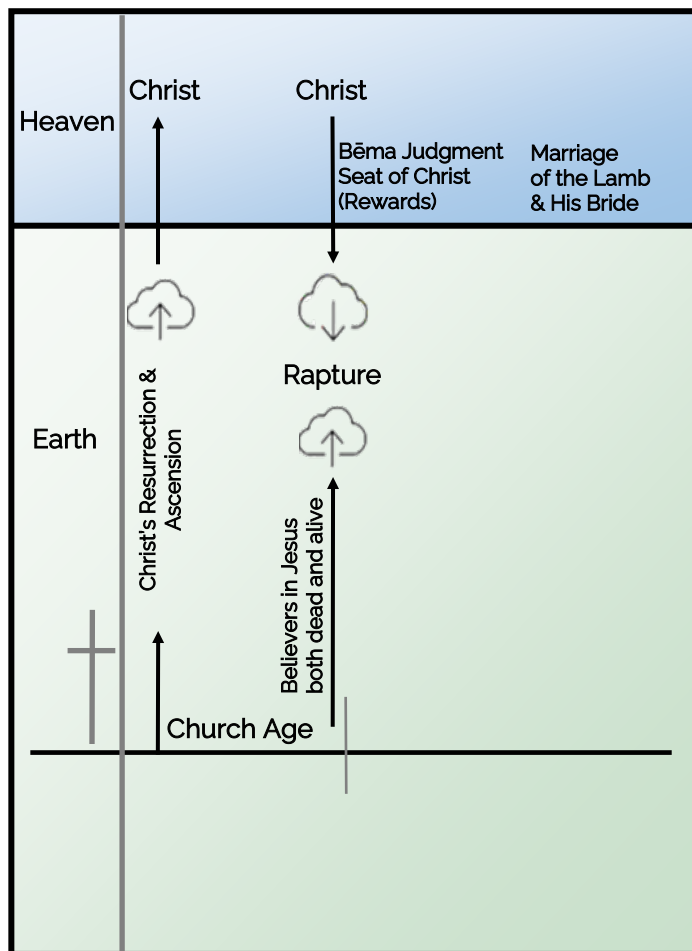


Figure 1—Timeline of Resurrection—Rapture

# Tribulation

After the Church is taken out of the world, the next major event on God's prophetic timeline is the Tribulation.

From the time when Adam first tasted the forbidden fruit in the garden of Eden, the world and everyone in it has suffered the consequences of sin: wars, famines, earthquakes, diseases, violence, etc. Old Testament prophets were persecuted and killed for their faith in God, and this persecution of believers continues today. However, in Matthew, Jesus describes a unique time of great tribulation that will come upon the whole earth.

*Matthew 24:21—For then there will be great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of the world until now, no, and never will be.*

## The Purpose of the Tribulation

The purpose of the Tribulation is two-fold: God will judge the wicked for their sin and God will redeem Israel.

### 1. GOD WILL JUDGE WICKED, UNREPENTANT PEOPLE FOR THEIR SIN

*Isaiah 13:11—“I will punish the world for its evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will put an end to the pomp of the arrogant and lay low the pompous pride of the ruthless.*

27. WHY does God judge people? Isn't He a loving God? Read the following verses and list His attributes which explain why He *must* punish sin:

Deuteronomy 32:4

Revelation 4:8

28. Look up the definition of “*holy*” (or do a word study) and write what it means.

Why do you think this attribute is repeated 3 times in Revelation 4:8?

29. Look up Numbers 20:12, what consequence did Moses suffer because he did not treat the LORD as holy? Does this seem fair after he faithfully led the people of Israel for 40 years in the wilderness?

## End Times-Week 1

30. How seriously does God take His holiness?

31. How seriously do you take the holiness of God?

Does your life reflect your answer to this question?

In Acts 17:30-31 Paul said:

*<sup>30</sup>The times of ignorance God overlooked, but now He commands all people everywhere to repent,<sup>31</sup>because He has fixed a day on which He will judge the world in righteousness by a man whom He has appointed; and of this He has given assurance to all by raising him from the dead.*

32. Underline the word "repent" in the above passage.

Define what it means to repent in the biblical sense.

33. How would someone know if a person has truly repented?

34. *Why* does God command people everywhere to repent?

35. *Whom* has God appointed to do the judging?

36. Keeping in mind God's holiness and a sinner's need for repentance, read Revelation 6:12-17 which describes what happens when the sixth seal judgment is opened during the Tribulation period. List the people who are present according to verse 15.

37. During this catastrophic event, what did these people do?

38. From *whom* are they trying to hide?

From *what* are they trying to hide?

Does this demonstrate repentance? Why or why not?

## 2. GOD WILL REDEEM HIS CHOSEN PEOPLE, THE NATION OF ISRAEL

This is a primary reason for the Tribulation. In fact, it is often called “The Time of Jacob's Trouble.”

*Jeremiah 30:7—Alas! That day is so great there is none like it; it is a time of distress for Jacob; yet he shall be saved out of it.*

The tribulation will be a time of severe persecution for the Jews, but through it they will finally realize that Jesus is their Messiah. Read Jeremiah 31:31-33 below and rejoice in God's future plan for Israel!

*Jeremiah 31:31-33—<sup>31</sup>Behold, the days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and the house of Judah, <sup>32</sup>not like the covenant that I made with their fathers on the day when I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt, my covenant that they broke, though I was their husband, declares the LORD. <sup>33</sup>For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, declares the LORD: I will put my law within them, and I will write it on their hearts. And I will be their God, and they shall be my people.”*

## **Daniel's “Seventy Weeks” Prophecy**

One of the most important passages of Scripture that demonstrates God's future dealings with the nation of Israel is found in Daniel 9:24-27. In the New Testament, Jesus, Paul and John all refer to this prophecy. (See Matthew 24:15; 2 Thessalonians 2; Revelation 11-13)

First, a little background:

Due to their idolatry and disobedience to God's laws, the nation of Israel was defeated by King Nebuchadnezzar in 605 BC. Their holy city Jerusalem and their temple were destroyed by the Babylonians. The Jewish people were taken captive to Babylon in a series of deportations. Daniel and his friends, Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, were some of the first to go; they were about 15 years old at the time. Daniel rose to prominence in Nebuchadnezzar 's kingdom, even as he remained faithful to his God.

Daniel chapter 9 opens with Darius the Mede in power. Daniel is an old man now. He knows the prophet Jeremiah had predicted 70 years of captivity for the nation of Israel and afterward God would bring them back to their land. The seventy years are almost over, however nothing seems to be happening! Daniel passionately prays to God about the people of Israel and their holy city, confessing sin and asking God to restore the people back to their land. In response to Daniel's prayer, God sends the angel Gabriel with a message concerning Israel's future.

## End Times-Week 1

Daniel 9:24-27 (NASB95)

<sup>24</sup>Seventy weeks have been decreed for your people and your holy city, to finish the transgression, to make an end of sin, to make atonement for iniquity, to bring in everlasting righteousness, to seal up vision and prophecy and to anoint the most holy place. <sup>25</sup>So you are to know and discern that from the issuing of a decree to restore and rebuild Jerusalem until Messiah the Prince there will be seven weeks and sixty-two weeks; it will be built again, with plaza and moat, even in times of distress. <sup>26</sup>Then after the sixty-two weeks the Messiah will be cut off and have nothing, and the people of the prince who is to come will destroy the city and the sanctuary. And its end will come with a flood; even to the end there will be war; desolations are determined. <sup>27</sup>And he will make a firm covenant with the many for one week, but in the middle of the week he will put a stop to sacrifice and grain offering; and on the wing of abominations will come one who makes desolate, even until a complete destruction, one that is decreed, is poured out on the one who makes desolate.

39. Just so you don't miss it, when Gabriel says, "your people," in verse 24, what people is he talking about?

40. What city is Daniel's "holy city"?

41. What length of time has been decreed for his people and his city in verse 24?

42. Daniel 9:24 also lays out six prophecies which will all be fulfilled by the end of the 70 weeks. Number them in verse 24. All of these relate to Daniel's people and Daniel's city.

In Hebrew the word translated *weeks* is *šābūā`* which indicates a unit of seven. It can be a period of seven days, weeks, or years. From what has already been fulfilled historically, we know that in Daniel 9:24 *šābūā`* stands for years; thus, in this passage 70 weeks equals 490 years. (70 x 7 years = 490 years)

Without getting too bogged down in the details, note the following:

- The Beginning of the 70 Weeks

The 70 weeks (or 490 years) begins with "the going out of the word to restore and build Jerusalem" in verse 25. This occurred in 445 BC when King Artaxerxes decreed that the Jewish people could go back to their land and rebuild Jerusalem. (See Nehemiah 2:1-8).

- At 69 Weeks

Verse 25 tells us that from the issuing of the decree until the coming of Messiah the Prince there will be 7 weeks and 62 weeks (a total of 69 weeks or 483 years). We know from history that after King Artaxerxes put forth his decree, Jesus the Messiah



## End Times—Week 1

triumphantly entered Jerusalem riding on a donkey exactly 483 years (69 weeks) later in March A.D. 33. An amazing fulfillment of prophecy!

Verse 26 states after the sixty-two weeks the Messiah will be cut off and the city and sanctuary will be destroyed by the people of the prince who is to come. This prophecy was fulfilled when Jesus, the Messiah, was crucified. Later, in 70 A.D., the Roman army led by Titus Julius Alexander captured the city of Jerusalem and destroyed both the city and the temple.

- Still Waiting for the 70<sup>th</sup> Week

As you can see, 69 of the 70 weeks decreed for Israel and their holy city have already occurred, leaving 1 more week (7 years) to entirely fulfill this prophetic message. The gap of time after the 69 weeks and before the 70th week has been called "The Time of the Gentiles." A mystery that was hidden in ages past.

*Ephesians 3:6—This mystery is that the Gentiles are fellow heirs, members of the same body, and partakers of the promise in Christ Jesus through the gospel.*

In God's grace and lovingkindness, this gap allows for the Church Age which we are in right now!

### THE DESOLATOR

Let's go back to the passage in Daniel and look at verse 27, the last verse in this prophecy.

*Daniel 9:27—<sup>27</sup>And he shall make a strong covenant with many for one week, and for half a week he shall put an end to sacrifice and offering. And on the wing of abominations shall come one who makes desolate, until the decreed end is poured out on the desolator.*

Here we are introduced to a man who is called "the desolator."

43. Answer the following questions from verse 27. Remember, 1 week = 7 years

What does this man do?

For how long?

What does he do at the midpoint (half a week or 3.5 years)?

## End Times-Week 1

44. We learn more about this man in the New Testament. Look up the following verses and write down his names, how he is described, what he does and where he gets his power.

2 Thessalonians 2:3-4

2 Thessalonians 2:9-10

1 John 2:18

Revelation 13:1-8 (Note: the dragon in these verses is Satan.)

45. In Revelation 13:11-18, we are introduced to another beast who works closely with the first beast. He appears to be a powerful, religious leader and is later identified as the False Prophet. According to Revelation 13:12, 16 and 17, what does the False Prophet cause people to do?

46. What is the fate of these two extremely wicked men, the Beast and the False Prophet? See Revelation 19:20.

In summary, the Tribulation begins when *he* (the Antichrist), makes a covenant with *the many* (the nation of Israel), for 1 week (7 years). It appears that he will be a very powerful leader who is able to guarantee the safety of Israel. However, halfway through the Tribulation he commits an abominable act in the Jewish temple and is ultimately destroyed for his wickedness when the King of kings returns.

## The Tribulation Judgments

Now let's do an overview of the judgments God brings upon the earth during the 7-year Tribulation.

The Tribulation is basically broken into two parts of 3 1/2 years each with judgments that increase in intensity. The first half of the Tribulation consists of 7 seal judgments followed by 7 trumpet judgments. The second half consists of 7 extremely severe bowl judgments. Revelation 6-19 details these judgments.

The tribulation judgments are outlined on the following page. Take a moment to read down through them.

John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue summarize the judgments as follows.<sup>2</sup>

"These massive judgments are predominately sequential and reveal escalating judgments from God against an unbelieving world and the kingdom of the Antichrist. Since Jesus is the One who opens the seal judgments, all subsequent judgments are the wrath of God and Jesus (Rev. 6:1)."

#### SEAL JUDGMENTS

1. The arrival of the Antichrist (Rev. 6:2).
2. War (Rev. 6:3-4).
3. Famine (Rev. 6:5-6).
4. Death (Rev. 6:7-8).
5. Martyrdom (Rev. 6:9-11).
6. Earthquake (Rev. 6:12-14).
7. Brings the second wave of judgments—the 7 trumpets (Rev. 8:1).

#### TRUMPET JUDGMENTS

1. One-third of the earth, trees, and grass are burned up (Rev. 8:7).
2. One-third of the sea creatures die, and the ships are destroyed (Rev. 8:8-9).
3. One-third of the waters are polluted, and many die (Rev. 8:10-11).
4. One-third of the sun, moon, and stars are darkened (Rev. 8:12).
5. Locusts/demons are released to torment people (Rev. 9:1-11).
6. Four bound demons are released to kill one-third of humanity (9:13-19).
7. Christ's kingdom reign is proclaimed (Rev. 11:15-18).

The final cluster of judgments are the bowl judgments. These come later in the tribulation period in rapid succession and are extremely severe:

#### BOWL JUDGMENTS

1. Painful sores come on people (Rev. 16:2).
2. The sea becomes like blood, and everything in the sea dies (Rev. 16:3).
3. The rivers and springs of water are turned to blood (Rev. 16:4-7).
4. The sun scorches people with fire and heat (Rev. 16:8-9).
5. Darkness and intense pain afflict humanity (Rev. 16:10-11).
6. The Euphrates River is dried up to prepare the way for kings from the East (Rev. 16:12-16).
7. Severe earthquakes split the great city into three parts, cities fall, and severe hail drops from heaven (Rev. 16:17-21).

## The Midpoint of the Tribulation

The midpoint of the Tribulation is a very significant time so we will look at it in more detail. The midpoint occurs when the 7th trumpet is sounded.

Daniel 9:27 states "...And on the wing of abominations shall come one who makes desolate..."

47. Read Matthew 24:15-21 where Jesus refers to Daniel's prophecy. Answer the following questions:

According to verse 15, the abomination of desolation is standing in the holy place. What is the holy place? See also 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4.

In what country is the holy place located and therefore, who is mainly impacted by this event?

How does Jesus describe this time in verse 21?

48. Now read Revelation 11:15-18 which describes a scene in heaven at the 7th trumpet. What awesome event is being celebrated?

**HEAR THE "HALLELUJAH CHORUS" AND PRAISE GOD AS YOU READ THESE WORDS!**

49. Another significant event occurs at the midpoint of the Tribulation. Read Revelation 12:7-12 and answer the following questions:

Who is thrown down from heaven?

Why is there rejoicing in heaven? What is he no longer able to do?

Why does this bring woe to the earth and sea?

The final judgments of God's righteous wrath are called the Bowl Judgments. Once again review the chart by MacArthur and Mayhue. It is very sobering to realize that these judgments WILL take place.

### Application

The Tribulation is a time of unspeakable horror when a righteous and holy God pours out His wrath on a sinful and rebellious world. However, no one need go through this time! Romans 6:23 says, "For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord." Repent and turn to the Lord while He may be found. Be ready for the Lord's return.

In light of the terror of the Tribulation, with whom is the Lord leading you to share the Gospel? Pray for that person regularly and look for opportunities to speak up; be intentional!

### TAKE ROOT

Read Matthew 24 and Revelation 6-19 for more details of the Great Tribulation.

## Review the Following Timelines

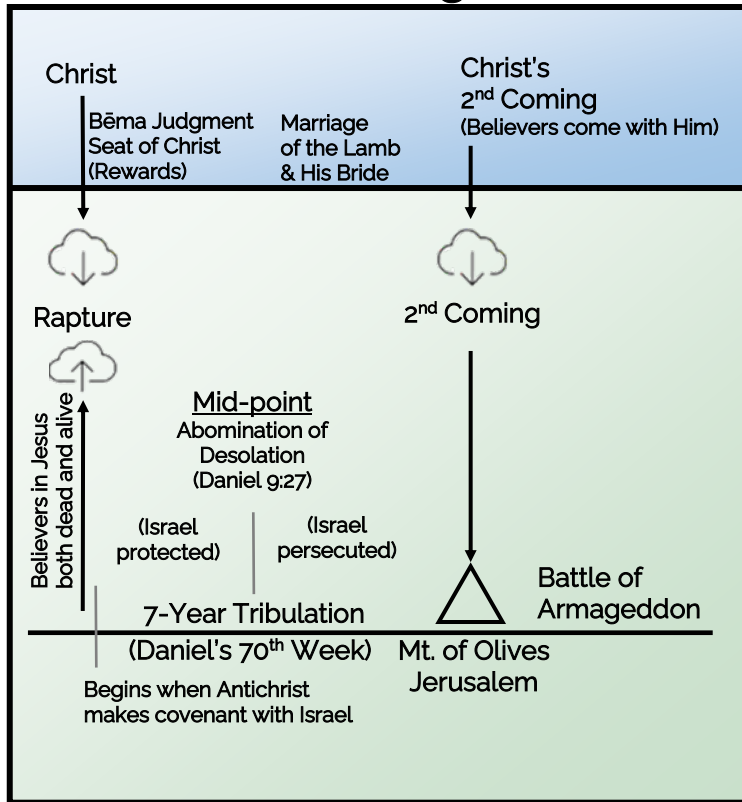


Figure 2—Timeline of Rapture—2nd Coming

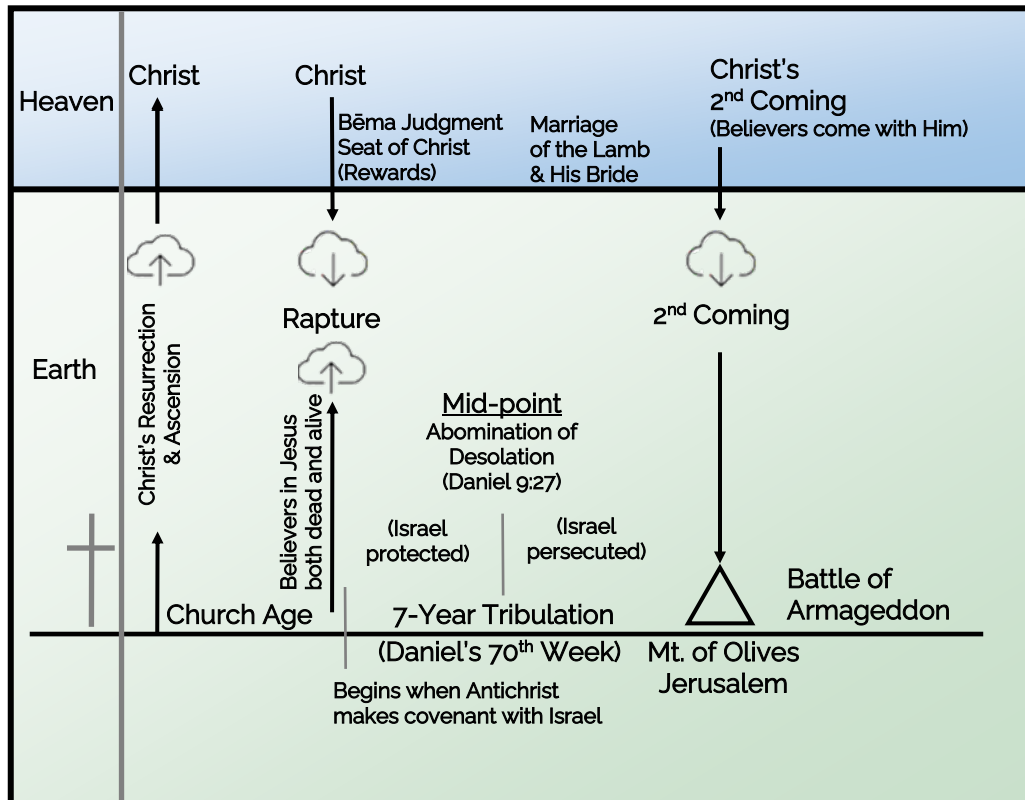


Figure 3—Timeline of Resurrection—2nd Coming

# Second Coming of Jesus Christ

The Great Tribulation ends with the glorious return of Jesus and His destruction of the kingdom of the Antichrist. Jesus' second coming is the pivotal point between the present age and His millennial reign on the earth.

50. Acts 1:9-12 describes Jesus' ascension into Heaven after His resurrection and assures those watching that He will return.

*Acts 1:9-12—<sup>9</sup>And when [Jesus] had said these things, as they were looking on, he was lifted up and a cloud took him out of their sight. <sup>10</sup>And while they were gazing into heaven as he went, behold, two men stood by them in white robes, <sup>11</sup>and said, “Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven? This Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven.” <sup>12</sup>Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mount called Olivet, which is near Jerusalem, a Sabbath day’s journey away.*

According to Acts 1:12 where were the two men when they watched Jesus go back to heaven before returning to Jerusalem?

51. According to Zechariah 14:4. Where does Jesus return?

52. In Matthew 24:29-31 Jesus described what His coming again would be like.

*Matthew 24:29-31—<sup>29</sup>Immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light, and the stars will fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken. <sup>30</sup>Then will appear in heaven the sign of the Son of Man, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. <sup>31</sup>And he will send out his angels with a loud trumpet call, and they will gather his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.*

Underline the phrase in Matthew 24:29-31 which tells how they will see Jesus come.

How does this match-up with Acts 1:9-11?

## End Times—Week 1

53. In Revelation 19:11-16 is this exciting account of what the second coming of Jesus will be like!  
*Revelation 19:11-16—<sup>11</sup>Then I saw heaven opened, and behold, a white horse! The one sitting on it is called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he judges and makes war. <sup>12</sup>His eyes are like a flame of fire, and on his head are many diadems, and he has a name written that no one knows but himself. <sup>13</sup>He is clothed in a robe dipped in blood, and the name by which he is called is The Word of God. <sup>14</sup>And the armies of heaven, arrayed in fine linen, white and pure, were following him on white horses. <sup>15</sup>From his mouth comes a sharp sword with which to strike down the nations, and he will rule them with a rod of iron. He will tread the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God the Almighty. <sup>16</sup>On his robe and on his thigh he has a name written, King of kings and Lord of lords.*

Underline the phrase which describes from where and how Jesus is coming.  
In a different color underline the names and attributes of Jesus given in this passage.  
Who follows Jesus on white horses? See also Revelation 19:7-8.

***WHAT A PICTURE! THE BRIDE IS GOING OFF TO WAR IN HER PURE WHITE WEDDING GOWN!  
JESUS WILL BE THE ONE FIGHTING THAT BATTLE.***

Verse 15 tells us that Jesus returns as a warrior treading the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God the Almighty. Prior to this God had sent judgments in increasing intensity.

54. Read Revelation 16:8-11 which describes the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> bowl judgments. Did they know these judgments were from God? \_\_\_\_\_ Did they repent? \_\_\_\_\_

55. Revelation 16:12-16 describes the 6<sup>th</sup> bowl judgment. In this passage we see that demonic spirits will assemble the kings of the whole world for the battle on the great day of God the almighty.  
Where will this battle take place? \_\_\_\_\_

With the 7<sup>th</sup> bowl judgment, a loud voice comes out of the temple in heaven, from the throne, saying, "It is done!" At that point Jesus returns with his Bride ready to do battle and begin to rule on the earth.

56. Read Revelation 19:17-21 to see the end of those that had gathered together to do battle against the Lord.

Was it much of a battle? How were they slain and by whom according to verse 21?

## End Times-Week 1

57. What does this tell you about Christ's power and sovereignty?
58. What was the fate of the beast and the false prophet?

### THE RESTORATION OF ISRAEL

One of the major purposes for the Tribulation was the salvation and restoration of the nation of Israel. Zechariah 12-14 describes the events which take place in Jerusalem and Judah when Jesus returns to do battle for them.

59. Read Zechariah 13:1-2. What does the Lord do for the inhabitants of Jerusalem?

### TAKE ROOT

Read Zechariah 12-14 for a detailed look at God's dealing with Israel when Jesus returns.

60. Read the exciting conclusion to this story in Zechariah 12:10.

*Zechariah 12:10—And I will pour out on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem a spirit of grace and pleas for mercy, so that when they look on me, on him whom they have pierced, they shall mourn for him, as one mourns for an only child, and weep bitterly over him, as one weeps over a firstborn.*

What clue are we given that this is a prophecy about Jesus? (See John 19:33-37.)

61. The New Testament also speaks to the spiritual renewal of Israel. Read Romans 11:25-26.

Who will be saved?

Who will accomplish this?

At the beginning of the Tribulation Israel followed the false messiah to their distress. When Jesus returns, they finally recognize Jesus as their true Messiah. They repent and are cleansed and ready to enter the Millennial Kingdom.

***JESUS CAME TO EARTH THE FIRST TIME AS THE LAMB OF GOD TO BE SACRIFICED FOR OUR SINS. THE SECOND TIME HE WILL COME AS KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS TO RULE WITH OVER THE MILLENNIAL KINGDOM.***

***WHAT A GLORIOUS DAY THAT WILL BE FOR THOSE OF US WHO ARE IN CHRIST!***



## **Review**

End this section by reviewing the differences between the Rapture and the Second Coming of Jesus as laid out by John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue.<sup>3</sup>

If one compares what happens at the rapture in 1 Thessalonians 4:13–18 and 1 Corinthians 15:50–58 with what happens in the final events of Christ's second coming in Matthew 24–25, at least eight significant contrasts or differences can be observed, which demand that the rapture and Christ's second coming occur at different times:

1. At the rapture, Christ comes in the air and returns to heaven (1 Thess. 4:17), while at the final event of the second coming, Christ comes to earth to dwell and reign (Matt. 25:31–32).
2. At the rapture, Christ gathers his own (1 Thess. 4:16–17), while at the second coming, angels gather the elect (Matt. 24:31).
3. At the rapture, Christ comes to reward (1 Thess. 4:17), while at the second coming, Christ comes to judge (Matt. 25:31–46).
4. At the rapture, resurrection is prominent in Jesus's coming (1 Thess. 4:15–16), while at the second coming, no resurrection is mentioned with Christ's descent.
5. At the rapture, believers depart from the earth (1 Thess. 4:15–17), while at the second coming, unbelievers are taken away from the earth (Matt. 24:37–41).
6. At the rapture, unbelievers remain on the earth (implied), while at the second coming, believers remain on the earth (Matt. 25:34).
7. At the rapture, there is no mention of Christ's kingdom on earth, while at the second coming, Christ's kingdom on earth is established (Matt. 25:31, 34).
8. At the rapture, believers will receive glorified bodies (cf. 1 Cor. 15:51–57), while at the second coming, no one who is alive receives glorified bodies.

## Review the Following Timelines

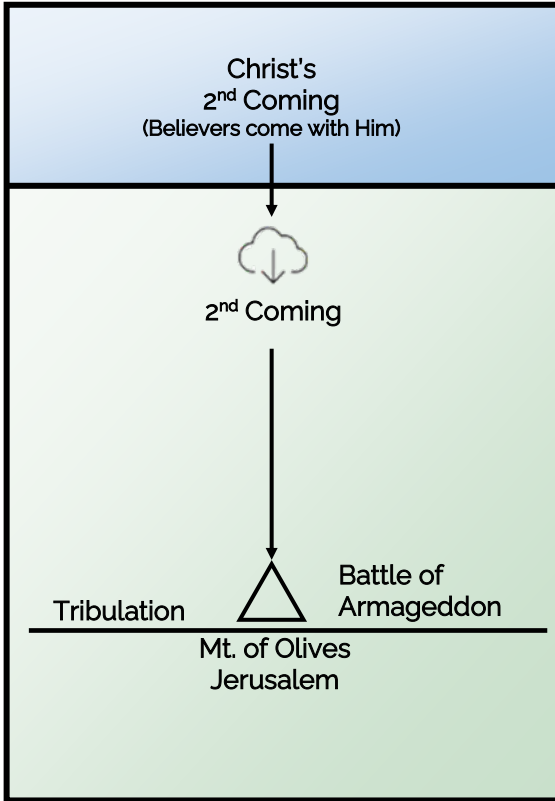


Figure 4—Timeline of Tribulation—2nd Coming

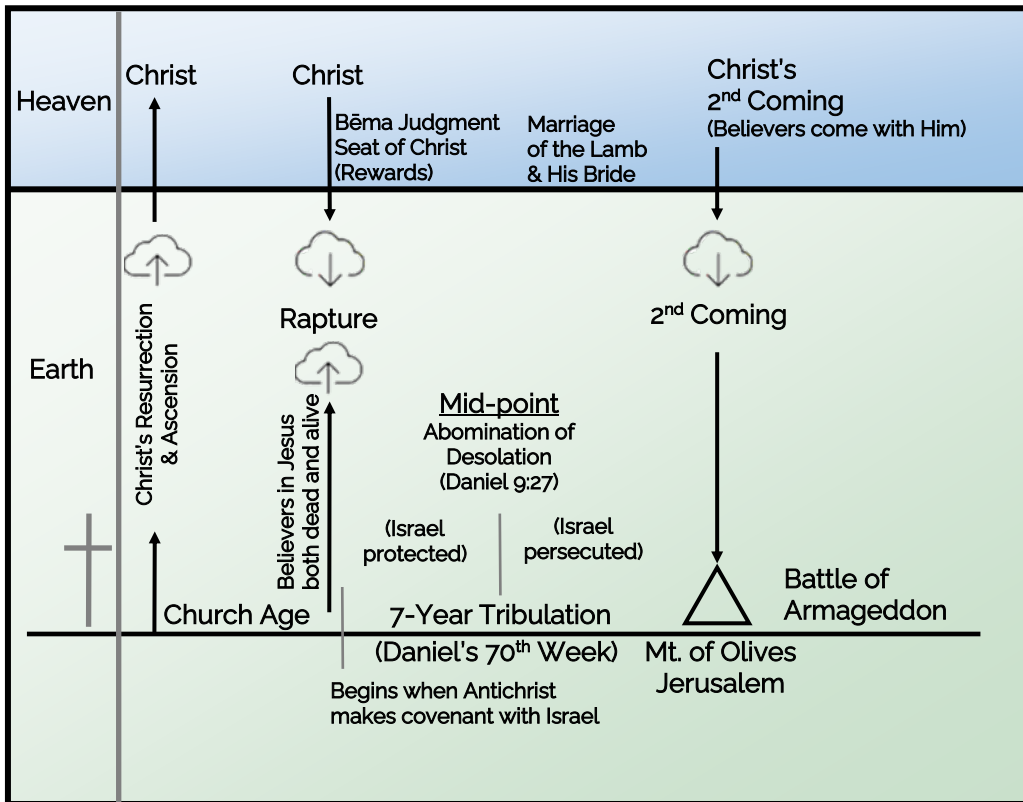


Figure 5—Timeline of Resurrection—2nd Coming

# End Times - Week Two

## Resurrections and Judgments

*CHRIST HAS RETURNED AS KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS – HALLELUJAH!*

This is a good time to go back and review the resurrections and judgments that have already occurred up to the point of Jesus Christ's second coming. It is also a good time to learn about resurrections and judgments that will happen as Christ prepares to set up His kingdom on earth, the Millennial Kingdom, where He will rule and reign for 1,000 years.

### Resurrections Prior to the Second Coming (Review)

#### CHRIST

Christ was the very first person to be resurrected from the dead and receive a glorified body; a body perfectly suited for everlasting life on a new earth.

The apostle Paul referred to Christ being raised from the dead as "...the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep" (I Corinthians 15:20).

This is a reference to the Festival of Firstfruits that was celebrated every year at Passover. The Jewish people gave the first fruits of the harvest to God, trusting in Him to bring a bountiful crop for the remainder of the harvest time. In a similar way, Jesus' resurrection is the first fruits in anticipation of God raising up all those who have died in Christ.

#### RAPTURED BELIEVERS

The next resurrection to occur will be at the Rapture which we have already studied.

### Resurrections and Judgments at the Second Coming of Christ

With the second coming of Jesus Christ at the end of the great Tribulation more resurrections and judgments occur.

Those to be judged are:

- Living Gentiles
- Living Jews

Those to be resurrected are:

- Old Testament Saints
- Martyred Tribulation Saints

#### JUDGMENT OF LIVING GENTILES

1. Read Matthew 25:31-46 and answer the questions that follow:  
Who is doing the judging?

Who is gathered before Him?

## End Times-Week 2

Continuing from Matthew 25:31-46...

2. Christ separates these people into 2 categories, sheep and goats. Where are the sheep placed in relation to Jesus?
3. From verses 34-40, briefly explain why the sheep are blessed and inherit the kingdom.

Think about it, these "sheep" showed kindness and compassion to Jewish believers (see verse 40 which can be translated "You did it to one of these brothers of Mine") during the horrific Tribulation period which could have cost them their lives. These are saved Gentiles who did these good deeds out of a love for Christ! At this time, all saved Gentiles from all over the world enter the Millennial Kingdom in their earthly bodies.

4. In contrast, where are the goats placed in relation to Jesus?
5. As you read verses 41-45, do their lives demonstrate spiritual fruit? How would you characterize their lives?
6. Where will the goats spend eternity according to verse 46?

## JUDGMENT OF LIVING JEWS

Read Ezekiel 20:33-38 below. God is speaking through the prophet Ezekiel to the house of Israel about a future time of judgment for them.

*Ezekiel 20:33-38—<sup>33</sup>As I live, declares the Lord GOD, surely with a mighty hand and an outstretched arm and with wrath poured out I will be king over you. <sup>34</sup>I will bring you out from the peoples and gather you out of the countries where you are scattered, with a mighty hand and an outstretched arm, and with wrath poured out. <sup>35</sup>And I will bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I will enter into judgment with you face to face. <sup>36</sup>As I entered into judgment with your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so I will enter into judgment with you, declares the Lord GOD. <sup>37</sup>I will make you pass under the rod, and I will bring you into the bond of the covenant. <sup>38</sup>I will purge out the rebels from among you, and those who transgress against me. I will bring them out of the land where they sojourn, but they shall not enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am the LORD."*

In verse 37, a picture of a shepherd is used. The LORD separates the sheep as they pass under His rod. He knows their hearts and knows which individuals have placed their trust in Him. The righteous of Israel will enter the Millennial Kingdom and finally experience the fulfillment of God's covenant promises to them. They too, like the saved, living Gentiles, will enter the kingdom in earthly bodies.

In contrast, God will "purge out the rebels" and they will not enter the land of Israel and experience His covenant promises.

## RESURRECTION OF OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS

In Daniel 12:1-3 we read of Daniel's vision of the future resurrection of his people who will awake to everlasting life.

## RESURRECTION OF MARTYRED TRIBULATION SAINTS

(Revelation 20:1-6 is printed out on page 384, at the beginning of the Millennial Kingdom section.)

7. Read Revelation 20:4-6 and answer the following questions:

Revelation 20:4 begins with the apostle John, the writer of the book of Revelation, saying he saw individuals who were given the authority to judge, seated on thrones. He also saw souls who had been killed during the Tribulation. List the reasons given for why they were beheaded.

These martyrs came to life and did what and for how long?

It is important to know that the phrase first resurrection (in verse 5 of Revelation 20) always refers to the resurrection of saved individuals. This means believers involved in the Rapture, those saved during the Tribulation and even the Old Testament saints. They are all included in the first resurrection. All believers will spend eternity with God! This is why verse 6 states, "Blessed and holy is the one who shares in the first resurrection." In contrast, the second death is reserved for unbelievers. All unbelievers will be eternally separated from God.

## **Judgments Between the Second Coming of Christ and the Millennial Kingdom**

Five times in Revelation 20:1-6 there is a reference to a one-thousand-year period of time often called the Millennial Kingdom. Two more events of significance occur between the Second Coming of Jesus and the beginning of the Millennial Kingdom:

8. Read Revelation 19:20 and record the fate of the beast (the antichrist) and the false prophet.

9. According to Revelation 20:1-3 where is Satan bound during the Millennium?

After the Millennial period there will be 3 more judgments. These include:

- The judgment of Satan
- The judgment of the unsaved (the Great White Throne judgment)
- The judgment of the present heavens and earth

We will look at these judgments in more detail later.

## Review the Following Timelines

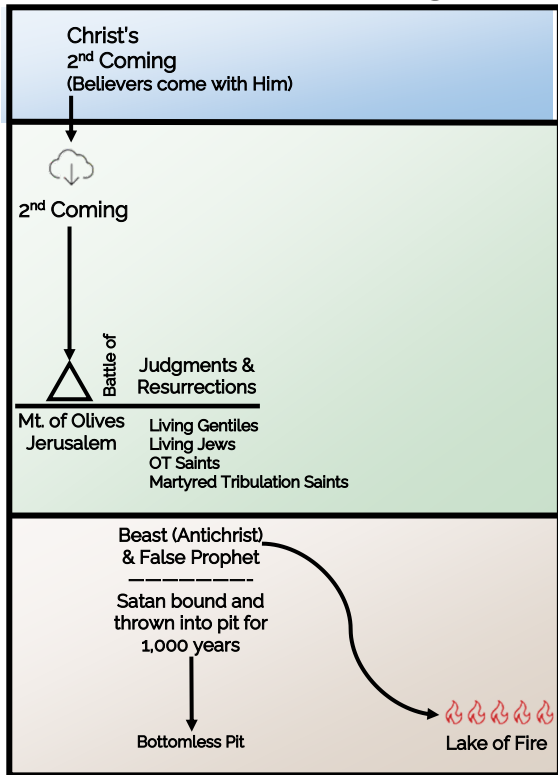


Figure 6—Timeline of Resurrections and Judgments at the Second Coming of Christ

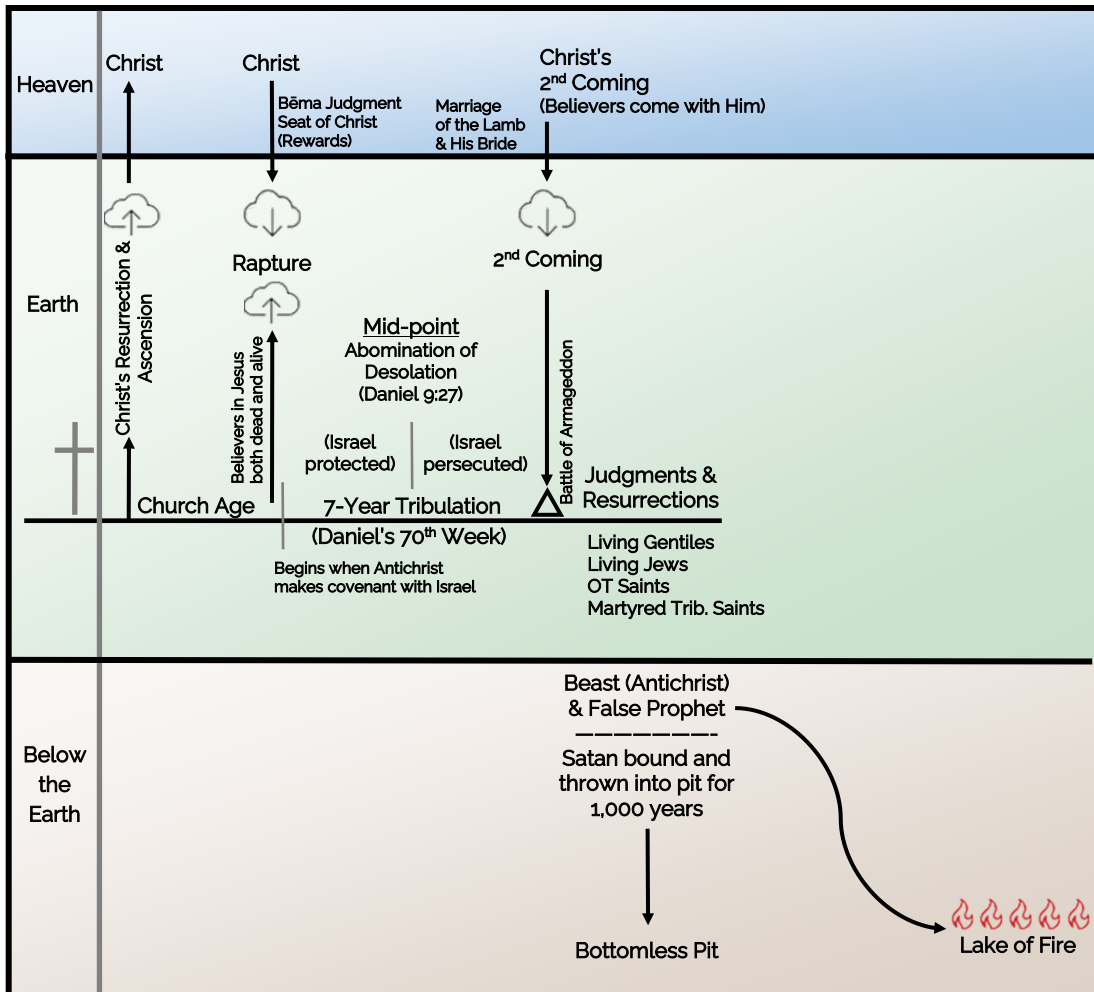


Figure 7—Timeline of Resurrection through Judgments at the Second Coming of Christ

# The Millennial Kingdom

God fulfills many purposes through the Millennial Kingdom, the 1000 year reign of Jesus Christ on earth. Among those purposes are the following:

- Vindication of Jesus and His Followers
- The Fulfillment of God's Covenant Promise to Abraham
- The Fulfillment of God's Covenant Promise to King David
- The Defeat of Satan

This section of study looks carefully at each of these purposes then concludes with the ultimate purpose of the millennial kingdom.

## Vindication of Jesus and His Followers

During His first coming to earth Jesus "was despised and rejected by men, a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief; and as one from whom men hide their faces he was despised, and we esteemed him not (Isaiah 53:3)." He was rejected by those He came to save (John 1:11). He was mocked, beaten, and finally nailed to a cross. At His second coming Jesus will come on the clouds with power and great glory (Luke 21:27) to reign on the earth as King of Kings and Lord of Lords.

The Millennial Kingdom is a transitional period between this present age and the eternal state. It will be a time of unprecedented peace and joy with King Jesus ruling and reigning in perfect justice and righteousness. Believers from throughout the ages will also reign with Him. But it won't be heaven. Men will still have rebellious hearts and there will still be death.

The Millennium is also a unique time as the earth will be populated by two totally different kinds of people:

1. Those in glorified bodies:
  - The Raptured Bride of Christ.
  - Resurrected Old Testament Saints.
  - Resurrected Martyred Tribulation Saints.
2. Those in mortal, earthly bodies:
  - Believers who survive the Tribulation will enter the Millennial Kingdom in mortal, earthly bodies.

### DID YOU KNOW

Although these people are in different bodies, everyone who enters the Millennial Kingdom will be among the redeemed.

## End Times—Week 2

The main New Testament passage dealing with this time is found in Revelation 20.

*Revelation 20:1-6—<sup>1</sup>Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven, holding in his hand the key to the bottomless pit and a great chain. <sup>2</sup>And he seized the dragon, that ancient serpent, who is the devil and Satan and bound him for a thousand years, <sup>3</sup>and threw him into the pit, and shut it and sealed it over him, so that he might not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were ended. After that he must be released for a little while. <sup>4</sup>Then I saw thrones, and seated on them were those to whom the authority to judge was committed. Also I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for the testimony of Jesus and for the word of God, and those who had not worshiped the beast or its image and had not received its mark on their foreheads or their hands. They came to life and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. <sup>5</sup>The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended. This is the first resurrection. <sup>6</sup>Blessed and holy is the one who shares in the first resurrection! Over such the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ, and they will reign with him for a thousand years.*

10. Underline the repeated time phrase in this passage.
11. Where does Satan spend these 1,000 years?
12. Who is reigning on the earth during this time?
13. In the passage above number the 3 groups of people identified in verse 4, then list them below.
14. Look up the following verses and identify who the judges are and whom they are judging.  
Matthew 19:28 (Check verse 25 to see to whom Jesus is talking.)  
  
1 Corinthians 6:2-4
15. Read Revelation 6:9-11 and 7:9-17 to learn more about the souls of those who had been beheaded during the Tribulation. What perspective does this give you on the trials of this life, even the most severe ones?



## LIFE ON EARTH DURING THE MILLENNIAL KINGDOM

16. Read Isaiah 2:1-5 and answer the questions which follow:

Why do many peoples come to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of God?

What will the LORD do during those days?

What will life be like between the nations of the earth?

17. Read Isaiah 11:1-9 and answer the following questions:

How will King Jesus (the shoot from the stump of Jesse who was the father of David) rule? How does he deal with the wicked?

How would you describe the animal world?

According to verse 9 what will the earth be full of?

18. Read Isaiah 65:17-25 (Even though these verses are intermingled with those about the new heaven and earth these must refer to the Millennial Kingdom since there will no sin or death in the eternal state.)

What do these verses tell us about the lifespan of a person still in their earthly, non-glorified bodies?

Will man's work be more like Eden before or after the fall?

What do we learn about nature?

## The Fulfillment of God's Covenant Promise to Abraham

One purpose of the Millennium is to fulfill the covenant God made to Abraham to give to him and his descendants the land which we know as Israel (Genesis 15). Over and over throughout the Old Testament God reiterates this promise of the land. In the book of Joshua we read of Israel's entering the land and possessing some of it but they never took possession of all God promised. Some people believe that because of Israel's unbelief God has transferred that promise to the church. Read what the LORD said to Jeremiah.

*Jeremiah 31:31-37—<sup>31</sup>Behold, days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and the house of Judah, <sup>32</sup>not like the covenant I made with their fathers on the day when I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt, my covenant that they broke, though I was their husband, declares the LORD. <sup>33</sup>For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, declares the LORD: I will put my law within them, and I will write it on their hearts. And I will be their God, and they shall be my people. <sup>34</sup>And no longer shall each one teach his neighbor and each his brother, saying, 'Know the LORD,' for they shall all know me, from the least of them to the greatest, declares the LORD. For I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more."*

<sup>35</sup> *Thus says the LORD,  
who gives the sun for light by day  
and the fixed order of the moon and the stars for light by night,  
who stirs up the sea so that its waves roar—  
the LORD of hosts is his name:*

<sup>36</sup> *"If this fixed order departs  
from before me, declares the LORD,  
then shall the offspring of Israel cease  
from being a nation before me forever."*

<sup>37</sup> *Thus says the LORD:  
"If the heavens above can be measured,  
and the foundations of the earth below can be explored,  
then I will cast off all the offspring of Israel  
for all that they have done,  
declares the LORD."*

19. According to Jeremiah 31:35-37 is God finished with Israel?

## The Fulfillment of God's Covenant Promise to King David

Another purpose of the Millennial Kingdom is to fulfill the covenant promise to Israel that a descendant of King David will sit on the throne of Israel forever.

20. Read Jeremiah 33:14-17 and answer the questions below.

*Jeremiah 33:14-17—<sup>14</sup>Behold, the days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will fulfill the promise I made to the house of Israel and the house of Judah. <sup>15</sup>In those days and at that time I will cause a righteous Branch to spring up for David, and he shall execute justice and righteousness in the land. <sup>16</sup>In those days Judah will be saved, and Jerusalem will dwell securely. And this is the name by which it will be called: "The LORD is our righteousness." <sup>17</sup>For thus says the LORD: David shall never lack a man to sit on the throne of the house of Israel,*

What will characterize the reign of Christ?

What does the LORD promise in verse 17?

Look back at verse 14. With whom did God make this promise?

Continuing from Jeremiah 33, verses 20-21:

*Jeremiah 33:20-21—<sup>20</sup>Thus says the LORD: If you can break my covenant with the day and my covenant with the night, so that day and night will not come at their appointed time, <sup>21</sup>then also my covenant with David my servant may be broken, so that he shall not have a son to reign on his throne...*

We know from the genealogy of Jesus recorded in Matthew 1:1-17 that He was a direct descendant from King David.

21. Read Luke 1:31-32. What is the promise that the angel Gabriel gives to Mary?

22. In Revelation 5 we see Jesus pictured as the Lamb that was slain and who alone was worthy.

In Revelation 5:5 we learn that the Lamb is from the tribe of \_\_\_\_\_,

the Root of \_\_\_\_\_.

23. In Revelation 5:9-10 who do we learn will reign with the Lamb upon the earth?

## End Times—Week 2

Continuing to examine the fulfillment of God's covenant promise to King David, notice that in the letters to the seven churches Jesus gives this message to the Church in Thyatira in Revelation 2:26-27.

*Revelation 2:26-27—<sup>26</sup>The one who conquers and who keeps my works until the end, to him I will give authority over the nations, <sup>27</sup>and he will rule them with a rod of iron, as when earthen pots are broken in pieces, even as I myself have received authority from my Father.*

24. Underline the condition for being given authority over the nations.
25. With a different color underline how they will rule.
26. Read Rev. 19:15. How does Jesus rule during this time?
  
27. What can you surmise about the condition of people's heart on the earth during the Millennium?  
Will they all willingly obey King Jesus?

Everyone entering the kingdom will love King Jesus and be obedient to Him. However, many will be in mortal bodies and will repopulate the earth. In 1,000 years, they will probably have a lot of children! Apparently, many of their children will have rebellious hearts.

28. How is the heart described in Jeremiah 17:9?
  
29. Since Satan will be bound during these 1,000 years what does this tell you about humankind?
  
30. Will God be just in judging men for their sin? Why or why not?

## The Defeat of Satan

It does seem almost unbelievable that mankind will live on a near-perfect earth, governed by King Jesus who reigns with perfect justice and righteousness and still rebel. Read how the Millennium concludes in Revelation 20:7-10 below.

*Revelation 20:7-10—<sup>7</sup>And when the thousand years are ended, Satan will be released from his prison <sup>8</sup>and will come out to deceive the nations that are at the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them for battle; their number is like the sand of the sea. <sup>9</sup>And they marched up over the broad plain of the earth and surrounded the camp of the saints and the beloved city, but fire came down from heaven and consumed them, <sup>10</sup>and the devil who had deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur where the beast and the false prophet were, and they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.*

31. How many people rebelled against King Jesus after the 1,000 years ended?

## End Times—Week 2

Continuing with Revelation 20:7-10...

32. Where did they assemble to fight this final battle? What do you think is the beloved city? (See 1Kings 11:36.)
  
33. Who was the victor and how was the battle won?
  
34. What was the final fate of the devil?

## The Ultimate Purpose of the Millennium

*1 Corinthians 15:24-28—<sup>24</sup>Then comes the end, when he [Jesus] delivers the kingdom to God the Father after destroying every rule and every authority and power. <sup>25</sup>For he [Jesus] must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. <sup>26</sup>The last enemy to be destroyed is death. <sup>27</sup>For “God has put all things in subjection under his feet.” But when it says, “all things are put in subjection,” it is plain that he is excepted who put all things in subjection under him. <sup>28</sup>When all things are subjected to him, then the Son himself will also be subjected to him who put all things in subjection under him, that God may be all in all.*

35. According to verse 24 when does the end come?
  
36. What must Jesus do before He can deliver the kingdom to the Father?
  
37. What is the last enemy to be destroyed?

To paraphrase verses 27-28: God put everything under Jesus' feet, except of course, the Father Himself. Once everything is subjected to Jesus then He will also be subjected to the Father.

38. According to the end of verse 28, what is the ultimate purpose of the kingdom?

**WHAT A GLORIOUS DAY THAT WILL BE!**

## Application

39. Think about what it will be like to live on the earth in a glorified body with King Jesus ruling over the world in perfect justice and righteousness. How will you fill your days? What will it be like to rule and judge? Do you think you'll be bored? Does it excite you or do you look at it as one long church service?

## Review the Following Timelines



Figure 8—Timeline of the Millennial Kingdom

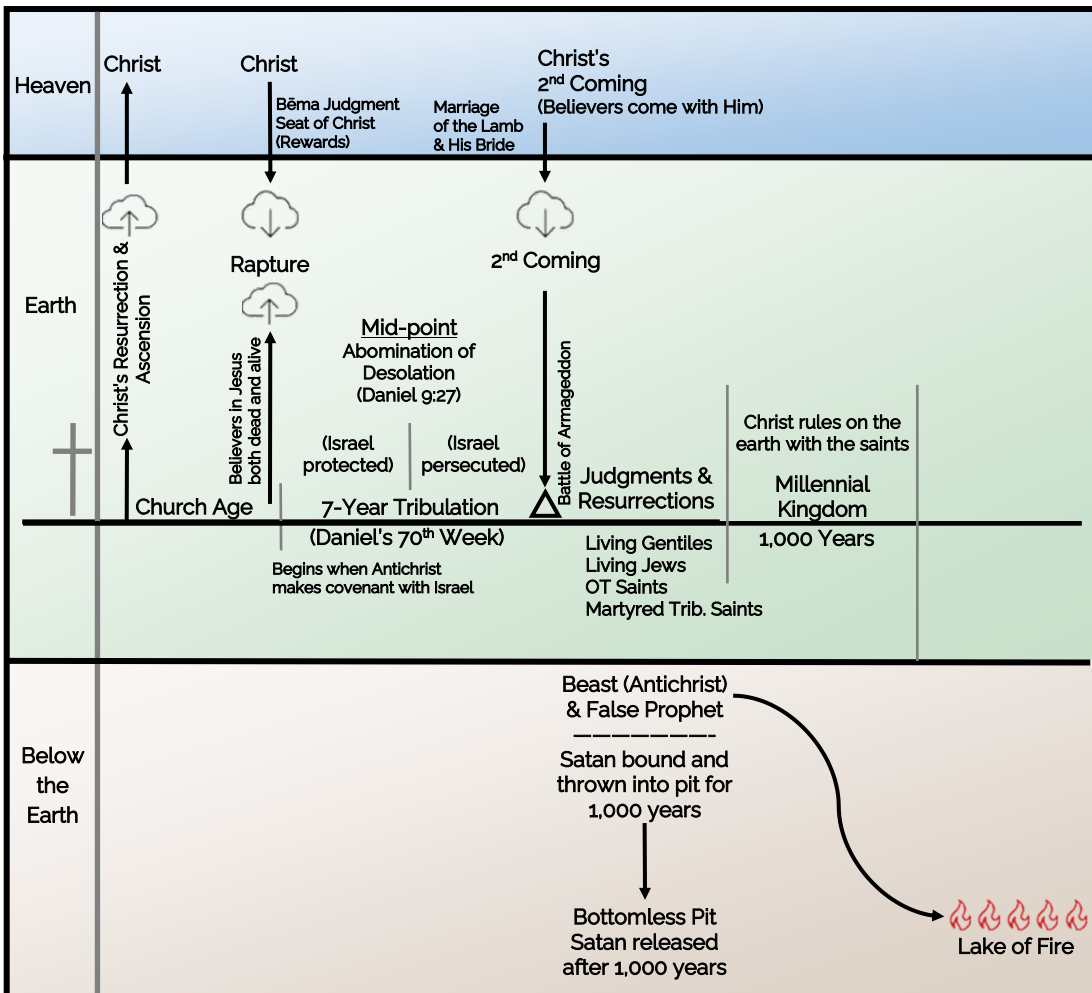


Figure 9—Timeline of Resurrection through the Millennial Kingdom

# Final Judgments

At the end of the Millennial Kingdom, 3 significant judgments occur. These include:

- The defeat and judgment of Satan and the demons
- The judgment of all unsaved people
- The judgment of the present heavens and earth

Let's look at these one at a time.

## The Defeat and Judgment of Satan and Demons

Once again read Revelation 20:7-10. As you do, think about the profound significance of this event. Ever since Satan, a beautiful, created being, became proud and rebelled against God, he has done nothing but deceive, lie, destroy, cause pain and wreak havoc. Finally, the accuser will get the just punishment he deserves from a holy, powerful and sovereign God!

*Revelation 20:7-10—<sup>7</sup>And when the thousand years are ended, Satan will be released from his prison <sup>8</sup>and will come out to deceive the nations that are at the four corners of the earth Gog and Magog, to gather them for battle; their number is like the sand of the sea. <sup>9</sup>And they marched up over the broad plain of the earth and surrounded the camp of the saints and the beloved city, but fire came down from heaven and consumed them, <sup>10</sup>and the devil who had deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur where the beast and the false prophet were, and they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.*

40.. Just so you haven't missed it, where is Satan thrown?

41. What does he experience and for how long?

42. According to Matthew 25:41 both Satan and his angels will be cast into the eternal fire. Read 1 John 4:4 below then answer the question that follows:

*1 John 4:4—Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.*

How can knowing the ultimate fate of the devil and his angels impact your life and walk with the Lord right now?

## Judgment of All Unsaved People

The judgment of unbelievers is one of the most terrifying and sobering aspects in all the Bible. It is also called the “Great White Throne” judgment and is described in Revelation 20:11-15.

*Revelation 20:11-15—<sup>11</sup>Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it. From his presence earth and sky fled away, and no place was found for them. <sup>12</sup>And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Then another book was opened, which is the book of life. And the dead were judged by what was written in the books, according to what they had done. <sup>13</sup>And the sea gave up the dead who were in it, Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them, and they were judged, each one of them, according to what they had done. <sup>14</sup>Then Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire. <sup>15</sup>And if anyone’s name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.*

43. Answer the following questions using the passage above:

From what we have studied previously, who is the one seated on the throne doing the judging?  
(See John 5:22.)

Who is standing before him?

Where do these people come from according to verse 13?

What criteria is used to judge them and where is this information obtained?

What is the second death?

Where does one's name have to be written to avoid the second death?

**This is a very tragic and sobering passage!**

As you can see, the fate of the unbeliever is very different from that of the person who knows Jesus as Lord and Savior. Look up the following verses. Below them note the characteristics of heaven and hell.

### Characteristics of HEAVEN

Matthew 25:21, 23; Revelation 21:3, 4; 22:5

### Characteristics of HELL

Matthew 8:12; 25:30, 41



## End Times—Week 2

Review the chart and think about the differences between heaven (ultimately, the new earth) and hell (ultimately, the lake of fire; see Revelation 20:14). Hell is a terrible place and should not be joked about or taken lightly! There is no way to get out of hell once there.

44. All who are saved by grace through faith in Jesus Christ have their names written in the book of life. Ask yourself: do you know for certain that your name is written in the book of life?

If so, rejoice and praise God!

If not, reach out to someone who can help you understand how your name can be written there.

Every unsaved person will live forever, in torment, separated from God. What keeps you from sharing the Gospel regularly with unsaved people? Write your answer(s) below then bring them before the Lord. Spend time in prayer asking Him to give you a love for the lost and courage and boldness to share the good news.

All of us know someone who is not a believer – family member, friend, neighbor, co-worker. Intentionally pray for that person's mind and heart to be open to the gospel message. Then pray for opportunities to share it! Remember, our part is to speak, the Holy Spirit is the One who saves.

## Judgment of the Present Heavens and Earth

The last judgment before entering the final, eternal state is the judgment of the present heavens and earth.

45. **Why** does this judgment have to happen? To answer this, read Genesis 3:17-18 below and answer the questions that follow.

*Genesis 3:17-18—<sup>17</sup>And to Adam he said, “Because you have listened to the voice of your wife and have eaten of the tree of which I commanded you, ‘You shall not eat of it,’ cursed is the ground because of you; in pain you shall eat of it all the days of your life; <sup>18</sup>thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you; and you shall eat the plants of the field.*

Who is speaking?

To whom is he speaking?

What is cursed because of their disobedience?

What does it now yield?

## End Times—Week 2

46. To further investigate the answer to the question, "**Why** does this judgment have to happen?", read Romans 8:18-22 below and answer the questions that follow.

*Romans 8:18-22—<sup>18</sup>For I consider that the sufferings of this present time are not worth comparing with the glory that is to be revealed to us. <sup>19</sup>For the creation waits with eager longing for the revealing of the sons of God. <sup>20</sup>For the creation was subjected to futility, not willingly, but because of him who subjected it, in hope <sup>21</sup>that the creation itself will be set free from its bondage to corruption and obtain the freedom of the glory of the children of God. <sup>22</sup>For we know that the whole creation has been groaning together in the pains of childbirth until now.*

According to verse 20, what was creation subjected to? What does that mean? Do your best to explain.

According to verse 21, what is creation looking forward to being? What do you think that means? Do your best to explain.

After reading these Scripture passages, answer the question: Why do the present heavens and earth have to be judged by God?

47. **How** will the present heavens and earth be judged? To answer this question, first read all of 2 Peter 3:1-10 to understand the context. Then focus on verses 7 and 10 printed below.

*2 Peter 3:7, 10—<sup>7</sup>But by the same word the heavens and earth that now exist are stored up for fire, being kept until the day of judgment and destruction of the ungodly.*

*<sup>10</sup>But the day of the Lord will come like a thief, and then the heavens will pass away with a roar, and the heavenly bodies will be burned up and dissolved, and the earth and the works that are done on it will be exposed.*

After reading these verses, answer the question: **How** will the present heavens and earth be judged?

This marks the end of ALL judgments carried out by our holy God. However, this is not the end of His story. In the next section we will learn about the glory and wonder of the new heavens and new earth, our final home where we will live forever in unhindered fellowship with our God!

## Review the Following Timelines

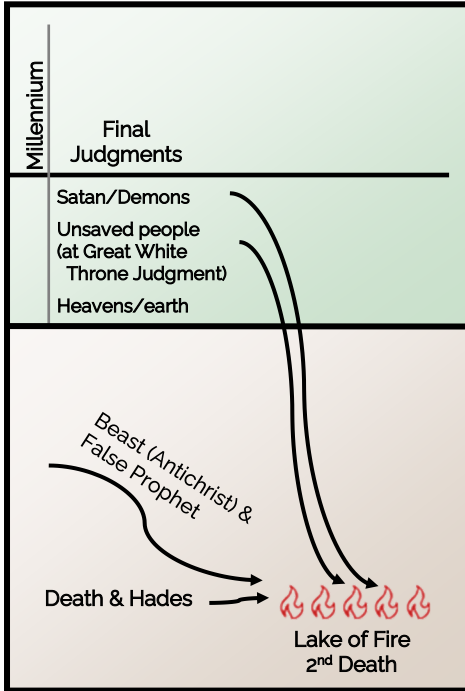


Figure 10—Timeline of Final Judgments

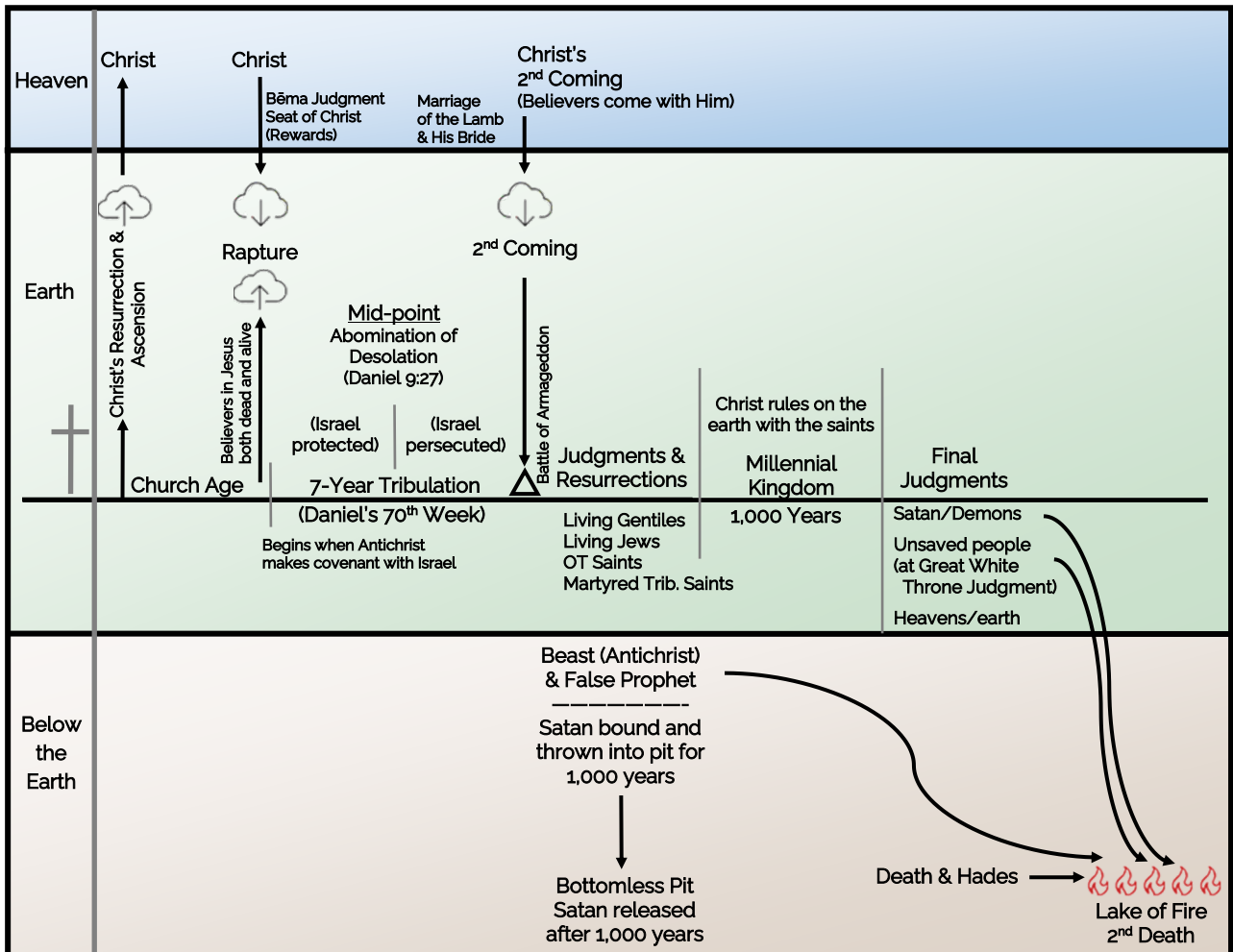


Figure 11—Timeline of Resurrection through Final Judgments

# The Eternal Kingdom

At this point in time, the Millennial Kingdom has ended, Satan and his demons have been thrown into the lake of fire and the Great White Throne judgment has occurred. Heaven and earth have been renewed and refreshed like a precious metal going through a refiner's fire to be purified.

The apostle John gives us a glimpse of the glorious eternal state in Revelation 21:1-22:5. Read through this portion of Scripture slowly and thoughtfully.

Revelation 21:1-22:5—

*Chapter 21* <sup>1</sup>Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and first earth had passed away, and the sea was no more. <sup>2</sup>And I saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. <sup>3</sup>And I heard a loud voice from the throne saying, “Behold, the dwelling place of God is with man. <sup>4</sup>He will dwell with them, and they will be his people, and God himself will be with them as their God. He will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and death shall be no more, neither shall there be mourning, nor crying, nor pain anymore, for the former things have passed away.”

<sup>5</sup>And he who was seated on the throne said, “Behold, I am making all things new.” Also he said, “Write this down, for these words are trustworthy and true.” <sup>6</sup>And he said to me, “It is done! I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end. To the thirsty I will give from the spring of the water of life without payment. <sup>7</sup>The one who conquers will have this heritage, and I will be his God and he will be my son. <sup>8</sup>But as for the cowardly, the faithless, the detestable, as for murderers, the sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars, their portion will be in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur, which is the second death.”

<sup>9</sup>Then came one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues and spoke to me, saying, “Come, I will show you the Bride, the wife of the Lamb.” <sup>10</sup>And he carried me away in the Spirit to a great, high mountain, and showed me the holy city of Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God, <sup>11</sup>having the glory of God, its radiance like a most rare jewel, like a jasper, clear as crystal. <sup>12</sup>It had a great, high wall, with twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and on the gates the names of the twelve tribes of the sons of Israel were inscribed—<sup>13</sup>on the east three gates, on the north three gates, on the south three gates, and on the west three gates. <sup>14</sup>And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and on them were the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

<sup>15</sup>And the one who spoke with me had a measuring rod of gold to measure the city and its gates and walls. <sup>16</sup>The city lies foursquare, its length the same as its width. And he measured the city with his rod, 12,000 stadia. Its length and width and height are equal. <sup>17</sup>He also measured its wall, 144 cubits by human measurement, which is also an angel's measurement. <sup>18</sup>The wall was built of jasper, while the city was pure gold, like clear glass. <sup>19</sup>The foundations of the wall of the city were adorned with every kind of jewel. The first was jasper, the second sapphire, the third agate, the fourth emerald, <sup>20</sup>the fifth onyx, the sixth carnelian, the seventh chrysolite, the eighth beryl, the ninth topaz, the tenth chrysoprase, the eleventh jacinth, the twelfth amethyst. <sup>21</sup>And the twelve gates were twelve pearls, each of the gates made of a single pearl, and the street of the city was pure gold, like transparent glass.

<sup>22</sup>And I saw no temple in the city, for its temple is the Lord God the Almighty and the Lamb. <sup>23</sup>And the city has no need of sun or moon to shine on it, for the glory of God gives it light, and its lamp is the Lamb. <sup>24</sup>By its light will the nations walk, and the kings of the earth will bring their glory into it, <sup>25</sup>and its gates will never be shut by day—and there will be no night there. <sup>26</sup>They will bring into it the glory and the honor of the nations. <sup>27</sup>But nothing unclean will ever enter it, nor anyone who does what is detestable or false, but only those who are written in the Lamb's book of life.

*Chapter 22* <sup>1</sup>Then the angel showed me the river of the water of life, bright as crystal, flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb <sup>2</sup>through the middle of the street of the city; also, on either side of the river, the tree of life with its twelve kinds of fruit, yielding its fruit each month. The leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. <sup>3</sup>No

## End Times-Week 2

*longer will there be anything accursed, but the throne of God and of the Lamb will be in it, and his servants will worship him. <sup>4</sup>They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. <sup>5</sup>And night will be no more. They will need no light of lamp or sun, for the Lord God will be their light, and they will reign forever and ever.*

48. Let's begin with what is NOT present in the eternal state. Read the following verses and write down what is missing from the new heaven and new earth that we experience on earth today.

Revelation 21:1

Revelation 21:4

Revelation 21:8

Revelation 21:22

Why not?

Revelation 21:23

And the city has no need of \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_...

Why not?

Revelation 21:25 and Revelation 22:5

Why not?

Revelation 21:27 and Revelation 22:3

Can you imagine what life will be like with absolutely no sin? WOW!

## *End Times-Week 2*

49. Now let's look at what IS present in the eternal state. Read the following verses and write down WHO or WHAT will be there.

### **WHO:**

Revelation 21:3, 6, 24 and Revelation 22:3

What are some things we will be doing according to Revelation 22:3-5?

### **WHAT:**

Revelation 21:2, 10-21, 25— As you read this passage list some of the descriptions given of the New Jerusalem. Imagine its beauty!

Revelation 22:1

Revelation 22:2

Look back at Genesis 2:9 and Genesis 3:24. What do you see there? Where is it located?

50. From the above passages, summarize what you have learned about the eternal state.

Spend time meditating on what this will be like!

So, there you have it; the end of the greatest story ever told. From its miraculous start in Genesis 1:1 – "In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth" – despite the Fall, through Redemption

## *End Times-Week 2*

in Christ and concluding with perfect Restoration, God sovereignly fulfills His plan. He has brought us full circle! The Lord Jesus Christ said, "Behold, I am making all things new" (Rev. 20:5). Believers will have new bodies, live on a new earth, have new purpose and meaning to life and have new, unhindered fellowship with God.

One final, complete timeline is given on the following page. Review it and marvel at the plans of our great God. He has spoken and He will surely do it!

***MAY THE REALITY OF THIS GLORIOUS KINGDOM ENCOURAGE AND STRENGTHEN US AS WE PERSEVERE THROUGH THE TRIALS AND TRIBULATIONS OF THIS LIFE, KNOWING THE BEST IS YET TO COME.***

***EVEN SO, COME LORD JESUS!***

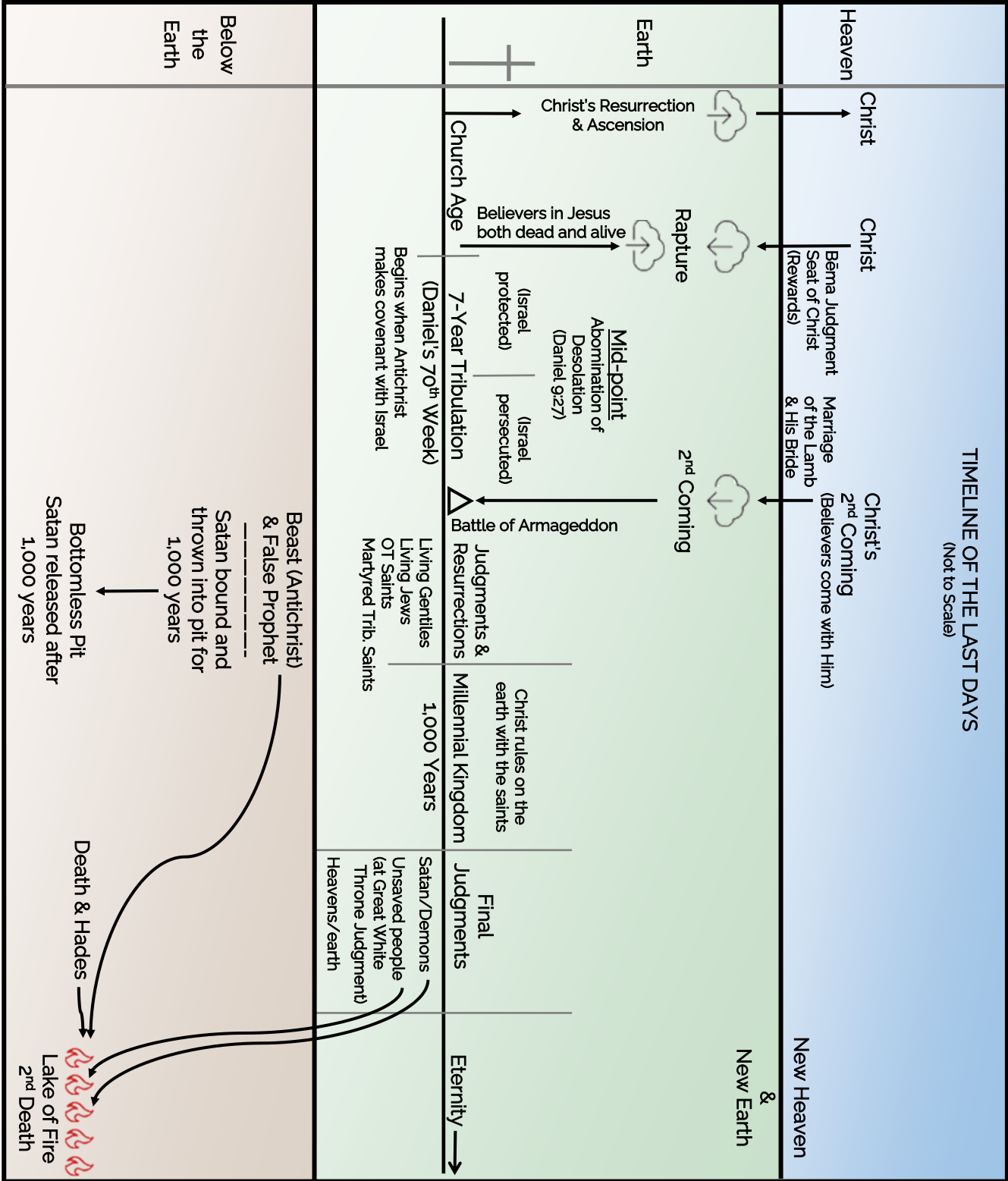


Figure 12—Timeline of Christ's Resurrection to the Eternal Kingdom



# Hymn for Meditation

## **“Jesus Shall Reign Where'er the Sun”**

by Isaac Watts, 1719

Jesus shall reign where'er the sun  
Does his successive journeys run;  
His kingdom stretch from shore to shore,  
Til moons shall wax and wane no more.

To him shall endless prayer be made,  
And praises throng to crown his head;  
His name, like sweet perfume, shall rise  
With every morning sacrifice.

People and realms of every tongue  
Dwell on his love with sweetest song;  
And infant voices shall proclaim  
Their early blessings on his name.

Blessings abound where'er he reigns;  
The pris'ner leaps to loose his chains,  
The weary find eternal rest,  
And all the sons of want are blest.

Let every creature rise and bring  
Peculiar honors to our King,  
Angels descend with songs again,  
And earth repeat the loud amen.

# Appendix

## **Endnotes**

## **Notes Pages**

CLASS NOTES

REFLECTIONS

# Endnotes

1. "What We Believe: The Scriptures," Cornerstone Bible Church, accessed June 29, 2022, <https://www.discovercbc.org/what-we-believe/>.
2. John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017), 903-904.
3. MacArthur and Mayhue, "Biblical Doctrine," 901-902.

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week one*

*End Times*

**CLASS NOTES**  
*week two*



*reflections*

# Cumulative Bibliography

- Bryant, Paul. "Memorable Coach Paul "Bear" Bryant quotes: Thoughts on winning, life, Alabama and more." AL.com. Published January 26, 2016. Accessed June 23, 2022. [https://www.al.com/living/2016/01/memorable\\_coach\\_paul\\_bear\\_brya.html](https://www.al.com/living/2016/01/memorable_coach_paul_bear_brya.html).
- "Compelling Truth," Got Questions Ministries, <https://www.compellingtruth.org/>.
- Cornerstone Bible Church. "What We Believe." Accessed June 23, 2021, <https://www.discovercbc.org/what-we-believe/>.
- Dorsett, Lyle Dorsett. "C. S. Lewis: A Profile of His Life." Christianity Today. Accessed August 21, 2021. <https://www.christianitytoday.com/history/issues/issue-7/cs-lewis-profile-of-his-life.html>.
- Enns, Paul. *The Moody Handbook of Theology*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2014.
- Geisler, Norman L. and William E. Nix. *From God to Us: How We Got Our Bible*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2012.
- Goldman, Bruce. "Two minds: The Cognitive Differences Between Men and Women." Stanford Medicine. Spring, 2017. <https://stanmed.stanford.edu/2017spring/how-mens-and-womens-brains-are-different.html#>.
- "Got Questions," Got Questions Ministries, <https://www.gotquestions.org>.
- Graham, Billy. *Angels*. Dallas: Word Publishing, 1975.
- Grudem, Wayne. *Systematic Theology*. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan, 1994.
- Henry, Matthew. *Matthew Henry's Commentary on the Whole Bible*. Public Domain.
- Hodges, Charles. *Systematic Theology*. (1871-1873; repr., 1968): 3:226. Quoted in John MacArthur and Richard Mayhue, General Editors, *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth* (Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017).
- Kassian, Mary A. and Nancy Leigh Demoss. *True Woman 101 Divine Design*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2012.
- Keener, Craig S. *The IVP Bible Background Commentary: New Testament*. Downers Grove, Illinois: IVP Press, e-Sword edition, 1993.
- Lewis, C. S. *Mere Christianity*. New York: Touchstone, 1996.
- London, Lena. "Roman Soldier Coloring Page," Super Coloring. Accessed June 23, 2022. [http://www.supercoloring.com/coloring-pages/roman-soldier-0\\_](http://www.supercoloring.com/coloring-pages/roman-soldier-0_)
- MacArthur, John. *The MacArthur Bible Commentary for e-Sword*. Thomas Nelson, e-Sword edition, 2005.
- MacArthur, John. Sermons Library, May 13, 1979 "The Breastplate of Righteousness." Grace to You. Accessed June 4, 2022). <https://www.gty.org/library/sermons-library/1956>.

## Bibliography

- MacArthur, John and Richard Mayhue, General Editors. *Biblical Doctrine: A Systematic Summary of Bible Truth*. Wheaton, Illinois: Crossway, 2017.
- McCaskell, Stephen. *Through the Eyes of Spurgeon—Official Documentary*. YouTube, March 30, 2015. Film, 1:57:41.
- Moffett, Samuel H. *A History of Christianity in Asia: Volume I: Beginnings to 1500, 1<sup>st</sup> edition*. New York: Harper Collins Publishers, 1992.
- Myers, Ruth with Warren Myers. *31 Days of Praise*. New York: Multnomah Books, 1994.
- Newton, John. "Amazing Grace," *The Celebration Hymnal*. USA: Word/Integrity, 1997.
- Owen, John. *The Mortification of Sin*. Philadelphia: Presbyterian Board of Publications, 1880.
- Packer, James I. "The Work of the Holy Spirit in Conviction and Conversion." Lausanne Movement. Accessed November 8, 2021, [https://lausanne.org/content/the-work-of-the-holy-spirit-in-conviction-and-conversion\\_](https://lausanne.org/content/the-work-of-the-holy-spirit-in-conviction-and-conversion_)
- Petruzello, Melissa. "John Newton English Clergyman and Writer." Accessed December 17, 2021. <https://www.britannica.com/biography/John-Newton>.
- Rhodes, Ron. "How Did Lucifer Fall and Become Satan?" Christianity.com. Accessed May 28, 2022. <https://www.christianity.com/theology/theological-faq/how-did-lucifer-fall-and-become-satan-11557519.html>.
- Rydelnik, Michael and Michael Vanlaningham, General Editors. *The Moody Bible Commentary*. Chicago: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, 2014.
- "Shorter Catechism of the Assembly of Divines." A Puritan's Mind. Accessed September 13, 2021. <https://www.apuritansmind.com/westminster-standards/shorter-catechism/>
- Sproul, R. C. *Everyone's a Theologian: An Introduction to Systematic Theology*. New York: Reformation Trust Publishing, 2014, Kindle edition.
- "Shield of Trinity Symbol." Ancient Symbols. Accessed July 17, 2021. [https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield\\_of\\_trinity.html](https://www.ancient-symbols.com/symbols-directory/shield_of_trinity.html).
- Stone, Nathan. *Names of God*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1944.
- Taylor, James Hudson. "James Hudson Taylor Quotes." Goodreads. Accessed April 19, 2022. [https://www.goodreads.com/author/quotes/4693730.James\\_Hudson\\_Taylor](https://www.goodreads.com/author/quotes/4693730.James_Hudson_Taylor).
- ten Boom, Corrie, with Elizabeth and John Sherrill. *The Hiding Place*. Grand Rapids, MI: Chosen Books, 2009.
- Thayer, J. H. *Thayer's Greek Definitions*. Public Domain, 1896. e-Sword edition.
- Tozer, A. W. *The Knowledge of the Holy*. New York: Harper Collins Publishers, 1961.
- United States Holocaust Memorial Museum. "Euthanasia Program and Aktion T4." Holocaust Encyclopedia. Accessed September 19, 2021. <https://encyclopedia.ushmm.org/content/en/article/euthanasia-program>.



## **Bibliography**

Vincent, Marvin R. *Vincent's Word Studies in the New Testament*. Public Domain, 1887. e-Sword edition.

Vine, W. E., Merrill F. Unger, and William White, Jr., *Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of Old and New Testament Words*. New York: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1985).

Walvoord, John F. and Roy B. Zuck. *The Bible Knowledge Commentary Old Testament and New Testament Set for e-Sword*. Cook Communications, e-Sword edition.

Zodhiates, Spiros, Warren Baker, and Eugene Carpenter. *Complete Word Study Dictionary: Old Testament and New Testament for e-Sword*. Chattanooga, TN: AMG Publishers, e-Sword edition.







CORNERSTONE  
BIBLE CHURCH

720 LIBERTY DRIVE, WESTFIELD, IN 46074 | [WWW.DISCOVERCBC.ORG](http://WWW.DISCOVERCBC.ORG)